For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, 0xon 0X14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827726, Fax: +44 (0) 1235 807726, Lines are open 9.00–18.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. You can also order through our website www.madaboutbooks.com

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, P.O. Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645. For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario L1N 986, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 30 million copies sold worldwide – the *Teach Yourself* series includes over 300 thies in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data A catalogue entry for this title is available from The British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number. on file

First published in UK 1999 by Hodder Headline Ltd, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1999 by Contemporary Books, a Division of The McGraw Hill Companies, 1 Prudential Plaza, 130 East Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60601 USA.

This edition published 2003.

The 'Teach Yourself' name is a registered trade mark of Hodder & Stoughton Ltd.

Copyright @ 1999, 2003 David Matthews and Mohamed Kasim Dalvi

Lopyngnt © 1994, 2003 David Matthews and Mohamed Kasim Dahi In UK: All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, ruther details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, ruther details of such licences (for WIT ALL).

In U.S. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this book may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of Contemporary Books.

Typeset by Thomson Press (India) Ltd, New Delhi Printed in Great Britain for Hodder & Stoughton Educational, a division of Hodder Headline Ltd, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

Impression number Year 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 2007 2006 2005 2004 2003

### **CONTENTS**

Reading and writing Urdu: Pronunciation, transcription and script
إلى المام عليم وكوريه (Hello! Where is Victoria Road? Greeting people, saying hello and goodbye, asking for directions, identifying people, exchanging personal details and telephone numbers
Please come in and take a se آيے' آثر يف الا يجادر آثر يف لا يجادر آثر يف الا يجادر آثر يف الا يجادر آثر يف الم Introducing yourself, making polite conversation, formal and respectful expressions, describing your family, talking to children
آب کوپاکستانی کمنا پوند ؟  Do you like Pakistani food?  Accepting invitations, expressing your needs, likes and dislikes, taking a taxi, ordering a meal in a restaurant
ز کرگاری کا کتاب Life is not so bad! Expressing possession, describing relationships, talking about origins, expressing your age, the geography and people of Pakistan
ا آپ بردوز کیا کرتے ہیں؟ What do you do every day?
Talking about your work and daily routine, asking others about what they do, telling the time, the days of the week
אָנֶג (בּאַמְשׁלֶּטְ By the seaside Leisure activities, some customs of Pakistan, schooling in Pakistan, identifying 'who?', 'whose?', 'someone'

	TEACH YOURSELF	URE
	and 'someone's', talking about the weather, months and dates	98
7	We don't have a reservation	
	Describing what you are doing and going to do, booking rail tickets, using the telephone, finding hotels in another city	114
8	? بمیں حماب دیجے Can we have the bill?	
7.0	Talking about future plans, checking out of a hotel, settling bills, hiring porters at the station	129
9	ا بيرى بيكم كهال بين؟ Where is my wife?	
100	Talking about the past, boarding trains, making comparisons, more directions, life in Pakistan, arriving in a new city	142
10	!What a splendid hotel کتا شاعدر ہوئل ہے!	
	Asking permission and making requests, being hungry and thirsty, visiting the old bazaar, the history of Lahore	
11	I'll show you my village	
	Describing what you used to do, discussing the weather, village life in Pakistan, the points of the compass, more ways of expressing dates, the 'Great Mughals'	
12	We're off to Delhi	
	Saying what you have been doing, more on the telephone, excusing yourself for impoliteness, accepting hospitality	
13	Did you pack the luggage yoursel	f?
	Checking in at the airport, telling the time more precisely, fractions, dealing with talkative people, some religious observances	
14	Let's talk only in Urdu!	
	Arriving in India from Pakistan, addressing Hindus and	

	Sikhs, calling a doctor, coping with minor ailments, stating your date of birth	223
15	آپ کودیلی آئے ہوئے گئے دن ہوگئے ہیں؟ How long have you been in Delhi?	
	Announcing yourself to strangers, coping with requests, using the post office, students and colleges	240
	Urdu – English vocabulary	257
	Answer key	282
	Appendix 1	316
	Appendix 2	319
	Grammatical index	320

### INTRODUCTION

Urdu, the official language of Pakistan and one of the 15 officially recognised languages of India, is spoken as a mother tongue by an estimated 50 million people. To this we may add the millions of people both inside and outside the subcontinent who use Urdu in addition to their own language as a primary means of spoken and written communication. Like it 'sister', Hindi, Urdu came into being in Delhi and its surrounding areas as the result of the Muslim conquests of India in the 11th and 12th centuries AD. The Persian-and Turkish-speaking invaders adopted the language of the capital to communicate with the local inhabitants, and quickly added a vast stock of Persian (and through Persian, Arabic) words to its vocabulary. At first the Muslim rulers referred to this growing language simply as 'Hindi', i.e. 'Indian'. Much later it acquired the name 'Urdu', a Turkish word meaning 'barracks' from the area of Old Delhi with which it was closely associated—the *Urdu-e Mu'allā* 'the Exalted Royal Army Camp'. In English we find the word Urdu as 'horde', the armies of Genghis Khan and the Mongols.

By the end of the 16th century, Urdu written in a modified form of the Arabic alphabet, with an ever increasing number of Arabic and Persian loanwords, became a flourishing literary language, and over the last three centuries has been the major vehicle for the literature of the Muslims of the subcontinent. From the beginning Urdu functioned as a convenient lingua franca, and was not linked to any one geographical area, so its appeal became universal, and it was much favoured by the British, who often referred to it as 'Hindustani' ('Indian'). Although it is fair to say that the language is now mainly connected with the Muslims of the subcontinent, its literature also boasts a number of prominent Hindu and Sikh writers. After Partition in 1947, Urdu was the natural choice for the national or official language of Pakistan.

Wherever they have migrated, Urdu speakers have taken their language and culture with them. In parts of East Africa, the Persian Gulf and, of course, Britain and the USA, Urdu still maintains its role as a major means of general communication.

At the basic, conversational level, Urdu and Hindi are virtually identical, differing from each other in script, technical and literary vocabulary, and, of course, cultural background. The debate about whether one is speaking Hindi or Urdu is endless, and fraught with subtle problems. Suffice it to say that if you chat in Urdu to a Hindi speaker, he will naturally assume you are speaking Hindi, and vice versa.

Urdu belongs to the Indo-European family of languages and is ultimately related to English and many other European languages, with which you will find it has much in common. Like English, French and German it has the familiar patterns of nouns, verbs, gender, case, etc. It is a very regular, but at the same time an extremely precise language, making clear distinctions in its pronouns between people of lower and higher orders, and in its verbs between what happens now and what happens generally. Because it is written in a script which does not employ vowels, and which, like English, has a number of letters used to represent the same sound, spelling is something which requires constantattention.

### How to use this book

First, you must thoroughly master the script, which is introduced gradually in the first section. At the same time, you should make sure that you fully understand the system of phonetic transcription, which is used throughout to indicate correct pronunciation. The dialogues of the first five units are fully transcribed, as are all new words and phrases in the following units. Examples of the Urdu script, often beautifully written, can often be found outside Indian and Pakistani restaurants and shops in almost any town in Britain and the USA. Practise your reading skills by trying to decipher them as you pass.

Each unit contains two or three dialogues composed in practical, everyday Urdu. From the outset care has been taken to give you practice in the 'polite' style of speaking, which is characteristic of Urdu. Literal translations of many polite phrases may sometimes seem a little quaint, but in Urdu such expressions are part of ordinary speech.

- First, try to understand each dialogue by reading and listening to the recording in conjunction with the vocabulary that follows.
- Only then should you have recourse to the transliterated and translated versions provided. When you have finished a unit, it is a good idea to read the dialogues out loud to yourself. The more you can commit to memory, the easier it will be to speak without hesitation.
- The spelling and grammar notes in each unit relate directly to the new material contained in the dialogues. They also contain a certain number of additional words and expressions which will be of use. The precision of Urdu means that grammar should be mastered as thoroughly as the vocabulary. You will find that committing very logical rules to memory will pay great dividends in the future.
- The exercises within and at the end of the units are of a practical nature and will help you check your progress. For those who wish to learn how to compose Urdu some English—Urdu translation exercises are also included.

It goes without saying that you should make sure you have completely mastered one unit before going on to the next. When testing yourself on vocabulary it is a good idea to proceed from the English side of the list to the Urdu. If you know the Urdu word for 'book', you will naturally know the meaning of the Urdu word in English!

Because of the somewhat illogical nature of the Urdu counting system, the numbers have been given in an appendix. Whatever your purpose in learning Urdu, numbers will always be essential, and once learnt should be constantly practised.

The English translations of the dialogues in the first five units deliberately follow the Urdu as closely as possible, at the expense of making the English seem a little stilted. Once you have been through the dialogue, it would be good practice to recast the translation into a more idiomatic style.

# Reading and writing Urdu:

# Pronunciation, transcription and script

#### The Urdu alphabet

Urdu is written in an adapted form of the script which was first used to write Arabic in the 6th and 7th centuries AD. During the 8th century the Persians began to use the Arabic script for their own language, adding a few extra letters for sounds which did not occur in Arabic. After the 12th century the Central Asian invaders of India, who had already adopted the Arabic script for writing Turkish, used it to write the language of Delhi, which eventually became modern Urdu.

The Arabic script, like that of Hebrew, is written from right to left, the opposite direction from English:

مين أردوسيكه ربا مول

The script is **cursive**, that is most of the letters join each other, and cannot be 'printed' separately. There are no capital letters, and for the most part only consonants are written. Although there are special signs for indicating vowels, these are rarely used. Since there is no way of telling which vowels are to be employed, each word has to be learnt with its pronunciation. This is indicated in simple phonetic transcription in the book. In the vocabulary sections each word will be noted thus:

Urduscript Phonetic transcription Meaning

sabab cause

kalkatta Calcutta

Many letters of the alphabet have the same shape, and are differentiated from one another by the arrangement of dots which may be written either above or

below the letter. Reading from right to left, compare the following basic shapes:

The dots play a crucial role and must never be left out.

There are two major styles of printed script, both of which follow handwriting very closely. The first is known as naskh (the Arabic word for 'writing'). This is used for typing Arabic and Persian, but has never been popular with Urdu speakers. The second is known as nasta'līq (literally 'hanging naskh'), an ornate, sloping version of the script, developed in Persia and India during the Middle Ages. This is the style preferred for Urdu. At its best, nasta'līq possesses great natural beauty, and for this reason Urdu speakers have always resisted the more commonplace naskh. There is not a vast difference between the two styles, although this may not seem the case at first sight.

Brief examples of verse are written in naskh and nasta'līq respectively as follows:

مُن کی دولت ہاتھ آئی ہے تو کھر جائی تمیں تن کی دولت چھاؤں ہے، آتا ہے دھن جاتا ہے دھن مُن کی دیا میں نہ پایا میں نے افر گئی کا رائ مُن کی دیا میں نہ دیکھے میں نے شخ و بر ہمن پائی پائی کر گئی محکو قلدر کی ہے بات تو چھا جب فیر کے آگے نہ مُن تجرا نہ تن تو چھا جب فیر کے آگے نہ مُن تجرا نہ تن Since the Urdu alphabet is cursive, most letters have four forms: independent (the letter written in its full form, standing alone); initial (the letter coming at the beginning of a word; medial (the letter in the middle of a word); final (the letter at the end of a word). This can be demonstrated with the Urdu letter E Z, which starting from right to left is joined thus:

**₩** 

b is independent; b is initial; b is medial; b is final.

Some sounds are represented by more than one letter of the alphabet. For example, the sound z is represented by four letters:

ا ض ز ز

The Urdu alphabet has 35 letters, plus a number of signs which are written above the letters to indicate the doubling of a consonant, the absence of a vowel, a break in the middle of a word, etc.

Most letters fall into sets of the same basic pattern of shapes, members of the set being distinguished from one another only by the dots written above or below the basic shapes. For example, the basic shapes - and - have in their sets:

Vowels may be indicated by a sign written either over or under the letter:

or by one of the consonants which in certain circumstances also function as vowel markers. The use of three vowel signs is very restricted and is usually only found in dictionaries, where exact pronunciation needs to be indicated. Otherwise vowel signs are hardly ever used.

#### Transcription

As we can never ascertain the correct pronunciation of an Urdu word from the way in which it is written, it is necessary to transcribe the words into The following features of the transcription should be carefully noted:

- A line written over a vowel indicates that it is 'long':
  - tab 'then'
     short a which sounds like the u in English 'tub'

      $b\bar{a}b$  'gate'
      $long \bar{a}$  which sounds like the a in English 'barb'

     kis 'whom'
     short i which sounds like the i in English 'kiss'

      $s\bar{m}$  'silver'
      $long \bar{i}$  which sounds like the e in English 'seem'

     pul 'bridge'
     short u which sounds like the u in English 'pull'

      $k\bar{u}$  'lane'
      $long \bar{u}$  which sounds like the oo in English 'coo'.
- A dot under the letter f and d indicates the distinctive 'Indian' t and d sounds, which are produced by turning back (retroflexing) the tongue onto the roof of the mouth. These are known as retroflex sounds and must be distinguished from t and d (without a dot), which are produced by putting the tip of the tongue behind the top front teeth. These are known as dental sounds.
- Urdu has a set of strongly aspirated consonants, which are produced by exerting breath pressure when pronouncing them. In Urdu, the presence or absence of aspiration is crucial. For example, Urdu khā (strongly aspirated) means 'eat'; kā (no breathiness) means 'of'. In our transcription h written after a consonant means that it is aspirated.
- Pay special attention to the letter c which is pronounced like the ch in 'church' but with no breathiness. Its aspirated counterpart ch is like English ch but this time with strong aspiration. The Urdu word cāe 'tea' sounds like 'chy' (rhyming with 'by') with no breath; the word che 'six' sounds like chhay with lots of breath. Always remember that in our transcription c is always pronounced ch and never like k.
- The letter x is pronounced like the ch in Scottish loch.
- The letter q is similar to English k but pronounced further towards the back of the throat.
- The letter š is pronounced like sh in English ship.

The letter ğ is pronounced something like the French r in Paris.
 The Modern Greek g in Georgiou is closer.

READING AND WRITING URDU

- The letter ž is pronounced like the si in English television. In fact, the only common Urdu word in which it makes an appearance is telīvižan.
- The letter n coming after a vowel indicates that the vowel is 'nasalised' (pronounced through the nose). The final syllable of Urdu kitābon 'books' sounds like French bon.

Other consonants are pronounced in much the same way as their English counterparts.

The table of Urdu sounds below follows the traditional order of the alphabet. Reading from **right** to **left** you will see the **independent** form of the Urdu letter followed by its name, e.g. alif, be, ce, dāl like a, b, c, d in English; the symbol used in transcription; a rough equivalent of the sound in English (or in one of the better known European languages); an Urdu word containing the sound.

We begin with the vowels, which do not form part of the alphabet as such. These are followed by the consonants, several of which (t, s, z, h) have the same sound. The letter r is a quickly produced d sounding something like the tt in the American pronunciation of butter

There are two letters for  $h: \mathcal{U}$  known as  $baq\overline{\imath}\,he$  'big he' and b known as  $chot\overline{\imath}\,he$  'little he'.

Urdu Word	Sound in English (etc.)	Phonetic symbol	Urdu letter	
Vowels	English (etc.)	Symbol	letter	
ab 'now'	among, but	а	í	
āp 'you'	after, father	ā	ĩ	
in 'those'	in, bin	i	1	
tīn 'three'	teen	ĭ	ای	
un 'those'	pull	u	1	
ūpar 'upon'	pool	ū	أ	
ek 'one'	(French) été	e	21	
fon 'phone'	(French) beau	0	91	
aisā 'such'	hen	ai	<u>_</u> 1	
aur 'and'	or, because	au	1	

ww

Consonants	and the second	V 1 255	1 10 100 1.90	· un
amīr 'rich'	(discussed later)	none	alif	
bāp 'father'	bar	b	be	ب
bhāī 'brother'	aspirated b	bh	bhe	
par 'on'	unaspirated p	p	pe	پ
phal 'fruit'	aspirated p	ph	phe	10
tum 'you'	dental t	t	te	-
thā 'was'	aspirated t	th	the	1
taiksī 'taxi'	retroflex t	ţ	te	4
thīk 'all right'	aspirated t	th	the	0
sābit 'proved'	sing	S	se	2
jänä 'to go'	jar	i	jīm	3
jhīl 'lake'	aspirated j	jh	jhe	á
calnā 'to walk'	church	c	ce	3
chat 'roof'	aspirated c	ch	che	d
hāl 'condition'	hall	h	barī he	ż
xān 'Khan'	Scottish loch	x	xe	7
dāl 'lentils'	dental d	d	dāl	
dhūl 'dust'	aspirated d	dh	dhe	0
dāk 'post'	retroflex d	d	dāl	
dhāī '21/2'	aspirated d	dh	dhe	0
zarā 'just'	Z00	z	zāl	
rājā 'king'	(Italian) Roma	r	re	
baṛā 'big'	(American) butter	r	ŗe	
baṛhā 'increased'	aspirated r	rh	rhe	0.
zabān	Z00	z	z	
țelīvižan 'TV'	television	ž	že	3
<i>sāl</i> 'year'	seven	S	sīn	U
šer 'tiger'	share	š	šīn	ن
sadī 'century'	seven	S	sväd	U
zarūr 'certainly'	Z00	Z	zvād	J
tālib 'student'	dental t	t	toe	1
zālim 'cruel'	zoo	z	zoe	L
'arab 'Arab'	(discussed later)		ain	2
<i>ğarīb</i> 'poor'	(Greek) Georgiou	ğ	ğain	ě
fārsī 'Persian'	farm	f	fe	
qurān 'Quran'	back 'k'	q	gāf	7.3

karnā 'to do'	keep	k	käf	1	- 11
khānā 'to eat'	aspirated k	kh	khe	6	
gānā 'to sing'	go	g	gāf	5	
ghar 'house'	aspirated g	gh	ghe	5	
lāhaur 'Lahore'	lamp	1	lām	J	
madrās 'Madras'	Madras	m	mīm	7	
nām 'name'	name	n	nūn	ن	
vālid 'father'	between 'v' and 'w'	ν	vāū	,	
ham 'we'	home	h	chotī he		
yār 'friend'	yard	у	ye	5	

## Reading and writing Urdu

### Connectors and non-connectors

We have seen that the Urdu script is **cursive** and in both type and handwriting most letters are joined to one another from both the front and the back. Letters fall into two categories, connectors and non-connectors.

Connectors These are letters which join from both directions.

The letter  $\checkmark$  be, b, being a connector has four shapes:

Final Medial Initial Independent

The initial and medial shapes lose their long 'flourish', and the shapes connect as follows:

Non connectors These are letters which cannot be joined to a following letter. The first letter of the alphabet  $^{\dagger}$  alif, whose function is discussed later in this section, is one of these, and has only an independent and a final shape:

Final	Independer		
	1		
be + alif BUT	→   alif + be		

#### READING AND WRITING URDU

#### Functions of | alif; vowel signs

We have seen that there are three optional vowel signs, two of which are written above another letter, and one which is written below. These are:

- known as zabar, representing the short vowel 'a'
- known as zer, representing the short vowel 'i'
- known as peš, representing the short vowel 'u'.

These names are Persian, zabar meaning 'above', zer 'below' and peš 'forward'.

With the letter - they are written:

When one of the short vowels is required at the beginning of the word, that is if we want to write ab, ib or ub, the vowel sign is written over or under | alif, one of whose main functions is to 'carry' initial vowels. Thus:

bāb When the sign ~ (known as madd, 'increasing') is written over alif 1 at the beginning of a word it represents the long vowel a

ii

Usually the signs for the short vowels 'a, i, u' are not used. Therefore, unless we know beforehand, there is no way in which we can tell whether  $\psi^{-1}$  is to be pronounced ab, ib or ub. The Urdu word  $\psi^{-1}$  ab means 'now', but there are no words ib and ub, i.e. there is only one way in which - can be pronounced.

The short vowels are optional, but the sign ~ madd must never be omitted.

#### Letters 1-10

The first letter, | alif, is a non-connector and has only independent and final shapes. Letters 2-6 are connectors and have the basic shape - while letters 7-10 are also connectors with  $\zeta$  as the basic shape.

In the table below, reading from right to left, you will find the independent, initial, medial and final shapes of the letters; their 'phonetic' values; the Urdu name and number of the letter.

Na	me	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
1	alif	-	L	_	-	1 - 1
2	be	b	<u> </u>	بد	٠	_
3	pe	p	_	يد	2	į
	te	t	ت	ؿ	7	ت
5	te	t	ٹ	t	8	ك
6	se	S	ث	ثد	4	ث
7	jīm	j	6	5.	2	3
8	ce	<i>c</i>	2	5	2	3
9	baṛī h	e h	٤	5	,	Z
10	xe	x	ž	3	>	ž

#### Script exercise 1

Read the following words, and write them out, omitting the vowel signs, zabar, zer and peš, but be sure to write  $\sim madd$  and all the dots.

اَب	ab	'now'	بُب	but	'idol'
بئب	tab	'then'	باپ	bāp	'father'
ثابت	sābit	'proved'	جب	jab	'when'
يجياً ا	cacā	'uncle'	3	jaj	'judge'
آپ	āp	'you'	47	āţā	'flour'
بچيت	hacat	'cavinge'	12	nitā	'fother'

### Letters 11-19

Letters 11-13 have the basic shape 3 and are non-connectors. Letters 14-17 have the basic shape I and are also non-connectors.

It is important to keep the  ${\mathfrak I}$  set distinct from the slightly similar  ${\mathfrak I}$  set. Letters 18-19 are connectors with the basic shape of or alternatively, ..... Both shapes are equally common and often alternate with one another in the same word.

Name	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
11 dāl	d	L	-	_	,
12 <i>ḍāl</i>	<b>d</b>	t	_	_	3
13 zāl	Z	i		1	j
14 re	r	1	_	_	,
15 re	Γ	>			,
16 ze	z	>	_	_	;
17 že	ž	3	_	_	ż
18 sīn	S	0	w	~	J
		_	~	~	من
19 šīn	š	ش	سثث	شر	, 2
		سمث	ث	ث	ش

We now have two letters for the sound  $z: \vec{j} \not z \vec{n}$  and  $\vec{j} \not z$  and two for the sound  $s \stackrel{.}{=} s$  and  $\stackrel{.}{\cup} s \vec{n}$ . The letters  $\vec{j}$  and  $\stackrel{.}{=} o$  nolly occur in words of Arabic and Persian origin and are much less commonly used than  $\vec{j}$  and  $\stackrel{.}{\cup} .$  You should, of course, make sure that you recognise them.

### The sign o sukun

The sign written above a letter, known as sukūn (an Arabic word meaning 'rest', 'pause'), indicates the absence of a vowel.

In the word saxt 'hard', the sign 's shows that no vowel is to be pronounced after the letter  $\hat{C}$  xe. Similarly, is pronounced bahs 'discussion', 'indicating that no vowel is to be pronounced after  $\hat{C}$  bar  $\hat{L}$  he. Like the vowel signs, 's suk $\hat{u}$ n is optional and is rarely used.

### Sci

### Script exercise 2

Read the following words and write them out, omitting the vowel signs and  $suk\bar{u}n$ .

27	āxir	'finally'	ĹĬ	zabar	'zabar'
UÍ	us	'that'	مئنت	sust	'lazy'
12	baŗā	'big'	5	das	'ten'
بخار	buxār	'fever'	سخت	saxt	'hard'
أثزور	aždar	'python'	شراب	šarāb	'wine'
<b>زات</b>	zāt	'caste'	بارش	bāriš	'rain'

#### Letters 20-29

All these letters are connectors.

Letters 20 and 21 have the basic shape  $\mathcal{O}$ .

Letters 22 and 23 have the basic shape b. The upright stroke is written separately after the oval: b b. Letters 24 and 25 have the basic shape c. Note that the medial shape has a flat top.

Letters 26 and 27 are similar in shape, but note that the final and independent shape of  $\vec{j}$  fe has a flat flourish, while that of  $\vec{j}$  qaf is circular.

Letters 28 and 29 resemble each other, but  $\sqrt{k}$  kāf has one sloping stroke at the top, while  $\sqrt{g}$  gāf has two.

Name	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
20 svād	S	ص	ىھر	م	ص
21 zvād	Z	ىض	ىضر	ضر	ض
22 toe	t	بط	بطد	طد	4
23 zoe	z	نظ	نظر	ظد	B
24 'ain	1	2	ىو	8	ی
25 ğain	ğ	خ	نغ	ė	į
26 fe	f	ىف	نف	;	ن
27 qāf	q	ىق	تق	3	ق
28 kāf	k	~	1	5	3
29 gāf	g	1	1	-	5

We now have more letters representing the sounds t, s and z. b toe, b sväd, b zväd and b zoe are only used in words of Arabic origin.

#### The letter & 'ain

In Arabic the letter C 'ain, which we are transcribing as ', represents a rasping sound produced at the back of the throat. In Urdu and Persian the sound is ignored, even though the letter is preserved in the spelling of Arabic words in which it occurs. In practice, at the beginning of a word it functions in the same way as | alif, carrying an initial vowel: in Urdu, the word farab 'Arab' sounds exactly the same as the word arab 'necessity'.

#### Double consonants - the sign " taš dīd

In Urdu doubled consonants must be given their full force, as in Italian bello, ragazzo or in English bookcase (with a double k sound).

A doubled consonant may be indicated by writing the sign " tašdīd 'strengthening' overthe letter.

ií abbā 'daddy'

sattar 'seventy' سُقِّر

More often than not, as with vowel signs and  $suk\bar{u}n$ , the sign  $\ddot{w}$  is not written, and you just have to know that the word has a double consonant.



Read the following words and write them out, omitting the optional signs.

صاچب	sāhib	'Sahib'	بغ	bāğ	'garden'
رضد	zid	'stubbomness'	تخط	qaht	'famine'
خط	xat	'letter'	دَفْتَرَ	daftar	'office'
عُرَب	'arab	'Arab'	ٱلشر	aksar	'most'
عادّت	'ādat	'habit'	1-05	girtā	'falls'

#### Double consonants:

ÇÍ	abbā	'daddy'	يعزنت	izzat	'honour'
سُمُثَنَّا	kuttā	'dog'	أذا	aḍḍā	'office'

#### Letters 30-32

All these letters are connectors. Care should be taken to distinguish initial  $l\bar{a}m \ J$  and medial  $l\bar{a}m \ J$  which join the following letter, from J alif which does not. The initial and medial forms of  $\mathcal U$   $n\bar{u}n$  are the same shape as the  $\psi$  set.

Name	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
30 lām	1	J	1	ر	J
31 mīm	m	8	6	,	6
32 nün	n	U	i	;	Ü

U nun and U nun ğunna

The letter  $\omega$   $n\bar{u}n$  represents the sound n:

In final position when U is written without a dot it indicates that the preceding vowel is nasalised. This undotted  $n\bar{u}n$  is known as  $n\bar{u}n$  gunna 'nasalising'  $n\bar{u}n$ . In transcription it is written n, with a dot above the n.

Nasalised vowels are produced by diverting the airstream through the nose. French has a number of such vowels which are usually indicated by the letter n: bon, élan, rapidement, etc. In Urdu, all vowels can be nasalised.

The undotted nun can only be used at the end of a word:

ال māṅ 'mother' الله jāṅ 'darling'

If a nasalised vowel occurs in the middle of the word then the normal dotted  $n\bar{u}n$  must be used, since omitting the dot would make the letter illegible:

اللّٰ māṅg 'demand' اللّٰ tāṅg 'leg'

## √ kāf and ∮ gāf followed by ∫ alif and ∫ lām

When the letters  $k\bar{a}f$  and  $g\bar{a}f$  are followed by alif and  $l\bar{a}m$ , they have a special 'rounded' shape: f  $k\bar{a}f$  f  $g\bar{a}f$ . Thus:

6 163 kā 'of' šikār 'hunting' گام کل گل يكار شكل gām 'step' pukār 'calling' kal 'yesterday šakl 'form' gul jangal

J lām followed by I alif

Before I alif, U lām is usually written, U lā:

ال 'ilāj 'cure' پال lādnā 'to load' gilās 'glass' پال balā 'disaster'

		-			
2	O	ĸ	ı	ı	

#### TEACH YOURSELF URDU



Read the following words and write them out, omitting the ontional signs:

-		mo ming .	ords and will	te them e	uc, omnung un	optional signs.	
	گلکم	qalam	'pen'	كأنثا	kāṅṭā	'fork'	
	ٱلگ	alag	'separate'	مشكل	muškil	'difficult'	
	ماں	mān	'mother'	ممكان	mumkin	'possible'	
	كركا	laŗkā	'boy'	كالا	kālā	'black'	
		makān	'house'	3	muhammad	'Muhammad'	

#### Letter 33 9 vāū

The letter  $\mathcal{I}$  vāū, which is pronounced something like a cross between English 'w' and 'v', has two functions:

- (i) representing the consonant v
- (ii) representing the three long vowels  $\bar{u}$ , o and au

Note that, although it is transcribed with two letters, au is a single long vowel, something like the oa in English 'oar'.

It is a non-connector and has only two shapes.

Name	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
33 vāū	v. ū. o. au	y		-	,

### 9 vãu as the consonant v

vālid 'father' والِد savāl 'question' سُوال rav 'going'

#### 9 vāū as a vowel marker

When the three vowels  $\bar{u}$ , o, au, stand at the beginning of a word, they are written with l alif followed by  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$ :

In the middle or at the end of a word, they are indicated with 9 used alone:

READING AND WRITING URDU

الورا پورا الورک په الورک الورک الورک الورک الورک په الورک په قالورک په الورک په ال

These vowels can be nasalised, and at the end of a word this is indicated by  $\it j$  followed by  $\it U$   $\it n\bar{u}ngunna$ :

karūn 'I may do' laṛkon kā 'of the boys'

When necessary, the vowels may be indicated more precisely by writing  $^{s}$  pes over the preceding letter for  $\bar{u}$  and writing  $^{s}$  zabar over the preceding letter for au.

There is no mark for representing o.

aur أور ūpar أورٍ šauq شُوق šauq يُورا

If no sign is used, you may assume that the vowel is o:

log لوگ os اوس

Again, zabar and pes are rarely used, and only when confusion is likely to arise. For example, to distinguish between different words:

or 'direction' اُور aur 'and' sū 'direction' مو so 'thus' مو sau '100'

Even in this case, where real confusion can arise, the vowel signs are more often than not omitted.

### غو xe-vāū

Urdu has a number of very common words of Persian origin which begin with xe followed by  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$ . If l alif (making the vowel  $\bar{a}$ ) follows  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$ , the  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$  is not pronounced. This so-called 'silent  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$ ' is written in transcription as w

 $xw\bar{a}b$  'dream' (pronounced  $x\bar{a}b$ )
After  $\dot{C}$ , ه may indicate the long vowels  $\bar{u}$ , o, au, in the normal way:

xūb 'good' خوب xūn 'blood' خون xod 'helmet' نؤف خوف xauf 'fear'

But in two very common words,  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$  represents the **short** vowel u:

xud 'self' څوو 'xuš 'happy'



Read the following words and write them out, omitting the optional signs.

والِد vālid دُور daur 'period' itvār إثوار 'Sunday' أدنجا ūncā 'high' ئۇ<sup>ئ</sup>ىر navambar 'November' gorā 'white' 1,5 xūn 'blood' فۇن aulād 'children' أولاد خواب xwāb 'dream' xud 'self'

#### Letter 34 choți he

The next letter of the Urdu alphabet is called *choṭī* he 'little he' (as opposed to *baṭī* he  $\mathcal{L}$  which we have already seen). Both *choṭī* and *baṭī* he represent the 'h' sound. *baṭī* he is used only in words of Arabic origin.

The initial shape of *choṭī* he is written with a hook underneath it, The medial form is written either with or without a hook.

Name	Pho	netic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
34 Choțī	he	h	~	(4)7	7	0

### chotī he as a consonant

The normal function of *chofi he* is to represent the consonant h. In the following examples note its slightly different shapes according to what precedes and follows it:

hindū 'Hindu' אני munh 'mouth' אני honā 'to be' פוּ vāh 'bravo!' אינו kahān 'where' של koh 'mountair

In the final position, he must be pronounced and given its full force.

Initial chofi he has a special form written before I alif and U lam:

ען hān 'yes' יאט vahān 'there' 't hal 'plough' שלו ahl 'people'

#### Silent he

Urdu derives a large number of its most commonly used nouns and adjectives from Arabic and Persian. Many of these words end in choff he which is not pronounced. This so-called 'silent he' is written in the transcription with the vowel a, which is pronounced exactly as the long yowel a:

غير bacca 'child' من makka 'Mecca' الراده irāda 'intention' المرادة āhista 'slow'

The symbol a at the end of such words indicates that the word is written with  $chot\bar{t}$  he, and not with alif. There is, however, no difference in the pronunciation of pairs of words such as the following:

dānā 'wise' طأله طقاء طقاء طأله

The word  $\sqrt{naja}$  'king' is of Indian origin and properly spelt with a final alif. It was taken into Persian, and according to Persian convention was spelt  $r\bar{s}$  awith a final 'silent he'. It was then borrowed back into Urdu in that form. Consequently, in Urdu, both spellings  $|\psi\rangle$  and  $|\psi\rangle$  are acceptable. Whichever spelling is used, the pronunciation is, of course, the same.

#### Aspirated consonants do cašmī he

We have seen that Urdu has a set of aspirated consonants which are produced with a strong emission of breath. In the transcription, these are indicated by the consonant immediately followed by h: bh, ph, dh, th, kh, gh, etc. In the script the h marking aspiration is indicated by a variant of chofi he, which is known as do cašmī he ('two-eyed he'). do cašmī he has independent, initial, medial and final forms as shown in Table below.

Name	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
34(a) do d	ašmī he -h	N	*	200	20

XXX

D.	bh	ده	dh
Do	ph	<i>ۋھ</i>	фh
B	th	לם	rh
B	ţh	6	kh
B.	jh	6	gh
3	ch		

The aspirated consonants are written as follows:

Until recently, choṭī he 0 and do cašmī he v were regarded as alternative foms of the letter h, and could be used interchangeably. In other words, what is now properly written in Urdu as  $h\bar{a}\bar{n}$  'yes' or  $h\bar{n}\bar{n}$  'to be' was also written as  $h\bar{n}\bar{n}$  or  $h\bar{n}\bar{n}$ . The modern convention is to use chost  $h\bar{n}\bar{n}$  as a consonant, while do cašmī he is used exclusively for aspirates. Many people, however, still confuse the two letters. You should follow the modern convention.

✓ Script exercise 6

Read the following words and write them out, omitting the optional signs.

#### Choțī he as a consonant:

قبإل	vahān	'there'	05	koh	'mountain'
تبونا	honā	'to be'	עהצנ	lāhaur	'Lahore'
تيم	ham	'we'	المثالث	gahnā	'jewel'
Silent he:					
7 چشتہ	āhista	'slow'	باره	bāra	'twelve'
ž.	bacca	'child'	تشره	satra	'seventeen'

#### Aspirated consonants with do casmi he

بھات	bhāt	'cooked rice'	كعانا	khānā	'to eat'
تيكل	phal	'fruit'	3.	mujh	'me'
15	b=	'good'	,	35.31.	6 ille?

### Letter 35 ye

The last letter of the Urdu alphabet is ye, written in the transcription as y. Like vāū it is used both as a consonant and to represent long vowels. The READING AND WRITING URDU

initial and medial shapes are the same as the 🚅 set. There are two forms of the independent and final shapes, which are explained below:

Name	Phonetic value	Final	Medial	Initial	Independent
35 ye	y	5	يد	2	ی
		2	_		_

#### ve as a consonant

At the beginning and in the middle of a word ye usually represents the consonant y:

#### ye as a vowel marker

The letter ye is also used to represent the three long vowels ī, e, and ai. Note that, although transcribed with two letters, ai is one long vowel pronounced similarly to the e in English hen.

When these three vowels occur at the beginning of a word they are written with alif followed by ye:

اياك īmān 'faith' اياك ek 'one' اياك aisā 'such' In the middle of a word, these vowels are indicated by ye used alone:

sīna 'breast' وينا denā 'to give' سينه jaisā 'as' At the end of a word, the first final shape  $\mathcal{G}$  indictes the long vowel  $\overline{\imath}$ :

laṛkī 'girl' الري bhī 'also'

At the end of word, the second final shape  $\ensuremath{\boldsymbol{\leftharpoonup}}$  represents both the long vowels e and ai: ∠" larke 'boys'

All three vowels may be nasalised with nun gunna:

thīn 'were' مين hamen 'us' شين main I

When it is necessary to indicate pronunciation more precisely, the vowel sign  $\sim$  zer may be written under the letter preceding  $\mathcal G$  to indicate  $\bar r$ :

sīna سِین sīna thīn رخصي zabar may be used to indicate the vowel ai:

aisā اييا

jaisā جَيسا

No sign is used for indicating e:

کا larke

denā ويا

You will notice that this is a similar convention to that used for precisely indicating ū, o and au written with vaū. Again, the vowel signs are rarely



#### Script exercise 7

Read the following words and write them out, omitting the optional signs:

يهال yahān 'here' كميلنا khelnā 'to play'

دايال dāyān 'right' 5.3 pīr

يں men 'in' kaise 'how?'

إييث ī'nţ 'brick' ببثي beţī 'daughter' navve 'ninety hai 'is'

### More on vowels

### Pronunciation of short vowels before h

When coming immediately before h either  $\mathcal{L}$  or  $\partial$  – the short vowels have special pronunciations.

a before h is pronounced ai like the e in English hen:

21 ahmad

'Ahmad'

زبنا rahnā ي ا šahr

'to remain'

'city' i before h also sounds like the e in English hen:

mihrbānī

'kindness vāzih وَارْضِح 'clear'

u before h sounds like the o in English cot:

šuhrat شهرت

'fame'

الْحَجْةُ ا tavajjuh

'attention'

Note the pronunciation of three very important words which end in 'unpronounced' choți he:

READING AND WRITING URDU

Transcription ki

Pronunciation

ke 'that'

'this, he, she, it' ye

yih 09 vuh

'that, he, she, it' vo

Pronunciation of short vowels before & 'ain When the short vowels come before & 'ain, which is itself ignored in pronunciation,  $\mathcal{E}$  'ain has the effect of changing the quality of the vowel:

a before 'ain is pronounced ā

i before 'ain is pronounced e

u before 'ain is pronounced o

Transcription Pronunciation

ba'd bād 'after

جُع iama' jamā 'collected ši'r šer 'verse'

واقع vāgi' 'situated vāge

شُعلَه šu'la šola 'flame'

توقع tavaqqu' tavaqqo 'hope'

#### Vowel junctions with & hamza

In many Urdu words, one vowel may follow another, and both must be given their full value. For example: āo 'come' is clearly pronounced ā-o (not rhyming with English 'cow'); similarly kaī 'several' is pronounced ka-ī (not like English 'kay').

The junction between vowels is marked by the sign  ${\cal F}$  which is known as hamza. In Arabic hamza is a catch in the throat, sounding like tt in the Cockney pronunciation of 'bottle'.

When ye indicates the vowels  $\bar{\imath}$  or e coming immediately after another vowel, it must be preceded by the sign \* hamza. The hamza is written over a base which has the shape / traditionally, this is called the 'chair' on

کئی kaī 'several' 'twenty-three' teīs

which hamza 'sits'.

koī 'someone'

gae 'they went'

gāe 'they sang'

The short vowel *i* coming after another vowel is indicated by *hamza* 'sitting on its chair':

jāūn جادُل

37 āo 'come'
Often the *hamza* over , is omitted:

jāūn واول jāūn

If you mentally split the two vowels, ka- $\bar{i}$ , ko-ila,  $\bar{a}$ -o, you may think of hamza as the line l-l-you put between them.

There are many words which have the vowel combinations [ $\bar{t}\bar{a}$ ,  $\bar{t}e$ ,  $\bar{t}o$ ] in which hamza is not generally employed. For example:

י 'girls' של calie 'come on' אליבוע 'l arkīān' 'girls' של calīe 'come on' אליבע 'intitāt 'caution' אליבע 'l arkīon kā 'of the girls' בי בי במווים 'cāhīe 'is needed' אליבע ''לאי 'khirkīon men 'in the windows'

Script exercise 8

Read the following words and write them out, omitting the optional signs, but writing the hamza in all cases:

أثمد ahmad 'Ahmad' šu'la 'flame' إعتياط ihtīāt بمثبئ bambaī 'Bombay' caution عُمِدُه متى 'uhda 'position maī 'May' بَعض ba'z 'some' چائے cāe 'tea' وعبراض i'tirāz لاؤل lāūn 'let me bring' 'objection'

The Arabic definite article

The Arabic word for 'the' (the 'definite article') is  $\bigcup I$  al, and is joined to the word it precedes:

READING AND WRITING URDU

al-iksīr 'elixir'('the potion') الأحمير al-kuhl 'alcohol'('the powdered lead')

al-qurān the Quran (Koran)

Note that, exceptionally,  $\tilde{l}$  alifmadd is used for the  $\bar{a}$  in the word for Quran. The word  $\tilde{l}$  al- is employed in many Urdu expressions borrowed from Arabic. When the word following  $\tilde{l}$  al- begins with a letter representing one of the sounds d, n, r, s,  $\tilde{s}$ , t, n, l or z, the  $l\bar{a}m$  of the article is pronounced like the following letter. The most common example of this is the Muslim greeting:

as-salāmu 'alaikum 'the peace upon you' i.e. 'peace be upon you' (l+s>s-s).

The letters which 'attract' lām in this way are:

The most common examples of this 'attraction' are proper names taken from Arabic. In this case the vowel of the article is changed to u:

ق مثم الدين šams ud dīn Shams ud Din 'abd ur rahmān 'Abd ur Rahman المراكمان nūr uz zamān Nur uz Zaman

Before other letters, the *lām* of the article retains its value *l*:

abd ul 'azīz 'Abd ul 'Aziz' 'Abd ul 'Aziz' غيدالعزيز غيدالاسلام xuršīd ul Islām Khurshid ul Islam

These names literally mean Sun (of) the Faith, Servant (of) the Compassionate, Light (of) the Age, Servant (of) the Noble and Sun (of) the Islam.

KKK

erratic.

### Punctuation

Punctuation is a fairly recent innovation in Urdu. The only regularly employed punctuation marks are:

full stop

comma

?

Even in the most carefully printed Urdu books, the use of punctuation is still

#### **Compound words**

Like English, Urdu has many 'compound' words, i.e. one word made up of two, e.g. 'tea-house', 'fruit-seller'. The modern convention in Urdu is to write the two words separately without a hyphen:

cāe xāna 'tea shop' چائے فانہ phal vālā 'fruit seller'

do pahr ووچی 'two watch' = 'afternoon'

or as one word:

dopahar وويم phalvālā چائيخانه In this book compounds are written as separate words.

Unlike the rest of the alphabet, the numerals are written from left to right, as in English:

1 2 السلام عليكم 'وكثوربيرود كهال ہے؟

assalāmu 'alaikum, vikţoria roḍ kahān hai?

### **Hello!** Where is **Victoria Road?**

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say hello and goodbye ask directions

Road.

- address strangers
- obtain information

mukālima ek Dialogue 1 。 归

John stops Aslam in a Karachi street and asks him the way to Victoria

عان : السلام عليم السلام عليم السلام عليم : السلام عليم السلام عليم السلام عليم السلام عليم السلام عليم السلام ال

jān : assalāmu alaikum. aslam: va 'alaikum assalām

jān : yih batāīe, vikṭorīa roḍ kahān hai?

aslam : vikțoria rod vahān hai. dekhie. bahut dūr nahīn hai. kyā āp

amrīkan hain?

jān : jī nahīn. main angrez hūn. aslam : āp kā nām kyā hai? jān : merā nām jān hai. aur āp kā?

aslam : merā nām aslam hai.

jān : acchā, aslam sāhib. merā hotel yahān hai. ijāzat.

aslam : acchā, jān sāhib. xudā hāfiz.

jān : xudā hāfiz.

John : Hello. Aslam : Hello.

John : Tell (me) this. Where is Victoria Road?

Aslam: Victoria Road is there. Look. (It) is not very far. (What), are you

American?

John : No. I am English. Aslam : What is your name?

John : My name is John. And your name?

Aslam: My name is Aslam.

John : Very well, Aslam Sahib. My hotel is here. Excuse me

(may I take leave?)

Aslam: Very well, John Sahib. Goodbye.

John : Goodbye.

		-
_	-	
્.ଠ	П	
•	Н	
	П	
	н	

	jān assalāmu	John hello	-	vikțorīa rod	Victoria Road
	'alaikum		كہال	'kahān	where?
اسلم	aslam	Aslam	4	hai	is
وعليكم السلام	va'alaikum assalām	hello (in answer)	,	vahāṅ dekhīe	there look!, see!
~	yih	this	بهت	bahut	very
يتائي	batāīe	(please) tell (me)		dūr nahīn	far not

UNIT 1

كيا	kyā	what?;	آپاکا	āp kā	your
		introduces	تام	nām	name
		questions	ميرا	merā	my
آپ	āp	you	أور	aur	and
		[polite]	احجعا	acchā	good, very
امریکن	amrīkan	American,			well
		American	صاحب	sāhib	Mr
		person	ہو عل	hoṭal	hotel
U.	hain	are	يهال	yahān	here
جی تہیں	jī nahīn	no	اجازت	ijāzat	Excuse me
	main	I			[lit.:may I
انكريز	angrez	English,			take
	The state of	English			leave?]
		person	خداحافظ	xudā hāfiz	goodbye
760	hūń	am			100

### gavā'id Grammar قاصر

### لهٔ hijje Spelling

### Greetings : hello and goodbye; ماحب sāhib

The normal greeting used by Muslims is מולין אלין assalāmu 'alaikum. It literally means 'the peace upon you', and can be used at any time of day for 'hello', 'good morning', 'good evening', etc. It is answered by saying va 'alaikum assalām 'and upon you peace'. When taking leave of someone you can say אין ijāzat 'excuse me', literally '(give me) leave'. The phrase for 'goodbye' is widā hāfiz, a Persian expression meaning 'God (be your) Protector'. The word אים 'sāhib 'Mr' follows the person's name. It may be added to any of the person's names. Thus John Smith שלין 'jān ismith could be addressed either as אין ismith sāhib.

A verb is a word which denotes action, feeling, existing and so on. English examples are 'to do', 'to seem', 'to be', 'I do, you seem, he is', etc. In Urdu the verb 'to be' is honā.

In Dialogue 1 you met the forms:

Note that the words  $\frac{1}{2}$  yih 'this' and  $\frac{1}{2}$  yuh 'that' can also mean 'he, she, it', and that verb always comes at the end of thesentence:

Personal pronouns 'I' and 'you'; polite commands 'tell me' and 'look! '  $\,$ 

Personal pronouns are words such as 'l', 'you', 'he', 'they', etc. The Urdu pronoun *main* 'l' is used like its English counterpart:

We shall see that Urdu has three words for 'you', which indicate various degrees of familiarity and respect. The word most commonly used when addressing adults and elders (including one's father, elder brother, etc.) is  $\downarrow^{\uparrow}$   $\bar{a}p$ . This requires a special form of the verb which conveys respect. The polite form of command, which always ends in  $\not=$   $-\bar{i}e$ , e.g.  $\not=$   $\bar{i}e$  bat $\bar{a}\bar{i}e$ ' (please) tell me,  $\not=$   $\frac{1}{2}e$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}e$  dekh $\bar{i}e$  '(please) look, see', is only used with  $\not=$   $\bar{i}$  and is in itself respectful. Urdu therefore, requires no word for 'please'.

z yih » vuh 'this, that; he, she, it'

 $\frac{1}{2}$  yih means 'this' and  $\frac{1}{2}$  vuh means 'that', and may be used like their English equivalents:

UNIT 1

$$yih$$
 angrez this English (man) that American tell (me) this  $yih$   $yih$  bat $\overline{aie}$  tell (me) this  $yih$   $yih$  bat $yih$  that is a/the hotel

Urdu has no special word for 'a' or 'the', thus  $\mathcal{J}_{\mathcal{F}}$  hotal can mean either 'a hotel' or 'the hotel'.

with and wuth are also used as pronouns meaning 'he, she, it'. The actual meaning can be determined only from the context. with refers to a person or thing nearby: 'this person/thing here', wuth refers to a person or thing further away: 'that person/thing there':

yih angrez hai aur vuh pākistānī hai

He/she (here) is English and he/she (there) is Pakistani

In neutral circumstances when no contrast of distance is implied " vuh is more commonly used:







ہ اگریز ہے



#### Leaving out the pronoun

The personal pronoun is often omitted when the sense is clear:

آپ امریکن ہیں؟ جی نہیں' اگریز ہول āp amrīkan haīń? jī nahīń, angrez hūń Are you American? No, (I) am English

#### Questions

word order remains that of the statement:

آپ امریکن بی ق āp amrīkan hain? Are you American? Such questions are often prefaced by the word  $\checkmark ky\bar{a}$  'what?.

ي آپ اگريز بيل؟ kyā āp angrez hain? (What), are you English? لا يَا بَ كُلُ مَا كُم يَالُ عِلْ الْحِ؟ kyā āp kā hotal yahān hai? Is your hotel here?

Putting  $\sqrt{ky\bar{a}}$  at the start of the question makes little difference to the sense and its inclusion is optional.

In questions which ask 'what is?', 'where is?', the question word \( \subseteq ky\bar{a} \) what? or UK kahān 'where?' always comes immediately before the verb:

? ي كيا ب yih kyā hai? پاکستان کہاں ہے؟ pākistān kahān hai? آپ کا نام کیا ہے؟ āp kā nām kyā hai?

What is this? Where is Pakistan? What is your name? UNIT 1

merā my اَپ ap kā your

These words come before the word to which they refer. Note that  $\delta = \bar{a}p$  $k\bar{a}$  'your' consists of two elements which are written separately:

را تا  $mer\bar{a}n\bar{a}m$  my name  $\hat{b}$  se  $\hat{b}$   $\hat{a}$  pk $\bar{a}$  hotal your hotel

mukālima do Dialogue 2 در سالم الله الله الله

John meets Aslam again and after asking him about Karachi invites him to have tea in a nearby cafe.

جان : السلام عليم اسلم صاحب كيا عال ع؟ اسلم : آپ كى دعا ہے مب شحيك ہے۔ اور آپ ٹويك بيں؟ جان : بى بال ميں بالكل ٹويك ہول۔ اسلم صاحب به بتائي به برى عمارت كيا ہے؟ اسلم : به عمارت حدید بینک ہے۔ كانی فئى عمارت ہے۔

ا ک : یہ عادت حبیب بیک ہے۔ قال کی مارت ہے۔ بال : اور دہ کیا ہے دہاں؟ اسلم : دہ پوری بازار ہے۔ بہت پرانا بازار ہے اور بہت دلچپ ہے۔ جال : اور دہ آدی کون ہے؟ دہ سندھی ہے؟ اسلم : تی تہیں۔ دہ بنجابی ہے۔ کین ہیہ فورت یہاں' میہ سندھی ہے۔ جال : اچھا اسلم صاحب' کراچی بہت دلچپ خمبر ہے۔ دیکھے' یہاں چائے خاند ہے۔ جہلے جائے تبیئی۔

: assalāmu 'alaikum, aslam sāhib. kyā hāl hai? aslam : āp kī du'ā hai. sab ṭhīk hai. aur āp ṭhīk hain?

: jī hān, main bilkul thīk hūn. aslam sāhib, yih batāīe. yih barī 'imārat kyā hai?

aslam : yih 'imārat habīb baink hai. kāfī naī 'imārat hai.

jān : aur vuh kvā hai vahān?

aslam : vuh bohrī bāzār hai. bahut purānā bāzār hai aur bahut dilcasp hai.

jān : aur vuh ādmī kaun hai? vuh sindhī hai?

aslam : jī nahīń. vuh panjābī hai. lekin yih 'aurat yahāń, yih sindhī hai.

: acchā, aslam sāhib. karācī bahut dilcasp šahr hai. dekhīe, yahān

cãe xāna hai. calīe, cãe pīen.

: Hello, Aslam Sahib. How are you?

Aslam : (It is your prayer), all is well. And are you all right?

John : Yes, I am extremely well. Aslam Sahib, tell (me) this. What is this big building?

Aslam : This building is the Habib Bank. (It) is quite a new building.

John : And what is that there?

Aslam : That is Bohri Bazaar. It's a very old bazaar and very interesting.

John : And who is that man? Is he a Sindhi?

Aslam : No. He's a Panjabi. But this woman here. She is a Sindhi.

John : I see, Aslam Sahib. Karachi is a very interesting city. Look.

۷.:	حال	hāl	condition (m.)	بازار	bāzār	bazaar, market
	كياحال ٢٠		how are			(m.)
	= 1	hai	you?		purānā	old
	رعا	du'ā	prayer (f.)	د کچپ	dilcasp	interesting
	آپ کی دعاہے	āp kī du'ā	'it is	آدى	ādmī	man (m.)
	1	hai	(your)	كوك	kaun?	who?
- 8			prayer'	سندحى	sindhī	Sindhi
	ب	sab	all, every-	ينجابي	panjābī	Panjabi
	3 1 1 1 1		thing	الين	lekin	but
	تھیک	ţhīk	all right	عورت	'aurat	woman (f.
	بالكال	bilkul	absolutely	کراچی	karācī	Karachi
	. کی ہاب	jī hāṅ	yes	شم	šahr	city, town
	عري	šukrīa	thank you			(m.)
	12	baṛā	big	عائے خانہ	,cāe xāna	tea shop,
0.000	عمارت	ʻimārat	building (f.)	Market on the		restauran (m.)
	صبيب بينك	habīb	Habib	حپيلي	calīe	come on
	1 F 7 E 7	baińk	Bank (m.)	26	cāe	tea (f.)
	كافى	kāfī	quite	ييني	pīen	let's drink
	نا	nayā	new			
	بوہری بازار	bohrī bāzār	Bohri Ba- zaar (m.)			

#### UNIT 1

### qavā'id Grammar قراعد

**Spelling** 

Note the way in which the word bilkul 'absolutely' is spelt. It is, in fact, aborrowing from Arabic composed of three elements  $\downarrow bi$  'in'  $\lor l$  al 'the'  $\not kul$  'all'. In Urdu it functions as an adverb meaning 'absolutely', 'extremely':  $\downarrow bilkul$  thik 'extremely well',  $\downarrow bilkul$  šāndār 'absolutely fabulous!'.

Many Urdu nouns (words for things and people such as boy, city, John) and adjectives (descriptive words such as big, good, blue), mostly borrowed from Persian, end in choṭī he, which is not pronounced. The ending in transcription is written as -a:  $\sqrt{k}$  viktorīa 'Victoria',  $\sqrt{k}$   $\sqrt{a}$  v a shop',  $\sqrt{k}$   $\sqrt{a}$  taza 'fresh'. In pronunciation the ending  $\sqrt{a}$  is the same as  $\sqrt{a}$ . له، du'ā 'prayer', الله barā 'big', الله purānā 'old'.

#### **More greetings**

A common way of saying 'how are you?' is ?﴿ كَمَالُ مِنْ لِهُمُ المَّقَالِةُ لِمُعْ لِمُعْ الْمُعْلِينَ لِمُعْ 'what is (your) condition?'. It may be answered by the phrase تَهِ لَوْنَا وَعَلَيْهِ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينِ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِّينِ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعِلَّيْنَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَا الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعِلِّينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينِ الْمُعِلَّيْنِ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلِّينِ الْمُعَالِينِ الْمُعَالِينَ الْمُعَالِينَا الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلِّينِ الْمُعَالِينِينَا الْمُعِلِينِ الْمُعِلِّ عِلْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلِينِ الْمُعِلِّ عِلْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلَّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلِّ الْمُعِلْمُ الْمُعِلِ kī du'ā hai 'it is your prayer (which makes me well)'.

These phrases may be used by both Muslims and non-Muslims.

ين šukrīa is a common word for 'thank you' used by people of any religion.

#### Masculine and feminine

Urdu nouns fall into two groups or genders: masculine and feminine. Nouns denoting males such as  $\frac{\partial \vec{J}}{\partial m}$  'man' and  $\frac{\partial \vec{J}}{\partial m}$  'gentleman' are always masculine; those denoting females such as " $\frac{\partial \vec{J}}{\partial m}$ " 'aurat' 'woman' and sāhiba 'lady' are always feminine. Other nouns may be of either gender. Thus الله bāzār 'bazaar' and ألا šāhr 'town/city' are masculine, while له du'ā 'prayer' and الله 'mārat' building' are feminine. There are, unfortunately, no hard and fast rules for determining gender, which simply has to be learnt. In the first dialogue all the nouns were masculine. From now on each noun listed in the vocabulary will have its gender indicated with m. for masculine and f. for feminine; m.p. is used for masculine plural, and f.p. for feminine plural.

Adjectives in certain cases must agree with the following noun in gender, i.e.

change their gender to correspond with that of the noun.

Adjectives which have their masculine form ending in 1 -ā 'alif' such as we'l acchā 'good', 12 barā 'big', 💆 nayā 'new' change the ending 1- -ā to U- -ī before feminine nouns:

#### Masculine

#### Feminine

acchī cāe المجلى فإك acchā šahr good city المجلى على acchā sahr good tea nayā bāzār new bazaar יו אָנוּנ naī'imārat new building purānā hoṭal old hotel אָנוֹ אִפּלֹע purānī kitāb old book

Note the spelling of : nayā (masculine) and & naī (feminine). Agreement must be made wherever the adjective appears in the sentence:

yih ādmī acchā hai يه آدى الجماب vuh 'aurat acchī hai و مورت الجي ب vuh hoṭal purānā hai ووجو لل يراتاب yih 'imārat purānī hai يه ممارت يراني

this man is good this woman is good this hotel is old this building is old

الكري , 'dilcasp 'interesting' ولچپ dilcasp 'interesting' angrez 'English' make no change for gender:

دلچپ آدمی أنكريز عورت dilcaspādmī angrez 'aurat an interesting man an English woman

The words الله merā 'my' and الله āp kā 'your' are also adjectives and agree accordingly in gender with the noun:

ميراشير merā šahr میری کتاب merī kitāb آپ کاپورا نام ãp kã pūrā nām

my city my book your full name

آپ کی جائے āp kī cāe your tea

مندوستاني pākistānī, ياكستاني pakistānī امريكن angrez انگريز hindustānī 'Indian' may function as both adjectives and nouns:

ياكستاني عورت یہ پاکتانی ہے وہ ہندوستانی ہے

pākistānī 'aurat yih pākistānī hai vuh hindustānī hai a Pakistani woman he/she is a Pakistani he/she is an Indian

Although بندوستاني hindustānī is written with بندوستاني vau, the u is pronounced

UNIT 1

#### Who is he/ she?

The word for 'who?' is orall f kaun, and like all other 'question' words, such as orall f 'what?' and orall f kahān' 'where?' must come immediately before the verb:

ورون ع ؟ ووجالي Who is he/she (there)? He/she is a Panjabi

vuh kaun hai? vuh panjābī hai

ایر کون ہے؟ یہ سند حی ہے؟ Who is this? This is a Sindhi yih kaun hai? yih sindhī hai

### calīe, cāe pīen 'Come on, let's have tea'

The polite command form calīe means 'come on' or please get a move on'. The useful expression مِا عَلَيْكُ cāe pīen means 'let's drink/have tea'.

### mašq Exercise شق

#### 1.1 Fill in the blanks

Fill in the blanks with the correct masculine or feminine form of the adjective given in brackets (watch out for those that require no change). Before writing, check the gender of the noun.

> (good) (interesting) 4 ميراشير (big) (Indian)









John and Aslam go to have tea in a tea shop. In the course of the conversation they exchange personal details and telephone numbers. John is invited to Aslam's home.

جان : میرچائے خاندواقعی بہت اچھاہے۔ چائے اچھی ہے اور کھانا بہت مزے دارہے اللم : تى بال، يهالسب كي بهال سب كي بال صاحب بتائي، آپ كالورانام كيا بي؟ اسم : گاہاں، بہاں سب بھے ہے۔ جان صاحب بنا ہے ، آپ کا پورانا م کیا ہے؟
جان : میراپورانا م جان اسمتھ ہے۔ اورآپ کا پورانا م کیا ہے؟
اسلم : میراپورانا م گھراسلم خان ہے۔ ہیں یہاں کراچی میں انجینئر ہوں اورآپ؟
جان : میں کراچی میں ہاری ہوں اندن میں میں ڈاکٹر ہوں کراچی میں آپ کا گھر کہاں ہے؟
اسکم : میرا گھر بندرروڈ پر ہے۔ بہت دورتیس۔ گھر پرانا ہے کین اچھا ہے۔ آپ بھی آ ہے۔
جان : شکرید، اسلم صاحب آپ کا شیفون نم رکیا ہے؟
جان : میرانم دو ، چار ، سات ، تین ، پانچ ہے۔
جان : شکرید، اور میرانم رائم رائم ، سات ، تین ، مین ، شفر ، نو ہے۔
جان : شکرید، اور میرانم رائم رائم ، تھے ، آٹھ ، صفر ، نو ہے۔

: yih cāe xāna vāqa'ī bahut acchā hai. cāe acchī hai aur khānā iān bahut mazedār hai.

aslam : jī hān, yahān sab kuch hai. jān sāhib, batāīe. āp kā pūrā nām kyā hai?

: merā pūrā nām jān ismith hai. aur āp kā pūrā nām kyā hai?

aslam : merā pūrā nām muhammad aslam xān hai. main yahān karācī men injinīr hūn. aur āp?

: main karācī men sayyāh hūn, landan men main dākṭar hūn. jān karācī men āp kā ghar kahān hai?

aslam : merā ghar bandar roḍ par hai. bahut dūr nahīn. ghar purānā hai. lekin acchā hai. āp kabhī āīe. ek pākistānī ghar dekhīe.

jän : šukrīa, aslam sāhib. āp kā ţelifon nambar kyā hai?

aslam : merā nambar do cār sāt tīn pānc hai.

: šukrīa. aur merā nambar ek che āṭh sifr nau hai.

UNIT 1

Į..O

John : This tea shop is really very good. The tea is good and the food is very tasty.

Aslam: Yes. (There's) everything here. John Sahib, tell me. What is your full name?

John : My full name is John Smith. And what is your full name?

Aslam: My full name is Muhammad Aslam Khan. I am an engineer here

in Karachi. And you?

John : I am a tourist in Karachi. In London I am a doctor. Where is your house in Karachi?

Aslam: My house is on Bandar Road. It (is) not very far. The house is old, but it is good. (You) come sometime. See a Pakistani house.

John : Thank you, Aslam Sahib. What is your telephone number?

Aslam: My number is 24735.

John: Thank you. And my number is 16809.

واقعی کھانا	vāqa'ī khānā	really food (m.)	بندر رود	bandar roḍ	Bandar Road (m.)
مز سادار	mazedār	tasty	1	par	on, upon
سب پچھ	sab kuch	everything	نے	se	from
بورا	pūrā	full	مجھی	kabhī	sometime
أشمته	ismith	Smith	21	āīe	please
2	muham-	Muham-	W. C.		come
	mad	mad	ایک	ek	one, a
خان	xān	Khan	ميليفون	telīfon	telephone
میں	men	in			(m.)
انجينر	injinīr	engineer (m.)	نبر	nambar	number (m.)
ياح	sayyāh	tourist (m.)	9)	do	two
اندن	landan	London	طار	cār	four
		(m.)	بات	sät	seven
ڈاکٹر	dākţar	doctor (m.)	تين	tīn	three
گھر	ghar	house, home (m.)	پانچ	pānc	five

### وَاعر وَ qavā'id Grammar

#### Names

#### 'in', 'on', 'from' - postpositions

In English, words such as 'in', 'on, 'from' are known as prepositions and come before the word they modify: 'in London', 'from here', etc. In Urdu their equivalents of men' in',  $\not$  par 'on', otin se 'from' follow the word they modify and are termed postpositions.

ghar se from the house گرے braidford men in Bradford بریار فورڈ میں braidford بریار فورڈ میں bandar rod par on Bandar Road برال سے دور yahān se dūr far from

#### **Place names**

So far we have met various names for countries, towns and streets, the spelling of which should be carefully noted:

g or willer	i siloulu de cui e	runy noted.
مندوستان	hindustān	India
ياكنتان	pākistān	Pakistan
منده	sindh	Sindh
بنجاب	panjāb	Panjab
كراچى	karācī	Karachi
لندن	landan	London
5,0 2.	braidford	Bradford
وكثورييه روة	vikțorīa rod	Victoria Road (Karachi)
بندر روق	bandar roḍ	Bandar Road (Karachi)
بویری بازار	bohrī bāzār	Bohri Bazaar (Karachi)

#### Numbers

The Urdu numbers from 0-10 are given in Appendix 1. These should now be learnt.

#### siqāfat Culture ڤانت

UNIT 1

Urdu is one of the major languages of India as well as of Pakistan and is spoken by people of various religious and cultural backgrounds. In Pakistan, the majority of people you will meet will be Muslims, and so the customary Muslim greetings  $\int_{-l/l}^{l/l} for 'hello'$  and  $\int_{-l/l}^{l/l} for 'goodbye'$  will usually be sufficient. When greeting or taking leave of one another, Hindus use the word in an amaste, which can be used at any time for both 'hello' and 'goodbye'. A greeting used by people of all faiths is  $\int_{-l/l}^{l/l} dl dl$  arz hai literally meaning 'respect is presented'.

Karachi is a huge cosmopolitan port > bandar 'port' (hence Bandar Road) in which both western and Asian influences are visible. In its colourful bazaars, of which the central Bohri Bazaar is the biggest, you will see not only native Sindhis (people from the province of Sindh), but Panjabis, Balochis, Afghans and many people who have migrated there from India.

### mašqen Exercises مثق

#### 1.2 Write these sentences in Urdu.

- 1 Say hello to Mr Khan and ask him how he is.
- 2 Ask him where Bandar Road is.
- 3 Tell him your name.
- 4 Tell him your hotel is not far away.
- 5 Take your leave and say goodbye.

#### 1.3 Give your part in the dialogue.

السلام عليم\_كياحال ٢٠ Aslam Answer the greeting and say you are fine كياآپ انگريزين؟ Aslam Tell him that you are You آپ ہوئل میں ہیں؟ Aslam Say yes, you are You آپ کا ہو عل بہال سے دور ہے؟ Aslam Say that it is not You الچھا' اجازت۔ خداحا فظ Aslam Say goodbye You

#### 1.4 Sums

Work out the answers to these sums and write them out in words and figures.

### **1.5** Comprehension

Listen to the dialogue and tick the appropriate answers.

1	Where is Mr Khan's house?	In London ( )	In Karachi ( )
2	Where is Mr Khan originally from?	India ( )	Pakistan ( )
3	Is Mr Khan's house far away?	Yes ( )	No ( )
4	What is Mr Khan's house like?	New()	Old ( )

### 1.6 Answer the questions

Look at the visitor's entry form and answer the questions.

Name	محمد خان
Country of Origin	بإكنتان
Place of Residence	کراچی
Address	۳۵ بندر روؤ
Occupation	انجينتر
Place of Residence in UK	بريثه فورؤ
Duration of stay (days)	١٠(وي)

- 1 Which country does Mr Khan come from?
- 2 He lives in Victoria Road. True or false?
- 3 He is a doctor. True or false?
- 4 How many days is he staying in the UK?
- 5 He is visiting London. True or false?

# آئے۔تشریف لائے۔تشریف رکھے

āīe, tašrīf lāīe, tašrīf rakhīe

### Please come in and take a seat

In this unit you will learn how to:

- introduce yourself■ make polite conversation
- describe your family
- address children

### سكالم ايك mukālima ek Dialogue 1

John and his wife, Helen, are invited to dinner by Aslam and his wife, Bilqis, who introduce them to their children.

اسلم: آیے، جان صاحب، تشریف لا یے۔ کیا حال ہے؟
جان: آپ کی دعاہے، اسلم صاحب۔ بین ٹھیکہ ہوں شمریہ۔ میری بیگم ہے ملیے۔ ان کا نام
تبیلن ہے۔ لندن میں مید بی ڈاکٹر ہیں۔
اسلم: الملاملیم بہیلن صاحبہ۔ آ یے، تشریف لا یے ۔ آپ لوگ میری بیگم ہے ملیے۔
ان کا نام بیس ہے۔
بہیلن: آداب عرض ہے، بیشن صاحبہ۔ کیا بیدآپ کے بیچ ہیں؟
بہیلن: آداب عرض ہے، بیشن صاحبہ۔ کیا بیدآپ کے بیچ ہیں؟
بیشن: گیا ہاں۔ ہمار ابزا بیٹا ہے۔ اس کا نام بیشن ہے۔ میں میں دولز کے اور دولز کیاں۔ یہمار ابزا بیٹا ہے۔ اس کا نام بیشن ہے۔ اور دولز کیا اور اقدال میں میں دولز کے اور دولز کیا اور اقدال میں میں دولز کیا دولز کیا اور اقدال میں میں دولز کیا دولز کیا دولز کیا دولز کیا دولز کیاں۔ یہ دولز کیا ا کیاں۔ ہارے جارے چاہے۔ اس کانام طدے۔ اور پیمارا جھوٹا بیٹا ہے۔ اس کانام اقبال ہاور پیمارا کرا دوبیٹیاں ہیں۔ زرگس اور جیلہ جہلہ بہت چھوٹی ہے۔ صرف دوسال۔ دیکھیے ان کی چیزیں ہرجگہ بھری پڑئی ہیں۔ جیلن : کوئی ہات جیس ۔ چے ہیں، اور کیا! جیلن : کی تیس۔ مارے بچے ہیں؟

TEACH	WOLIDOFI F	
IEACH	YOURSELF	URDU

UNIT 2

يّ āīe

bacce

hain

aur kyā

U

அள hamāre cār we have

four

children

so what?

jān : āp kī du'ā hai, aslam sāhib. main ṭhīk hūn šukrīa. merī begam se milīe. in kā nām helan hai. landan men vuh bhī ḍākṭar hain. assalāmu 'alaikum, helan sāhiba. āīe, tašrīf rakhīe. āp log merī begam se milīe. in kā nām bilqīs hai. helan : ādāb arz hai, bilqīs sāhiba. kyā yih āp ke bacce hain? bilqīs : jī hān. hamāre cār bacce hain, do laṛke aur do laṛkīān. yih haṃārā

baṛā beṭā hai. is kā nām hāmid hai. aur yih hamārā choṭā beṭā hai. is kā nām iqbāl hai. aur yih hamārī do beṭīān hain, nargis aur jamīla. jamīla bahut choṭī hai. sirf do sāl. dekhīe. in kī cīzen har jagah bikhrī-paṛī haiń.

helan : koī bāt nahīn. bacce hain. aur kyā? bilqīs : kyā āp ke bhī bacce hain?

aslam : āīe, jān sāhib, tašrīf lāīe. kyā hāl hai?

helan : jī nahīń. hamāre bacce nahīń.

Aslam : Come (in), John. Please come in. How are you?

: Well ('it is your prayer'), Aslam Sahib. I am all right, thank you. John Meet my wife. Her name is Helen. In London she is also a

Aslam : Hello, Helen Sahiba. Come, please take a seat (You people) meet my wife. Her name is Bilgis.

Helen : Hello, Bilqis Sahiba. Are these your children?

Bilqis : Yes, we have four children. Two boys and two girls. This is our elder ('big') son. His name is Hamid. And this is our younger son. His name is Iqbal. And these are our two daughters, Nargis and Jamila. Jamila is very small. Only two years (old). Look. Their things are scattered around everywhere.

Helen: It doesn't matter. (They) are children. So what?

Bilqis : Do you also have children? Helen : No. We don't have children.

ш		ale	come	2/0/	laika,	bby (III.),
1	cī.	ānā	to come		laṛke	boys
	تشريف	tašrīf	honour(f.)			(m.p.)
	الای	lāīe	bring	لژ کی ' لژ کیاں	laṛkī,	girl (f.),
	tu	lānā	to bring	- 100 To 100 U	laṛkīān	girls (m.f.)
	تشريف لايئ	tašrīf lāīe	please	یزا - ی - <u>ب</u>	baṛā, -ī, -e	elder
			come (in)	بنا' ہے	bețā, bețe	son (m.),
	رکھے	rakhīe	place, put	A6 - A3		sons
	ركحنا	rakhnā	to put,			(m.p.)
	The second		place	اسکا	is kā	his, her, its
	تشريف ركھيے	tašrīf	please sit	طد	hāmid	Hamid
		rakhīe	down	چھو تا	choțā -ī, -e	small,
1	يكم	begam	wife (f.)			younger
1	ے ملے	se milīe	please	اقبال	iqbāl	Iqbal
1			meet		bețī, bețīān	daughter
1			(with)	- Higher Harr		(f.),
-	انکا (کی کے)	in kā, -ī, -e	his, her,			daughters
			their	What is		(f.p.)
		helan	Helen	زخمی	nargis	Nargis
- 1	بيهى	bhī	also, too	جيله	jamīla	Jamila
	<u></u>	hain	are	صرف	sirf	only
		sāhiba	Mrs, Miss	سال		year (m.)
1	لوگ	log	people	دوسال	do sāl	two years
1	7º Joseph Inc.		(m.p.)	Company of		(old)
1	آپ لوگ	āp log	you	ان کا 'کی ' کے	un kā, -ī,	their
1	200		(plural)		-е	(2,000,)
	بلقيس	bilqīs	Bilqis	U.Z. Z.	cīz, cīzen	thing (f.),
1	5. 5.	bacca,	child(m.),			things
-		bacce	children			(f.p.)
			(m.p.)	ہر جگہ	har jagah	every-
	یہ آپ کے بچ	yih āp ke	are these	(		where
1	507	bacce	your	بمحری پڑی	bikhrī-	scattered
		hain	children?	in his regulation	paŗī	
	مارا -ی	hamārā, -ī,	our	کوتی	koī	some, any

とり'ピリ laṛkā,

boy (m.),

some, any matter, thing (f.) it doesn't

matter do you

have children?

ات bāt

nahīn

āp ke

hain

koī bāt كوئى بات نبيس

## ठी अंगे qavā'id Grammar

### Polite commands: 'please do this!'; the Urdu verb

The Urdu verb is referred to (e.g. in dictionaries) by its infinitive which is the equivalent of the English 'to tell', 'to see', 'to come'. The infinitive always ends with t -nā: tt batānā 'to tell', '\(\sigma\) dekhnā 'to see', \(\sigma\) calnā

By removing the ending  $t - n\bar{a}$ , we find the stem, the part of the verb from which all other parts are formed. A parallel in English might be: 'to love' infinitive; 'love' stem; 'loved', 'loving' other parts of the verb.

We met the verbs الله batānā 'to tell', وكينا dekhnā 'to see', الله calnā 'to come (on)', in Unit 1. In Dialogue 1 of this unit we have four more verbs: t1 ānā 'to come', ₺ lānā 'to bring', ₺ rakhnā 'to place/put' and ₺ milnā 'to meet'. The stems of these verbs are: \( \tilde{l} \) ā, \( \tilde{l} \) lā-, \( \tilde{l} \) rakh-, \( \tilde{l} \) mil-

The polite imperative of verbs met so far are:

Infinitive		Stem		<b>Polite imperative</b>		
tta	batānā	t:	batā-	بتائے	batāīe	tell!
وكجفنا	dekhnā	ومكي	dekh-	و یکھیے	dekhīe	see!, look!
چلنا	calnā	چل	cal-	مپلیے	calīe	come on!
tī	ānā	7	ā-	آيخ	āīe	come!
CU	lānā	U	lā-	الي	lāīe	bring!
ركحنا	rakhnā	6,	rakh-	رکھیے	rakhīe	put/place
ملتا	milnā	J	mil-	ملي	milīe	meet!

#### Polite language

In the past, Urdu was heavily influenced by the Persian of the Indian courts, and still has many rather flowery polite expressions, which in normal conver-sation are used in place of everyday words. When asking someone into your house, as well as saying عَلَى اللهُ الله

### ು se milnā 'to meet'

The verb # milnā 'to meet' is always used with the postposition = se. In Urdu you 'meet from someone'.

#### Plurals

UNIT 2

Urdu nouns fall into four major groups.

Masculine nouns which end in 1-a or 'silent' + -a

Masculine nouns which end in any other letter

Feminine nouns which end in & -ī

Feminine nouns which end in any other letter

Nouns in the first group form their plural by changing  $\cdot$  - $\bar{a}$  and  $\cdot$  -a to  $\angle$  e:

Sometimes the plural of nouns ending in  $\mathfrak{s}$  such as  $\not\leqslant bacca$  is written simply with  $\mathfrak{d}-\not \leqslant -$  but the plural is still pronounced bacce. In other words, the written form does not change but the pronunciation does. In this book the plural is alway written with  $\angle -$  i.e.  $\xi$  bacce.

Nouns in the second group make no change for the plural:

## mašq Exercise مثق

### $2.1 \quad Complete the list using transcription and the Urdu script.$

ايك لزكا ek laṛkā one boy تین لڑ کے tīn laṛke three boys cār bacce fourchildren چار کچ دولا كيال do larkīān two girls سات عور تنیں sāt 'auraten seven women five daughters eightbooks six houses ten men

### Plural adjectives

Adjectives must agree with the noun they precede. Adjectives ending in  $1 - \bar{a}$  such as  $|\vec{q}|$  acchā 'good', |t| baṛā 'big' 'elder' form their masculine plural by changing  $1 - \bar{a}$  to  $\angle - e$ :

がは、acchā larkā 'good boy' こりを acche larke 'good boys' 」 barā ghar 'big house' 」 barē ghar 'big houses'
The feminine form of the adjective in & -ī makes no change for the plural:

ເປັນ baṇī beṭī 'big/elder ປະປະ baṇī beṭīān 'big/elder daughter' daughters'

uaugne المحالي ا acchī 'aurat 'good woman' المحالية عند المحالية المحالية

Adjectives ending in any other letter make no change for the plural:

z yih 'these', w vuh 'those'

Before plural nouns  $_{x}$  yih means 'these', w vuh means 'those':

yihkitāben 'these books' とり。 vuh larke 'those boys'

#### Personal pronouns

In Unit 1 we met the pronouns  $\mathcal{L}$  main 'I',  $\sqrt{\phantom{a}}$   $\bar{a}p$  the polite word for 'you',  $\sim$  'w yih, vuh 'he, she, it'. We now look at some of the other pronouns.

 $\bar{j}$   $t\bar{u}$  'thou', 'you' is a singular pronoun which is used to address only one person. It is now used rarely in conversation, but is frequently used in poetry and film songs. It is also used when talking to animals and addressing God. The form of the verb  $t \times hon\bar{a}$  it takes is  $\leftarrow hai$ :

ي ميري مان؟ tū kahān hai, merī jān? Where are you my darling?

tum 'you' is a second person plural pronoun, which like English 'you' may be used to address one person or more. Itum is used for people 'lower' in the social order than oneself. It may, for example, be used for children, younger relations, waiters, taxi drivers, servants, and often for your mother, wife and very close friends. It is never used by a woman for her husband, who like her father, boss and most equals, would only be addressed as  $\sqrt{ap}$ . When males are addressed the pronoun requires plural agreement in both the noun and the adjective. The form of the hona it takes is st ho:

ss 🚁 🟂 i tum acche bacce ho you are a good child Obviously, this sentence could also mean 'you are good children'. The

context usually determines the meaning, but if any confusion is likely to arise, this is avoided by placing the masculine plural word Jy log people after the pronoun:

بوگر این مین tum log acche bacce ho you (people) are good children

When one female is addressed, however, the noun remains singular:

tum acchī larkī ho you are a good girl مَمْ الْحَلَّى لِالْ يَا مِعْ لِلْوَلِي مِعْ tum log acchī larkīāh ho you are good girls you are a good girl

The same considerations apply to  $\sqrt{1}$   $\vec{ap}$ , which is used for people to whom respect is due.  $\sqrt{1}$   $\vec{ap}$  is obligatory for elder male relations and for anyone who is addressed as  $\sqrt{1}$   $\vec{ap}$  sa $\vec{ah}$   $\vec{b}$  'Mr' or  $\vec{ap}$  s $\vec{ah}$  'Mrs/Miss'. In practice it is better to use  $\sqrt{1}$  to any adult, even to waiters, servants, etc., although you will often hear Urdu speakers using  $\sqrt{1}$  for such people. It must be remembered that  $\sqrt{1}$  is a plural pronoun and like  $\sqrt{1}$  requires plural autrements. agreement:

aslam sāhib, āp vāqa'ī bare ādmī hain Aslam Sahib, you are really a great man

begam sāhiba, āp pākistānī hain? Madame, are you a Pakistani?

begam can mean both 'wife' and 'lady'. A woman whose name is not known may be addressed as منامر begam sāhiba 'Madame'.

 $\bar{ap}$  may also be 'pluralised' by adding  $\bar{b}$  log:

آپ لوگ پاکتانی پین؟ āp log pakistānī hain? Are you (people) Pakistanis? ham is a plural pronoun like English 'we'; the form of the honā it takes is hain:

ham amrīkan hain; ham angrez nahīn hain

We are Americans; we are not English

Again, اوگ log may be added to من to show the plural:

ham log landan men dākṭar hain

We are doctors in London.

yih and w vuh, the words we have met for 'he, she, it', when used with the plural verb of hain 'are', mean 'they'. Again the word of may be placed after the pronoun to emphasise plurality:

UNIT 2

وه عورتین کون بین؟ وه سندهی بین

vuh 'auraten kaun hain'? vuh sindhī hain Who are those women? They are Sindhis

يه بچ كون ين ي يه مير ع بچ ين

yih bacce kaun hain? yih mere bacce hain

Who are those children? They are my children

The verb ts honā 'to be' is used with the personal pronouns as follows:

	Singular			Plural	
يى بول	main hūn	I am	بمين	ham hain	we are
توہے	tū hai	you are	تميو	tum ho	you are
بہ' دہ ہے	yih/vuh hai	he, she, it is	آپ ہیں	āp hain	you are (polite)
			17.00 -	vih/vuh hain	they are

#### Leaving out tx honā

dākṭar nahīṅ.

Note the expression وَلَى إِتَ نَيْنِ koī bāt nahīn 'some matter (is) not', which can be translated as 'it doesn't matter'.

### Possessive adjectives: 'my, your, his, her, its, our, their'

The possessive adjectives corresponding to the personal pronouns are:

مِن	maiń	ميرا	merā	my
ÿ	tū	تيرا	terā	your
~	yih	601	is kā	his, her, its
89	vuh	أسكا	us kā	his, her, its
e.	ham	מונו	hamārā	our
7	tum	تمهارا	tumhārā	your
آب	āp	آڀکا	āp kā	your
* ~	yih	إكا	in kā	their
	1	V. 6	un kā	their

27

تمارة	hamārā	מוכט	hamārī	امارے	hamāre	our	
501	us kā	أسك	us kī	أسك	us ke	his, etc.	
أككا	un kā	أكك	un kī	اُن کے	un ke	their	

#### Plural of respect

As we have seen Urdu is much more polite than English and many other European languages. Along with the three words for 'you', the use of which has social implications, and the honorific phrases which we have met for 'come in' and 'sit down', there are many other ways of indicating respect. One of these is the use of the plural when referring to one person to whom respect is due, e.g. the sentence 'this is Mr Aslam; he is my good friend; his house is in Karachi' must be translated into Urdu as 'these are Mr Aslam; they are my good friends; their house is in Karachi':

The 'plural of respect' must be used when talking about people who are present in your company and people who are known to and respected by the person to whom you are talking. Thus you would always say:

yih merī begam hain; in kā nām bilqīs hai This is my wife; her name is Bilqis

kyā āp ke vālid karācī main hain?

Is your father in Karachi?

begam rahīm bahut acchī xātūn hain

Mrs Rahim is a very good woman

The word שׁלּשׁ xātūn 'woman' is respectful and is used in preference to 'aurat in circumstances where respect is due. Remember that feminine nouns, when referring to one person remain singular even though the verb is plural; masculine nouns, however, have the plural form:

yih āp ke bete hain? in kā nām kyā hai?

Is this your son? What is his name?

yih āp kī beṭī hain? in kā nām kyā hai?

Is this your daughter? What is her name?

When referring to your own son or daughter, it is more usual to use the singular, although some people use the 'plural of respect' even for their own

يه ميرابياب إسكانام اقبال ؟

yih merā betā hai; is kā nām iqbāl hai

This is my son; his name is Iqbal

#### Relations

UNIT 2

Urdu has no verb meaning 'to have'. 'We have two sons' is expressed as 'our two sons are':

hamāre do bețe aur do bețīān hain

We have two sons and two daughters ('our sons and daughters are')

kyā āp ke bacce hain?

Do you have children? ('your children are?')

jī nahīn, hamāre bacce nahīn

No, we do not have children ('our children are not')

## mašq Exercise شق

### 2.2 Plural of respect

The following sentences all demand 'plural of respect'. Give the correct plural form of the adjectives and the verb 'to be' written in brackets.

For example:

ر حیم صاحب کراچی میں بہت (اچھا) ڈاکٹر (ہونا)۔ رحیم صاحب کراچی میں بہت ایتھے ڈاکٹر ہیں۔

2 بيم صاحب آب (الكريز) (بونا)؟

3 وه خالون کون (بونا)؟ کیا ده (پاکتانی) (بونا)۔

4 (آپکا) والد بھی یہال (ہونا)\_

5 (ان کا) (بڑا) میٹے (اچھا) انجیز (ہونا)۔











وه كون بين \_وه جمار ح دُاكثر بين

بيرحامد اور اقبال بين-بير ممار يدييني



## mukālima do Dialogue 2

While dinner is being prepared, John asks Hamid about his school.

جان : اسلم صاحب ميتا ي كرايي مي اسكول ايتي مين ؟ اسلم : قى بال- كن مير اينا مار كيا مال به بال ب- حاد ي وقيد ال حاد عمر الحر آؤريد المراح الكريزون اسمة صاحب مين -حاد : الملام عليم اسمته صاحب مين -

UNIT 2

jān

aslam

جان : وعليم السلام- حامد 'مية تاؤ- تمهارا اسكول كهال ؟ حامد : مير السكول كلفش ميل ب- برا امريكن اسكول ب-حامد : بہت بچے ہیں۔ دو تین سو بچے ہیں۔ جاك : وہال لؤكيال بھى ہیں ياصرف لؤكے ؟

چی : د د اس دیاں میں یا سرف رے . حالہ : صرف لائے ہیں۔ لائیاں تہیں۔ جان : اورامکول میں تم خوش ہو؟ عالہ : جیال : ہم لوگ وہاں بہت خوش ہیں۔

جال : اور کافشن کہال ہے؟ يمال سے دور ہے؟ حامد : جي بال ، يبال عے كافي دور ہے۔ ليكن الحجي جگه ہے۔

hāmid tum idhar āo. yih hamāre angrez dost, ismith sāhib, hain. : assalāmu 'alaikum, ismith sāhib.

: va 'alaikum assalām. hāmid, yih batāo. tumhārā iskūl kahāṅ hai? iān

: jī hān. lekin merā beṭā, hāmid, yahān hai. hāmid se pūchīe. e

: aslam sāhib, yih batāīe. karācī men iskūl acche hain?

hāmid : merā iskūl kliftan men hai. barā amrīkan iskūl hai. : acchā. tum amrīkan iskūl men ho. vahān kitne bacce hain?

hāmid : bahut bacce hain. do tīn sau bacce hain. : vahān larkīān bhī hain yā sirf larke?

hāmid : sirf laṛke hain. laṛkīān nahīn. : aur iskūl men tum xuš ho? hāmid : jī hāń, ham log vahāń bahut xuš haiń.

: aur kliftan kahān hai? yahān se dūr hai? iān hāmid : jī hāń, yahāń se kāfi dūr hai, lekin acchī jagah hai.

John : Aslam Sahib. Tell (me) this. Are the schools in Karachi good? Aslam : Yes. But my son, Hamid, is here. Ask (from) Hamid. Eh, Hamid!

Come here. This is our English friend, Mr Smith.

Hamid: Hello, Mr Smith

John : Hello Hamid. Tell (me) this. Where is your school?

John : I see. You're in an American school. How many children are

Hamid: There are a lot of children. There are two (or) three hundred children.

John : Are there girls there too, or only boys?

 $Hamid \ : \ There \ are \ only \ boys. \ There \ aren't (any) \ girls.$ 

John : And are you happy at school?

Hamid: Yes. We are very happy there. John : And where is Clifton? Is it far from here?

Hamid: Yes, it's quite far from here. But it's a good place.

			-	
	$\sim$	я.	г	
8	v.	2	ı	
×		8	н	
а		8	н	

iskūl اسکول	school (m.)	я ho	are (familar)
se pūchīe ے پہتے	ask (from) to ask	€ kitnā?	how much?
pūchnā پوچئ e اے	hey!	₹ kitne?	how many?
7 tum	you (familiar)	bahut بت	many
idhar ادح	to here,	۶ sau do tīn sau در تين م	
idharāo اوهر آؤ	come here (familiar)		three hundred
dost دوست	friend(m.)	<u>ų</u> yā	or
it. batāo	tell	xuš خوش	happy
and the board	(familiar)	& ham	we
ן tumhārā	your	ham log بمہوگ	we (plural)
ASS. Vitables of the	(familiar)	jagah جگہ	place (f.)
kliftan کافشل	Clifton (a Karachi suburb)		

## qavā'id Grammar أاعر

UNIT 2

Spelling hijje

Although the word الله عنه ( xus 'happy' is written with الله vāu, the vowel u is pronounced short.

In words taken from English beginning with an 's' followed by another consonant like 'Smith', 'school', etc., Urdu adds the vowel i before the s. Here are a few common examples:

iskūl school (m.) استيشن station (m.) istešan bus stop (m.) بساشاپ bas istāp ismith Smith

se pūchnā to ask

The verb  $\lim_{n \to \infty} p \bar{u} chn \bar{u}$  to ask' is construed with the postposition c se 'from'. In Urdu you ask from someone:

hāmid se pūchīe ask (from) Hamid

Commands with ? tum and ? tū

We have already seen that the stem of the verb is obtained by removing the ending -nā from the infinitive. The imperative for tum is formed simply by adding the ending , -o to the verb stem. When the stem ends in a vowel, the junction is effected with + hamza:

šī āo come tell ita batão بيخو baitho sit كحاؤ khāo eat

The imperative for  $\vec{r}$   $t\vec{u}$  is simply the stem:

come ī ā tell batā baith sit 2 khā eat

It is not uncommon to use the pronoun with the imperative, although this is notobligatory:

āp batāīe

please tell

توكعا tū khā

used in the sense of 'to here/hither'.

hāmid, tum idhar āo علد 'تم اوحر آؤ Hamid come here The word pri idhar 'here' is an alternative for yahān, but is mainly

ిల్లో kitnā, kitnī? 'how much?'; 'ヹ kitne? 'how many?'

The adjective & kitnā with singular nouns is translated as 'how much?' Stide kitnākhānā?

how much food?

? kitnī cāe?

how much tea?

With a plural noun it must be translated as 'how many?'.

ペンジ kitne larke?

how many boys?

التي يزي؟ kitnī cīzen?

how many things?

When used before an adjective, & means 'how!', 'what!':

kitnā acchā khānā! what good food!

bahut 'very', 'much', 'many'

We have already met the word  $\Rightarrow$  bahut used in the sense of 'very':

The food is really tasty

khānā vāqa'ī bahut mazedār hai

Used before a singular noun it also means 'much', 'a lot of'; with plural nouns it means 'many':

There is much/a lot of food here

yahān bahut khānā hai

اسکول میں بہت بچے ہیں There are many children in the school

iskūl men bahut bacce hain

### 'One or two', 'two or three'

To express approximate numbers, such as 'two or three girls', 'three or four hundred children', two consecutive numerals are used without a word for 'or':

do tīn laṛkīān دو تین لژ کیاں

تين چار سو بچ tīn cār sau bacce two or three girls

three or four hundred children

UNIT 2

The word y sau 'hundred' is used after other numerals as in English:

ایک سو ek sau 100

do sau 200 9 93

كتنا؟ كتنے؟ كتنى؟







يهال كتن گهريس؟



يهال كتنى لركيال بين؟

يبال كتے الاك بيں؟

# mukālimatīn Dialogue3

Over dinner, Aslam and Bilqis describe their family.

بلقیں : آیے۔ کھاناتیارہ۔ آپ لوگ یہاں پیٹھے۔ جان : اوہو! بیز پر کتنی مڑے دار چیز پی ہیں۔ کیا تکلفہ ہے! اسلم : بی نہیں۔ کوئی تکلف نہیں۔ مرتی ہے ' روئی ہے' چاول ہے' وال ہے۔ بس۔ ہیلن : آپ کا گھر بہت اچھا ہے۔ یہاں کتنے کرے ہیں؟

اسلم : ہمارا گھر بہت بڑا خین ۔ سات کرے ہیں۔ لیکن یہال بہت اوگ ہیں۔ ہم ہیں' ہمارے بچے ہیں' میرے والدین' یعنی والد صاحب اور والدہ .... ا یچ بین برے والدین - را دائد مات اور والده ... بلیس : ... اور میرے پیچا بین میری نائی بھی بیں اور دو تین نو کر۔ جان : کیا مب اوگ ایک تمریش؟ اسلم : تی بال بیپاکستان ہے۔ انگلتان میں۔ یہ مشکل فہیں ہے۔ بلیس : کیاں بر جگہ آپ کی کتابی تھری پڑی ہیں۔ یہ بہت مشکل میں۔ اسلم : کیامشکل ہے؟ بیسب میری کتابیں ہیں۔ اور کیا؟ جان : كوئى بات نبيس- كتابس بهت اليهى چزي بي-

bilqīs : āīe. khānā tayyār hai. āp log yahān baiṭhīe.

jān oho! mez par kitnī mazedār cīzen hain. kyā takalluf hai!

aslam i jī nahīn. koī takalluf nahīn. murģī hai, rotī hai, cāval hai, dāl hai. bas.

helan : āp kā ghar bahut acchā hai. yahān kitne kamre hain?

aslam : hamārā ghar bahut baṣā nahīn. sāt kamre hain. lekin yahān bahut log hain. ham hain, hamāre bacce, mere vālidain, ya'nī vālid sāhib aur vālida ..

bilqīs : ... aur mere cacā haiń, merī nānī bhī haiń aur do tīn naukar.

jān : kyā, sab log ek ghar men?

aslam : jī hān. yih pākistān hai. inglistān nahīn. yih muškil nahīn hai.

bilqīs : lekin har jagah āp kī kitāben bikhrī-paṛī hain. yih bahut muškil hai.

aslam : kyā muškil hai? yih sab merī kitāben hain. aur kyā?

: koī bāt nahīń. kitāben bahut acchī cīzen hain.

Bilqis : Come on. The food is ready. (You people) sit here.

: Oho! How many tasty things there are on the table. What trouble John

(you have gone to)!

Aslam: No. It's no trouble. There's chicken, bread, rice, lentils. That's all.

Helen : Your house is very nice. How many rooms are (there) here?

Aslam: Our house is not very big. There are seven rooms. But there a lot

of people here. There's us ('we are'), our children, my parents, that

is father and mother ...

UNIT 2 Bilqis : ... and my uncle, there's also my grandmother and two (or) three

servants.

John : What, all (people) in one house?

Aslam: Yes. This is Pakistan. Not England. This is no problem ('not diffi-

cult').

Bilqis : But your books are scattered around everywhere. This is very diffi-

cult.

Aslam: What's difficult? They are all my books. So what?

John : Never mind. Books are very good things.

.0	تیار بیٹھیے	tayyār baithīe	ready sit down	والدين	vālidain	parents (m.p.)
1.00				V 17 17 18		The Party of the P
	بينصنا	baithnā	to sit	يعني	ya'nī	that is, I
	اوجو	oho	oh			mean
	تكلف	takalluf	formality,	والد	vālid	father (m.)
			trouble	والده	vālida	mother (f.)
12			(m.)	13.	cacā	uncle (m.)
7	كيا تكلف_	kyā takalluf	how much trouble	ىن	nānī	grand- mother
		hai	(you have			(f.)
			taken)	دو تين	do tīn	two (or)
يس	كوئي خ	koī	no			three
		nahīṅ	(trouble)	53	naukar	servant
	مرغی	murğī	chicken			(m.)
			(f.)	انگاتان	inglistān	England
	رونی	roțī	bread	- تتاب	kitāb	book (f.)
	حاول	cāval	rice (m.)	مشكل	muškil	difficult
	وال	dāl	lentils (f.)	کیامشکل ہے	kyā muškil	what (do
	يس	bas	that's all		hai?	you
	3	kamra	room(m.)			mean)
		yih sab	all these			difficult?
	NUMB.	the long start				

### takalluf کلف

The nearest English equivalent of takalluf is 'formality'. We might The nearest Engine equivalent of معلم المعلم المعل koī takalluf nahīn 'some fomality (is) not', i.e 'it's no trouble'.

#### Relations

Urdu is very precise with relationship terms, and has many more of them than English. There are different terms for 'uncle', according to whether he is the father's brother or the mother's brother; for 'grandfather' according to whether he is the father's father or mother's father and so on (a fuller list is given in Appendix 2). It must be remembered that elder relations are always given the plural of respect, including elder brothers and sisters, and must be addressed as J āp.

Your parents, والدي vālidain, are والد vālid 'father' and والدي vālida mother'. The word ماحب sāhib is frequently used with vālid to denote respect:

میرے والد صاحب آج کراچی میں ہیں

mere vālid sāhib āj karācī men hain

My father is in Karachi today

The more familiar and affectionate word U mān is often used for 'mother':

میری مال آج گھر پر ہیں

merī mān āj ghar par hain

My mother is at home ('on home') today

لِيُّ cacā or يُوْسُو cacā sāhib is 'strictly speaking' your younger paternal uncle; نَا nānī is your mother's mother.

In the context of relations, 1/2 barā 'big' is used for 'elder' and to choṭā 'small' for 'younger':

آپ کیزے بیے āp ke bare bete āp kī choṭī beṭī آپکی چھوٹی بیٹی

your older son (plural of respect) your younger daughter

It should be noted that the word & cacā 'uncle' does not change in the

میرے چا صاحب گر پر نہیں ہیں

mere cacā sāhib ghar par nahīn hain My uncle is not at home (plural of respect)

yih sab 'all this', 'all these'

The word order in the phrase  $\psi_{\alpha}$  yih sab 'all this' is the opposite of the

יי ארט אוילע אין yih sab merī kitāben hain All these are my books

√ kyā in exclamations

UNIT 2

V kyā 'what' is, as in English, often used in exclamations:

? ليا مشكل ب kyā muškil hai?

What (do you mean), it's difficult?

الماركياع bacce hain, aur kyā? They're(only)children.

So what?

ya'nī 'I mean', 'that is', 'in other words'

The word ya'nī is used much as the English expressions 'I mean', 'in other words' to clarify or expand an explanation:

یہ حامد اور اقبال ہیں' یعنی میرے بڑے اور چھوٹے بیٹے

yih hāmid aur iqbāl hain, ya'nī mere bare aur chote bete They are Hamid and Iqbal, in other words my elder and younger sons

### siqāfat Culture ڤانت

In India and Pakistan, people often have big families, and even in large cities family life is considered to be extremely important. It is not uncommon to find several generations living under one roof, and elders are treated with great respect. This is shown in the language when an elder is addressed or talked about using the 'plural of respect' and appropriate 'honorific' expressions such as خرف الله 'come' and مرافرای 'sit down'. Hospitality مرافرای mihmān navāzī is also important aspect of life, and people go to a great deal of trouble takalluf when entertaining guests. Foreigners are always welcome and are often greeted with a certain element of good-natured curiosity, especially if they can speak the language.

		-
38 TEACH YOURSELF URDU	Section 1997 In the second	
mašqen Exercises	آپ کو پاکتانی کھانا پہندہے؟	
2.3 Correct form of the verb	āp ko pākistanī khānā pasand hai?	
In the following sentences give the correct form of the verb tx:	Do you like Pakistani	
1 اے اقبال' آج تم اسکول میں نہیں ؟ 2 : بمولگ امریکن کما آپ بھی امریکن ؟	food?	
ا کسید با	In this unit you will learn how to:  ■ say what you like ■ express your needs	110
	take a taxi	
2.4 Correct form of the imperative	order a meal in a restaurant	
In the following sentences give the correct form of the imperative ( ーデー etc.):	سكالمايك mukālima ek Dialogue 1	
1 اے حامد او هر (آنا)۔ تمہارا اسکول کہاں ہے؟	John meets Aslam's friend, Dr Rahim, who invites him to lunch.	
2 بیگم صاحبه تشریف(لانا) اور تشریف (رکھنا)	اسلم : جان صاحب بية اكثر رجيم بين بان علي وجيم صاحب مير بهت ايتحدوست	
3 الملم صاحب (ديكينا) وبال المجاعيات خاند ب-	ہیں۔ کراپی میں یہ بہت مسہور ڈاکٹر میں۔	
4 (چلنا) عِلِے پیمیں۔ 4	جان : الملام علیم' رحیم صاحب' آپ کو معلوم ہے' میں بھیڈاکٹر ہوں لیکن آج کل میں کراچی میں چھٹی پر ہول۔ میں ساج ہوں۔	
5 (بتانا) متبهارے والد صاحب کمہال ہیں۔	ر حیم : اچھانے بہت کی ہے بوت کے مطوم ہے کہ آپ ڈاکٹر بین۔ یہ بتائے۔ آج آپ کو فرص سرچ کو فرص سرچ کے مطوم ہے کہ آپ ڈاکٹر بین۔ یہ بتائے۔ آج آپ	100
2.5 Comprehension		100
Listen to the dialogue and tick the appropriate answers.	جان : بیهال آج بچے فرصت ہے۔	
1 How many children does Rahim have? Two ( ) Three ( ) 2 Are all Rahim's children at school? Yes ( ) No ( ) 3. Which kind of school do the boys attend? American ( ) Pakistani ( )	رجم : امچھابہ تو آج ہم ساتھ کھانا گھائیں! میرااسپتال گھٹن اقبال میں ہے۔ یہاں سے زیادہ دور میں ہے۔ اور دہال ایک بہت امچھار بسترال ہے۔ اس کا نام کوہ ٹور ہے۔ کیا آپ کو پاکستانی کھانا ٹیند ہے؟	4111
4 How many rooms are there in Rahim's house? Seven ( ) Five ( )	جان : کی ہال' مجھے بہت پہند ہے۔ کین میری یوی اس وقت ہو ٹل میں ہیں۔ ان کو معلوم مجھ بر سرک مج سرکہ اور اور ان	
5 Do Rahim's parents live with him? Yes ( ) No ( )	مبیں ہے کہ میں کہاں ہو ل۔ رحیم : فیک ہے۔ آپ انہیں یہال سے ٹیلیفون کیجے اور ان کو بتائے کہ ہم کہاں ہیں۔	
	ر ''' من معیک ہے۔ آپ ایس بیمال سے معیقون کیجے اور ان وہتا ہے کہ ہم کہاں ہیں۔ جان : امچھا۔ یہال کوئی ٹیلیفون ہے؟	
	ب عن المجامع ا المجامع المجامع المجام	
	- امان دامه - امان دامه	

UNIT 3

J.C

aslam	:	jān sāhib, yih dākṭar rahīm hain. in se milīe. rahīm sāhib mere
		bahut acche dost hain. karācī men yih bahut mašhūr ḍākṭar hain.

jān : assalāmu 'alaikum, rahīm sāhib. āp ko ma'lūm hai, main bhī dākṭar hūn. lekin āj kal main karācī men chuṭṭī par hūn. main sayyāhhūn.

rahīm : acchā, yih bahut dilcasp bāt hai. mujhe ma'lūm hai ki āp ḍākṭar hain. yih batāīe, āj āp ko fursat hai?

jān : jī hān, āj mujhe fursat hai.

rahīm : acchā, to āj ham sāth khānā khāen? merā aspatāl gulšan-e iqbāl men hai, yahān se ziyāda dūr nahīn hai. aur vahān ek bahut acchā restarān hai. us kā nām koh-e nūr hai. kyā āp ko pākistānī khānā pasand hai?

jān : jī hāṅ, mujhe bahut pasand hai. lekin merī bīvī is vaqt hoṭal meṅ haiṅ. un ko ma'lūm nahīṅ hai ki maiṅ kahāṅ hūṅ.

rahīm : ṭhīk hai. āp unhen yahān se ṭelīfon kījīe aur un ko batāīe ki ham kahān hain.

jān : acchā. yahān koī ṭelifon hai?

rahīm : jī hān, vahān hai. āp begam sāhiba ko jaldī ṭelīfon kījīe.

Aslam: John! This is Doctor Rahim. (Please) meet him. Rahim Sahib is my very good friend. In Karachi he is a very famous doctor.

John : Hello, Rahim Sahib. Do you know I am also a doctor? But these days I am on holiday in Karachi. I am a tourist.

Rahim: Really? (Then) this is (a) very interesting (matter). I know that you are a doctor. Tell me (this). Do you have (some) free time today?

John : Yes. I have time.

Rahim: Good. Then let's have ('eat') lunch together today. My hospital is in Gulshan-e Iqbal. It's not very far. And there's a very good restaurant there. Its name is Koh-e Nur. Do you like Pakistani food?

John : Yes, I like it very (much). But my wife is at this moment in the hotel. She does not know (that) where I am.

Rahim: It's all right. Telephone (to) her and tell (to) her (that) where we are.

John : Very well. Is there any telephone here?

Rahim : Yes. It's there. Telephone (your) wife quickly.

āp آپ کوپندې	ko asand hai	do you like?	اسپتال	aspatāl	hospital (m.)
	hīm	Rahim meet him	<b>گلشن</b> وا قبال	gulšan-e iqbāl	Gulshan-e Iqbal (a
m مشہور kc	ašhūr	famous to, for			Karachi suburb)
m معلوم		known			(m.)
āp آپ کو معلوم ہے؟ m	ko na'lūm	do you know?	زياده	ziyāda	very, more, most
h قة آجال	ai?	nowadays	ديستر ال	restarān	restaurant (m.)
cl چھٹی	huţţī	holiday(f.) on holiday	كوه تور	koh-e nūr	Koh-e Nur (m.)
m مجھے معلوم ہے		I know	جھے پندے	mujhe pasand hai	I like
√ k		that	يوى	bīvī	wife (f.)
fi فرمت	ursat			is vaqt un ko	at this time she doesn't know
ā آپ کوفر صت ہے	n ko	(f.) do you	4	ma'lum nahīn hai	KIIOW
	fursat hai?	have time? today	تحيكب	ṭhīk hai	it's all right
ا محفرامت		I have time	نہیں نہیں ٹیلیفون کچھے	unhen unhen	(to) her telephone
11 100 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	cchā to	good,	RIFE MILV	țelīfon kījīe	her
ع ساتھ		together	يلدى	jaldī	quickly,
ا کھانا کھائیں	khānā khāen	let's have			soon

### gavā'id Grammar قراعد

£ hijje Spelling

In Urdu there are many expressions of Persian origin which consist of two words joined to each other with the sign pronounced e, which can often be translated as 'of'. This sign is known as المَالِث izāfat (f.) 'addition'. A

UNIT 3

familiar example is  $\sqrt[3]{k0h}$ -e  $n\bar{u}r$  'Mountain of Light', the name of the famous diamond in the Crown Jewels. The  $\sqrt{iz\bar{s}tat}$  must not be confused with the vowel sign  $\sqrt{zer}$  which we use in  $\sqrt[3]{i}$  is  $k\bar{a}$ ,  $\sqrt[3]{i}$  in  $k\bar{a}$ . Another example of the  $iz\bar{s}ta$  is in the name of a Karachi suburb  $\sqrt[3]{i}$  gulšane  $iqb\bar{s}l$  which literally means 'Garden of Prosperity'.

#### The postposition f ko 'to, for'

The postposition f ko has a number of uses, but may often be translated as 'to':

The word  $U_{\mathcal{E}}$   $b\bar{v}\bar{v}$  is another word for 'wife' and like  $\mathcal{E}$  begam normally requires the plural of respect:

Note the expression !! is vaqt'at this moment/time'.

#### The oblique case of pronouns

When we talk of case, we mean the way in which a word changes its form or ending according to its position in the sentence. In English, for example, when the pronouns 'I', 'he', 'she', etc. are the object (i.e. on the receiving end) of a verb or are preceded by a preposition like 'in', 'to', 'on', they change their form to 'me, him, her', etc.: 'I see him'; 'to me'; 'on him'.

Similarly in Urdu, when  $\mathcal{L}$  main is followed by a postposition such as  $\mathcal{L}$  se,  $\mathcal{L}$  par,  $\mathcal{L}$  ko it changes its form to  $\mathcal{L}$  mujh 'me':

umain is the direct case and mujh is the oblique case. The direct and oblique cases of the personal pronouns are as follows:

	D	irect		C	blique	
Singular	يس	main	I	å.	mujh	me
	ī	tū	you	E.	tujh	you
	~	yih	he, she, it	5!	is	him, her, it
	89	vuh	he, she, it	أس	us	him, her, it
Plural	٦	ham	we	6	ham	us
	تم	tum	you	7	tum	you
	آپ	āp	you	آپ	āp	you
	~	yih	they	إك	in	them
	89	vuh	they	اکن	un	them

Notice that with the pronouns  $\int^{r_i} \bar{\rho}^i$  the direct and oblique cases are the same.

#### Special forms + f ko: the extended oblique case

The oblique form of the pronoun may be followed by the postposition f ko: f mujhko 'to me', f us ko 'to him/her/it' f tumko 'to you', etc.

With the exception of  $\sqrt{1}$   $\bar{a}p$  there are special forms which are the equivalent of the pronoun+  $\sqrt{1}$  ko. This is known as the extended oblique:

\$ 2.	mujhko	$\rightarrow$	<u> </u>	mujhe	to me
أسكو	us ko	$\rightarrow$	أے	use	to him / her / it
يم كو	ham ko	$\longrightarrow$	بميں	hamen	to us

The extended oblique forms of the pronouns are as follows:

+5	ko	Extended oblique			
\$ 2.	mujh ko	£.	mujhe	to me	
بخھ کو	tujh ko	3	tujhe	to you	
اس کو	is ko	اے	ise	to him, her, it	
أسكو	us ko	اے	use	to him, her, it	
50	ham ko	ہمیں	hamen	to us	
50	tum ko	حهيں	tumheñ	to you	
آپکو	āp ko	آپ کو	āp ko	to you	
ان کو	in ko	اخين	inhen	to them	
Sich	un ko	أنهيس	unhen	to them	

Although there is no grammatical difference between the pronoun + f and the 'extended' counterpart, the extended oblique is used rather more frequently.

#### ma'lūm 'known'

The adjective  $na'l\bar{u}m$  literally means 'known'. It is used with f ko in the important construction to f hom hom 'to be known to', 'to know'. Consider the following sentences and their literal translations:

hamen yih bāt ma'lūm nahīn hai 'to us this thing is not known' We don't know this thing

In the last sentence, the subject of the sentence is = + = 'this thing' Hence the verb is  $\leftarrow hai$  'is'. In English, however, 'this thing' is the *object* of the verb 'to know'.

#### ✓ ki 'that'

In sentences such as 'I know that he is a doctor', 'that' is translated by the conjunction  $\sqrt{ki}$ .  $\sqrt{s}$  is pronounced ke. Note the spelling:

مجھے معلوم ہے کہ وہ اچھے ڈاکٹر ہیں

mujhe ma'lūm hai ki vuh acche dākṭar hain I know that he is a good doctor

In English 'that' is frequently omitted, e.g. 'I know he is a good doctor', but in Urdu the conjunction must always be used. This is also true of questions. In English we say: 'Do you know where Victoria Road is?' In Urdu you must say 'Do you know that where Victoria Road is?':

كيا آپ كو معلوم ب كه وكورىيد روؤ كمال ب؟

kyā āp ko ma'lūm hai ki viktorīa rod kahān hai?

Similarly \( \square\) ki is also used with \( \subseteq \tau \) bataie 'tell me':

بتائے کہ آپ کا گھر کہاں ہے

batāīe ki āp kā ghar kahān hai? Tell me (that) where is your house?

#### fursat 'time, leisure' فرصت

الله word أرست fursat means 'time' in the sense of 'leisure', whereas أرست vaqt means 'point of time' 'occasion'. 'Do you have the time (to do something?)' is expressed with 'fursat:

? کیا آپ کو فر صت ہے؟ kyā āp ko fursat hai?

'to you is there leisure?' Do you have time?

āj mujhe fursat nahīn

'today to me there (is) not time' I don't have the time today.

### pasand 'pleasing', تعديد ko pasand honā 'to like'

The adjective پنر pasand literally means 'pleasing'. It is used in the important expression לביג אנו ko pasand honā 'to be pleasing to', 'to like'. Compare the similar construction with add ma'lum.

مجھے پند ہے تہیں پند نہیں

mujhe pasand hai tumhen pasand nahīn

You don't like

food?

### ko telifon karnā 'to telephone (to)'

Many verbs and verbal expressions require  $\int$  after the object, the word denoting the person or thing who is the recipient of the action. In Urdu you always 'telephone to' someone: رحم صاحب کو طیفون را rahīm sāhib ko telīfon karnā 'to do a telephone to Rahim':

āp bīvī ko telīfon kījīe Phone (to) the wife

Compare the use of f with the batānā 'to tell (to)':

ان کو / انہیں بتائے کہ آپ یہاں ہیں

un ko/unhen batāīe ki āp yahān hain

Tell (to) him that you are here

### mašqen Exercises

#### 3.1 Complete the sentences

Finish off the following sentences by giving the Urdu for the English

(you are an engineer)	عظے علوم ہے لہ	
(not)	بندر روڈ کہال ہے؟ مجھے معلوم	2
(leisure)	کیا آج آپ کو ہے؟	3
(English food)	مجھے پندنہیں ہے۔	4
(these books)	کیاآپ کو پندنہیں؟	5

#### 3.2 Oblique forms

Give both the pronoun + ∫ and the extended oblique in the following sentences:

(to me) معلوم ہے کہ آپ کا گھر لندن میں ہے۔	1
پ (to you) امریکہ پندے؟	ĭ) 2
وه to them) آج ٹيليفون کيا_	) 3
(to us) معلوم ہے کہ لا ہور پنجاب میں ہے۔	4
(to you مری کتاب پند نہیں ہے۔	5
(یہ to her) آئی تا ہے۔	6



اناس وال روثی جاول آم مرغی

## mukālima do Dialogue 2

گلشنِ اقبال چلو

John and Rahim take a taxi to a restaurant in Gulshan-e Iqbal.

رجی : ویکیے ، جان صاحب میں خان صاحب وہاں کیکی ہے۔ اے بھائی ، تم خالی ہو ؟

کیکی والا : تی ہال صاحب میں خالی ہو ل تی ہے ۔ اے بھائی ، تم خالی ہو ؟
رجی : اچھا گھڑی اقبال چلو۔ تم کو معلوم ہے کہ کو فور ریسترال کہال ہے ؟
کیکی والا : تی ہال 'صاحب بچھے معلوم ہے۔ وہال ایک بڑا اسپتال ہے نا ؟
رجی : تی ہال اور میٹر ہے چلو۔ تو بیتا ہے جان صاحب ' آپ کو کر اپنی پشد ہے ؟ یعنی آپ
کو اور آپ کی تیکم کو یا چیز ہی ہیں۔ پہنے ہیں تھی کو گھڑی ہیں ہارایٹریا میں جی بیان ساد کچھ ہے ۔ بیال سبد کچھ ہے ہیں کہ گھڑی ہیں بیا اور آپ کی تیکم کو گیا چیز ہی ہیں ہیں ؟

جان : ان کوخاص طور پریازار پیند ہیں۔ شہر شی بہت شاندار دوکا نیں ہیں۔ رحم : یہ تو تک ہے۔ کین کرا تی کائی نیا شہر ہے۔ جعم انہور زیادہ پیند ہے۔ وہال بہت پر انی عمار تمیں ہیں اور جعم تاریخی شہر بہت پیند ہیں۔ دیکھیے، تمارا ریستر ال وہال ہے۔ بھائی بہال دوکو۔ کتا کرا ہے؟

فیکسی والا: اٹھارہ روپے 'صاحب۔

ر حیم : بی نبین انجاره روپ بهت زیاده ب میم پر صرف پندره روپی بین لو ' پندره روپ لو

VE ST

: dekhīe, jān sāhib. vahān ṭaiksī hai. e bhāī, tum xālī ho?

ṭaiksīvālā : jī hāṅ, sāhib. main xālī hūṅ. baiṭhīe

: acchā. gulšan-e iqbāl calo. turh ko ma'lūm hai ki koh-e nūr rahīm

resțarăn kahān hai?

țaiksīvālā : jī hān, sāhib. mujhe ma'lūm hai. vahān ek barā aspatāl hai nā?

rahīm : jī hān. aur mīṭar se calo. to yih batāīe, jān sāhib. āp ko karācī pa-

sand hai? ya'nī āp aur āp kī begam ko.

: jī hān, hamen bahut pasand hai. yahān sab dilcasp hai. ya'nī jān

ham log pahlī bār ešiyā men hain nā.

: aur āp kī begam ko kyā cīzen pasand hai? rahīm

: un ko xās taur par bāzār pasand hain. šahr men bahut šāndār jān

dūkānen hain.

: yih to sac hai. lekin karācī kāfī nayā šahr hai. mujhe lāhaur rahīm ziyāda pasand hai. vahān bahut purānī 'imāraten hain. aur mujhe tārīxī šahr bahut pasand hain. dekhīe hamārā restarān vahān hai. bhāī, yahān roko. kitnā kirāya hai?

taiksīvālā: aṭhāra rūpīe, sāhib.

: jī nahīn. aṭhāra rūpīe bahut ziyāda hai. dekho, mīṭar par sirf panrahīm

dra rūpīe hain. lo, pandra rūpīe lo.

### Go to Gulshan-e Iqbal!

Rahim: Look, John. There's a taxi. He, driver ('brother')! Are you free?

Driver: Yes, sir. I'm free. Get in ('sit').

Rahim: Right. Go to Gulshan-e Iqbal. Do you know (that) where the

Koh-e-Nur Restaurant is?

Driver : Yes, sir. I know. There's a big hospital there, isn't there?

Rahim: Yes. And go by the meter. So, tell me, John. Do you like Karachi?

I mean, you and your wife?

John : Yes, we like it very much. Here everything is interesting. I mean,

we are in Asia (for) the first time.

UNIT 3

Rahim: And what things does your wife like?

John : She especially likes the bazaars. In the city there are (some) very

splendid shops.

Rahim: That's true (then). But Karachi is a fairly new city. I like Lahore more. There are many old buildings there. And I like historical cities very (much). Look. Our restaurant is there. Driver! Stop

here. How much is the fare?

Driver: Eighteen rupees, sir.

Rahim : No. Eighteen rupees is far too much. Look! There's only fifteen on

the meter. There you are! Take fifteen rupees.

				and the first of t	
, O	میسی اے	țaiksī e	taxi(f.) oh!, hey!	pahlī bār بیلی بد	for the first time
	ا_ بھائی	e bhāī!	address to a taxi	ešiyā الثيا ناص طور سے xās taur se	Asia (m.) especially
			driver, waiter,	šāndār ثاندار dūkān E sac	splendid shop(f.)
	خال	xālī	etc. empty, free	ש sac lāḥaur טאפע ziyāda	Lahore (m.) more
	فيكسى والا	ṭaiksīvālā	taxi driver (m.)	tārīxī تر کی roko روکو	historical stop
	صاحب	sāhib	Sir	v roknā	to stop
	ےنا	hai nā?	isn't there?	kirāya کرایہ	fare (m.)
	×	mīṭar	meter (m.)	aṭhāra افحاره	eighteen
	میٹرے چلو	mīṭar se calo	'go by the meter'	rūpiya روپي bahut بهتانياده	rupee (m.) far too
	7	to	then, so, however	ziyāda پرره pandra	much fifteen
-	يبلا	pahlā	first	y 10	there you
		bār	time, occasion (f.)		are! take!

### qavā'id Grammar قراعد

#### t nā isn'tit?

t is a short form of 'mahīn' 'no, not'. Here it is used as a question tag 'isn't it', which can be translated as 'isn't it?', 'aren't you?', 'doesn't it?' according to context:

إنا محامًا المحاس yih khānā acchā hai nā? This food is nice, isn't it?

#### 7 to 'then, however, so'

The word  $\mathcal{F}$  to, basically meaning 'then, however, so', has many uses in Urdu. In colloquial speech it is often used to begin a sentence, something like English 'so':

to yih bataïe

so, tell (me) this

When 7 follows a word, it adds emphasis:

main to pākistānī hūn

I am a Pakistani

### ب bār 'time, turn' (f.); ايک با ek bār 'once'

We have already met وت vaqt 'point of time' and أرص fursat 'leisure'. The word A barmeans 'time' in the sense of 'occasion, turn':

ek bār

one time, once

تين بار tīn bār three times

Note that after numerals A. bar remains singular:

pahlībār كيلي بار

(for) the first time

main pahlī bār yahān hūn I'm here for the first time

### پاس طور پ xās taur par/se 'especially'

The word taur (m.) means 'way, means', and is used in the adverbial ווה איסוע פע taur (m.) means 'way, means', and is used in the adverbial expression  $d = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}} \frac{d}{dt} \frac{dt}{dt} \frac{dt}{dt}$  xās taur par / se 'on / from a special way', i.e. 'especially'. Note a similar phrase 'implies 'i

### UNIT 3

ziyāda 'more, most, too, very' The word by ziyāda may mean 'more, most, too, too much, very'. Compare the following sentences:

يه زياده برا ب

yih ziyāda barā hai

This is too big.

میرا گریبال سے زیادہ دور نہیں ہے

merā ghar yahān se ziyāda dūr nahīn hai

My house is not very far from here

مجھے لاہور زیادہ پند ہے

mujhe lāhaur ziyāda pasand hai

Hike Lahore more/better

### Irregular imperatives

We have already seen that the command or imperative for  $\sqrt{1}$  is formed by adding  $-\bar{i}e$  to the stem of the verb, and that for  $\sqrt{1}$  by adding  $\sqrt{1}$  -0. Four important verbs  $\sqrt{1}$  lenā'to take',  $\sqrt{1}$  denā'to give',  $\sqrt{1}$  karnā'to do' and  $\sqrt{1}$  pīnā'to drink' have irregular forms which must be learnt:

7	tū	7	tum	آپ	āp	
1	le	le	lo	25	lījīe	take!
_,	de	9)	do	ریجے	dījīe	give!
5	kar	,5	karo	3	kījīe	do!
ي	pī	台	pīo	4	pījīe	drink

### 🚅 paise 'money'

In both India and Pakistan, the major unit of currency is the  $_{25}^{\circ}$   $_{7}\bar{u}p\bar{i}a$  rupee. The smallest coin is the بي paisa, a hundred of which make one rupee.

| Paisa and a arranger and of which make one rupee.
| Paisa and a arranger and of which make one rupee.
| Paisa and a arranger and of which make one rupee.
| Paisa and a arranger and of which make one rupee.
| Paisa and a arranger and of which make one rupee.
| Paisa and a arranger and of which make one rupee.

pāńc rūpīe پانچ روپي

The most common word for 'money' is the plural word  $\rightleftharpoons$  paise:

کتے پیے؟ kitne paise? How much money?

use paise dījīe اے بیے دیکیے

Give him (some) money

Rahim and John choose their meal in the restaurant.

رجم : آيك وان صاحب يهال تفريف ركھے۔ يد ميرالانديده ريسترال ب بيراكهال ے؟ اے بھائی مینولاؤ۔

بیرا : بهت چها صاحب مینولیجد رجیم : اچهاجان صاحب مینود محیح أردوش مجی ہادوا تحریزی میں مجی ہے۔ آپ کو کیا طاہے؟ آپ کو معلوم ہے کہ بیرس چیزی کیا تین؟

جان : بى بال ـ انگشان ميس مجى بهت مندوستانى اور پاكستانى ريسترال مين نا- بيسب چيزين مجمع معلوم ہیں۔ مجھے خاص طورے بھونا کوشت اور نان پیند ہیں۔

رجم : اچھا مجھے بریانی زیادہ پندہ۔ مجھے بریانی اور قورمہ جاہیے اور کیا پیناہ؟

بان : جھے صرف پائی جا ہے۔ رحیم : یہاں آپ بائی نہ چھے۔ پائی ٹھیک ٹین ہے۔ آپ جوس بایاک کولا لچھے۔ وہ زیادہ اچھا ہے۔ ہیرا! اوھر آؤ۔ ہمیس کائی چزیں جا تیس ۔ آپ ہوٹا کوشٹ ووٹان آکیے بریائی ایک قورمہ ایک جوس اورایک پاک کولا۔ اور آم تھی ہیں؟

بيرا : بي أم بحي بين اور اناس بحي بين-رجيم : جي نبيل اتناس نبيل جا ہے۔ صرف آم لاؤ اور جلدي لاؤ!

بيرا : اچهاصاحب

rahīm : āīe jān sāhib. yahān tašrīf rakhīe. yih merā pasandīda restarān hai. berā kahān hai? e bhāī, menyū lão.

: bahut acchā sāhib. menyū lījīe.

rahīm : acchā, jān sāhib. menyū dekhīe. urdū men bhī hai, aur angrezī men bhī hai. āp ko kyā cāhīe? āp ko ma'lūm hai ki yih sab cīzen kyā

: jī hān. inglistān men bhī bahut hindustānī aur pākistanī restarān jān hain nā? yih sab cīzen mujhe ma'lūm hain. mujhe xās taur se bhūnā gošt aur nān pasand hain.

rahīm : acchā. mujhe biryānī ziyāda pasand hai. mujhe biryānī aur qorma cāhīe. aur kyā pīnā hai?

: mujhe sirf pānī cāhīe.

rahīm : yahān āp pānī na pījīe. pānī thīk nahīn hai. āp jūs yā pāk kolā lījīe. vuh ziyāda acchā hai. berā! idhar āo! hamen kāfī cīzen cāhīen. ek UNIT 3

bhūnā gošt, do nān, ek biryānī, ek qorma, ek jūs aur ek pāk kolā. aur ām bhī hain?

berā : jī, ām hain, aur anānās bhī hain.

rahīm : jī nahīn, anānās nahīn cāhīe. sirf 'ām lāo. aur jaldī lāo.

berā : acchā, sāhib.

Rahim: Come on John. Sit here. This is my favourite restaurant. Where's the waiter? Waiter. Bring the menu.

Waiter: Very well, sir. Here's ('take') the menu.

Rahim: Good, John. Look at the menu. It's in (both) English and Urdu.

What do you want? Do you know what all these things are? : Yes. In England, there are a lot of Indian and Pakistani restaurants,

aren't there? I particularly like 'roast meat' and naan. Rahim: Good. I like biryani better. I want biryani and korma. And what do

you want to drink ('what is to drink')?

John : I only want water.

Rahim: Don't drink the water here. The water's not good. Drink juice or Pak Cola, That's better, Waiter! Come here! We want quite (a lot of) things. One roast meat, two naan, one biryani, one korma, one juice and one Pak Cola. And do you have mangos as well?

Waiter: Yes. There are mangos and pineapple.

Rahim: No. (We) don't want pineapple. Only bring mangos. And bring (it)

quickly.

Waiter: Very well, sir.

\$O		pasandīda	favourite	آپ کو چاہیے	āp ko	you want
	2	berā	waiter (m.)	2004	cāhīe	
	مينو	menyū	menu (m.)	آپ کو کیاجاہے؟	āp ko kyā	what do
	lle	lāo	bring	100 8 100	cāhīe?	you want?
	3	lījīe	take	كيونا	bhūnā	roast
1	أردو	urdū	Urdu (f.)	گوشت	gošt	meat(m.)
	انكريزى	angrezī	English	تاك	nān.	naan (m.)
		19 day - 1 /5 m	(language)	برياني	biryānī	'biryani'
			(f)			rice (f.)

قورمه	qorma	korma,	4.	na pījīe	don't drink
		spiced	53.	jūs	juice(m.)
		meat(m.)	ياك كولا	pāk kolā	Pak Cola
جھ جا ہے	mujhe	I want			(m.)
	cāhīe		آم	ām	mango
پيا	pīnā	to drink			(m.)
کیاپیتاہ؟	kyāpīnā hai?	what (do you want)	انکاس	anānās	pineapple (m.)
		to drink?	جلدى	jaldī	quickly
بانی	pānī	water (m.)			

### gavā'id Grammar قواعد

bhī 'also'; الله على على bhī 'both ... and' على على الله bhī 'also', 'as well' always follows the word to which it refers:

مجھے پاکتانی کھانا بھی پند ہے

mujhe pākistānī khānā bhī pasand hai

I like Pakistani food as well (referring to the food)

مجھے بھی پاکتانی کھانا پند ہے

mujhe bhī pākistānī khānā pasand hai

I also like Pakistani food (referring to 'I')

bhī ... bhī is translated as 'both ... and':

انگریزی میں بھی اُردو میں بھی

angrezī men bhī urdū men bhī

Both in English and in Urdu

### क्र ko cāhīe 'to be needed, to want'

'To want, to require' is expressed in Urdu by the phrase خواجه ko cāhīe:

قِ کیاجا ہے āp ko kyā cāhīe?

'what is needed to you?'

mujhe biryānī cāhīe مجھے بیانی جا ہے

What do you want? 'to me biryani is needed' I want biryani

Note that in the last sentence  $\dot{\mathcal{L}}_{\mathcal{L}}$  is the subject.

When the subject is plural, the plural form پائیں cāhīeń 'are needed' is used:

ہمیں بہت چزیں جاہئیں

hamen bahut cîzen câhîen

We need/want lots of things

### آپ کیا پیا ہے؟ ap ko kyā pīnā hai? 'what do you want to drink?'

When f is followed by the infinitive  $+ \leftarrow hai$ , the construction may be translated 'you have to', 'you want to', 'you must':

آپ کو کیاپیاہ؟

āp ko kyā pīnā hai?

What do you want to drink? ('to you what is to drink'?)

رجيم كوكهاناب

rahīm ko khānā hai

Rahim has to eat ('to Rahim is to eat')

مجھے ابھی جاتا ہے

mujhe abhī jānā hai

I have to go now ('to me now is to go')

### 🚁 na pījīe 'don't drink'

The word  $\stackrel{.}{\sim}$  na (which must be distinguished from t  $n\bar{a}$  which we saw earlier in this unit) is used with the imperative to make a negative command 'don'tdo!'

unhen na batāīe انہیں نہ تاہیے

yahān pānī na pījīe

Don't tell him!

Don't drink the water here!

### Numbers 11-20

Here the numerals 11-20 (Appendix 1) should be learnt.

#### siqāfat Culture ڤانت

Most Europeans and Americans are so familiar with Indian and Pakistani food that little commentary is required here. Tastes vary from region to region, but in the north of the subcontinent the favourite combination is meat

gošt (m.)) and bread (روئی rof (f.)), while in Bengal and the south rice (المالي و (المالي معامل المعالل المعال distinction is made between lunch and dinner. For both the word the khānā is used.

Taxis, as well as scooters and rikshaws ( $\psi'_{J}$  rikš $\bar{a}$  (m.)) are numerous and reliable in India and Pakistan, and are the most convenient form of transport. As in many countries, the fare is usually negotiable, but asking the driver to go by the meter (k= \sum mītar se calo) sometimes has the desired effect.

Most Urdu speakers, like Mr Rahim in the dialogue, address taxi drivers (u) beā taiksīvālā) and waiters (k= beā, from English 'bearer') as (bea bhā 'brother', and use the pronoun tum. As a foreigner, you would do better always to use \sum fap.

### mašqen Exercises

#### 3.3 Dialogue

Give your part in the following dialogue:

Aslam : کیا آپ کو پاکتانی کھانا پند ہے؟

(say that you like it very much) : You کلفن اقبال میں ایک بہت اچھار پستر ال ہے۔

(say that you know; your hotel is not far from there) : You Aslam : وہ میرا پندیدہ ریستر ال ہے۔

(ask him what its name is) : You

Aslam : كوه نور ب\_ چلين ساتھ كھانا كھائيں؟

(say no; at this time you are not free) : You

#### 3.4 Items on the menu

Look at the menu with the items written in Urdu. Here are some new words:

masnū'āt dishes (m.p.)

வு pulão pulao, rice cooked with vegetables (m.)

UNIT 3 sabzī vegetables in general (f.) بزى ماگ sāg spinach(m.) maṭar pea(s)(m.) cabbage, cauliflower (f.) gobhī تندوري tandūrī tandoori (baked in an earth oven) يجل phal fruit(m.) كوفي kofi coffee (f.)

روپے		مصنوعات
¥.	· Area Tribini Band	چاول
٨		بلاؤ
Ir	·	برياني
		سبزى
4		ماگ
۵		مر بھی
4		
		گوشت
10		بھونا گوشت
IC.		قورمه
IA		مرمی
4+		تندوری مرغی
		پهل
1+		٢٦
٨		انناس
		روثى
۵		ناك
٣		براثيا
r .		چپاتی
4		چائے
۸	The second of th	<b>گو</b> فی

Read the menu and do the following:

- 1 Call the waiter (address him as 🛒) and ask him to come to you.
- 2 Ask him if the tandoori chicken is good.
- 3 Tell him you want spinach, bhūnā gosht and pulao; your friend wants tandoori chicken, naan and lentils (dāl).
- 4 Tell him you do not want fruit today.
- 5 After the meal you want one coffee and one tea.
- 6 Work out the price of your meal and write the total in figures.

#### 3.5 Comprehension

Listen to the dialogue and tick the correct answer.

1	Aslam is free today	Yes ( )	No ( )
	Today there is	A holiday ( )	A meeting ( )
3	Rahim's friend is	American ( )	English ( )
4	Aslam's family is	At home ( )	In town ( )
5	Aslam's house is	Far away ( )	Nearby ( )



### Life is not so bad!

In this unit you will learn how to:

- express possession
- describe relationships
- give your age

=

■ talk about your origins

اسلم صاحب کی زندگی کا ظامہ

چیاکہ آپ کو معلوم ہے اسلم صاحب کی زندگی کا ظامہ

چیاکہ آپ کو معلوم ہے اسلم صاحب کا گر کر اپنی ہیں ہے۔ ان کا گریز در دوؤیہ ہا اور شجر

کر سر تن ہے صرف ایک میل دور ہے۔ اسلم صاحب کا گر کائی بڑا ہے۔ ان کے گریش سامت

کر سے بی گین دہاں بہت اور جیا۔ بیان اسلم صاحب کی بدی کانام بیشس ہے۔ ان کے تجر بی سی سام صاحب کے بدی کائو بیش ہے ان کر بین اس کا صاحب کے بین میں اگر پڑوں دائر کی اسلم صاحب کے بین بین اسلام صاحب کے بین بین اس کی بین بین ان کی بین بین اس کر ہے تی بین بین اسلام صاحب کے بین بین بین اس کر بین بین اس کر ہے گئی کرنے کہ کہا گؤی میں بین اس کر بین کہا کہ کہا گؤی کہا گئی کہا گئی کہ میں ہے۔ کانفن کرا پی کے مرکز سے کوئی کرنے کوئی کا مرکز سے کوئی کرنے کہ کر ہے ہے۔ اسلم صاحب کی چیوٹی بین کا نام جیلہ ہے۔ جیلہ کی عمر صرف دو مال ہے دوا سکول میں میں بین بین بین بین اور دیا ہے۔ اسلم صاحب کی چیوٹی بین کانا خانہ ان کا کام جیلہ ہے۔ جیلہ کی عمر اسلم صاحب آخر بین اور دور مال ہے۔ دوا سکول میں میں دور بین ہیں ہی دور بین ہیں بین اور دور بین بین کار خیارات کا کام بہت دکی ہی ہی تین اور دیا تھیں کی زندگی بری میں ہے۔ وہ بین ایس ایس تین فریہ بین تین وی بین بین وی کئی تو شور بین ہیں۔ دول کوئی خوش بین۔

### aslam sāhib kī zindagī kā xulāsa

jaisā ki āp ko ma'lūm hai aslam sāhib kā ghar karācī meṅ hai. un kā ghar bandar roḍ par hai aur šahr ke markaz se sirf ek mīl dūr hai. aslam sāhib kā ghar kāfī baṭā hai. in ke ghar meṅ sāt kamre haiṅ lekin vahāṅ bahut log haiṅ. aslam sāhib kī bīvī kā nām bilqīs hai. un ke baccoṅ ke nām hāmid, iqbāl, UNIT 4

in ke ghar ان کے گریں

hāmid, ya'nī aslam sāhib ke bare bete kā iskūl kliftan men hai. kliftan karācī ke markaz se koī pānc mīl dūr hai. hāmid ke iskūl men sirf laṛke hain. vahān laṛkīān nahīn. laṛkīon kā iskūl aslam sāhib ke ghar se kāfī nazdīk hai. aslam sāhib kī choṭī beṭī kā nām jamīla hai. jamīla kī 'umr sirf do sāl hai. vuh iskūl men nahīn.

aslam sāhib injinīr hain. vuh karācī ke ek bare kārxāne men hain. un kā kārxāna un ke ghar se kāfī dūr hai. lekin un kā kām bahut dilcasp hai. aslam aur bilqīs kī zindagī burī nahīn hai. vuh bahut amīr nahīn hain, lekin garīb bhī nahīn. vuh kāfī xuš hain.

#### A summary of Aslam's life

As you know, Aslam's house is in Karachi. His house is on Bandar Road and only one mile from the centre of the city. Aslam's house is quite big. In his house there are seven rooms but there are a lot of people there. Aslam's wife's name is Bilqis. His children's names are Hamid, Iqbal, Nargis and Jamila. In other words, Aslam has four children. John and Helen are Aslam's English friends. They are both doctors and these days are on holiday in Pakistan. They have no children.

Hamid, that is Aslam's elder son's school is in Clifton. Clifton is about five miles from the centre of Karachi. In Hamid's school there are only boys. There are no girls. The girls' school is quite near Aslam's house. Aslam's younger daughter's name is Jamila. Jamila is only two. She is not at school.

Aslam is an engineer. He is in a big factory in Karachi. His factory is quite far from his house. But his work is very interesting. Aslam's and Bilqis' life is not (so) bad. They are not very rich, but they are not poor either ('also'). They are quite happy.

	زعرگ	zindagī	life (f.)		kā, kī, ke	's, of
	14	burā	bad	الكم صاحب كالمحر	aslam	Aslam
	اسلم کی زندگی کا	aclam kī	of Aslam's		sāhib kā	Sahib's
	יןטנעטו	zindagī kā			ghar	house
	خاام	xulāsa	summary	51	markaz	centre (m.)
		Autob	(m.)	ニンタンク	šahr ke	from the
ı	صدا)	iaisā ki	as		markaz se	city centre

iskūl men aslam المر aslam اسلم صاحب کی from Aslam sāhib ke Aslam sāhib kī عرى Sahib's ghar se Sahib's hīvī wife house wife's けばいま bīvī kā se nazdīk near nām (from/to) でとしま baccon ke children's aslam اسلم صاحب كي بيني Aslam nām names aslam ke اسلم کے چاریخ Sahib's sāhib kī Aslam has betī daughter בּט cār bacce four betī kā daughter's children haīn nām name aslam ke اسلم کے دوست Aslam's age (f.) 'umr friends dost jamīla kī جيدُى عر Jamila's donon נפינט both 'umr age Aslam aslam اللم صاحد ال sāl year (m.) Sahib's 152 - 2 sāhib ke

in his

house

eldest

son's

from the

centre of

Karachi

roughly

mile (m.)

about,

larkīon kā لا كيون كااسكول

kārxāna كارفانه

ek bare ایک بر

men

sāhib kī

zindagī

zindagī زندگ

til kārxāne

aslam اسلم صاح

amīr اير ģarīb غريب

the girls'

school

factory (m.)

in a big

factory

life (f.)

Aslam

life

rich

Sahib's

mīl ميل in Hamid's hāmid ke حامد کے اسکول iskūl men school وَاعِر gavā'id Grammar

bare bete

markaz se

kā

الىكار karācī ke

koī كوكي

jaisā ki 'as'

jaisā ki is a conjuction consisting of two words meaning 'as':

جبیا کہ آپ کو معلوم ہے، میں پاکتانی ہوں

jaisā ki āp ko ma'lūm hai, main pākistānī hūn As you know, I am a Pakistani

#### The oblique case of nouns

Like pronouns, nouns and adjectives also have an oblique case, and change their endings when followed by a postposition.

Masculine nouns ending in  $1-\bar{a}$  or s-a, e.g.  $6^{1/3}$  lark $\bar{a}$  'boy' and  $\frac{1}{5}$  bacca 'child', form the oblique singular by changing the final vowel  $1-\bar{a}$  or s-a to c-c; and the oblique plural by changing the final vowel to c-c. Here are the oblique forms with the postposition c-c se.

Direct singular	69	laŗkā	the boy
	Ę.	bacca	the child
Obliquesingular	25%	larke se	from the boy
	- E	bacce se	from the child
Directsingular	لانے	laṛke	the boys
	٤.	bacce	the children
Obliqueplural	الوكون _	laṛkon se	from the boys
	-116.	baccon se	from the children

Masculine nouns ending in any other letter, such as  $\int ghar$  'house' and  $\bar{l}_{ij} = \bar{l}_{ij} = \bar{l$ 

Direct singular	کھر	ghar	the house
	آدى	ādmī	the man
Obliquesingular	گھرے	ghar se	from the house
	آدی ہے	ādmī se	from the man
Directplural	8	ghar	the houses
	آدی	ādmī	the men
Obliqueplural	گھروں ہے	gharon se	from the houses
The state of the s	- 1100	ādmīon se	from the men

Feminine nouns ending in G - $\bar{i}$ , for example G lark $\bar{i}$  'girl' make no change for the oblique singular, but add G on for the oblique plural:

Directsingular	اوی	laṛkī	the girl
Obliquesingular	الای ہے	laṛkī se	from the girl
Directplural	الزكيال	laŗkīāń	the girls
Obliqueplural	لۈكيول ي	larkīon se	from the girls

Feminine nouns ending in any other letter, e.g.  $\forall kit\bar{a}b$  'book', make no change for the oblique singular, but add  $\forall -on$  for the oblique plural:

Directsingular	70ب	kitāb	the book
Obliquesingular	'تنابے	kitāb se	from the book
Directplural	كايل	kitāben	the books
Obliquenlural	- 1117	kitāhon se	from the books

#### The oblique case of adjectives

UNIT 4

We have already seen that adjectives ending in  $|\cdot| = \bar{a}$ , such as  $|\cdot|_{\ell}$  acchā 'good' and  $|\cdot|_{\ell}$  baṛā 'big', as well as the possessive adjectives such as  $|\cdot|_{\ell}$  merā 'my',  $|\cdot|_{\ell} = \bar{a}p$  kā 'your', etc., change their endings to agree with the following noun in number (singular, plural) and gender (masculine, feminine). When coming before both singular and plural oblique masculine nouns, adjectives in  $|\cdot|_{\ell} = \bar{a}$  change their ending to  $|\cdot|_{\ell} = -e$ . When coming before feminine oblique nouns, the ending is  $|\cdot|_{\ell} = -e$ . When coming before feminine oblique nouns, the ending is  $|\cdot|_{\ell} = -e$ .

Masculine direct singular	الجمالزكا	acchā laṛkā	the good boy
Masculine oblique singular	ایچے لاکے۔	acche larke se	from the good boy
Masculine direct plural	ایھ لاک	acche larke	the good boys
Masculineobliqueplural	الی الوکوں سے	acche larkon se	from the good boys
Feminine direct singular	ا چي لؤ کي	acchī laṛkī	the good girl
Feminine oblique singular	ا چی او ک	acchī laṛkī se	from the good girl
Feminine direct plural	الحجى لؤكيال	acchī laṛkīāṅ	the good girls
Feminine oblique plural	ا چی از کیوں سے	acchī laṛkīon se	from the good girls

Note that even if the noun makes no change in the oblique singular, as is the case with nouns belonging to the second group, it is still regarded as oblique, and the preceding adjective in  $1 - \bar{a}$  must change its form to the oblique accordingly:

acchā ghar a good house اچها کمر شام acchē ghar men in a good house

Adjectives ending in any other letter, e.g. "xūbsūrat 'beautiful', sand mašhūr famous' make no change in any circumstances:

xūbsūrat bacca

xūbsūrat laṛkī se from the beautiful girl

mašhūrādmīon ko to famous men مشهور آدميون كو

میری چھوٹی بیٹیوں کی سہیلیوں کے شہروں میں merī chotī betīon kī sahelīon ke šahron men In the cities of the friends of my small daughters

#### se dur 'far from'

UNIT 4

In Urdu the sentence 'my house is twenty miles (away) from London' is expressed:

میرا گر لندن سے بیں میل دور ہے

merā ghar landan se bīs mīl dūr hai

My house is twenty miles far from London

In such expressions the word must always be included. " dūr is regarded as a feminine noun. Thus 'how far?' is " kitnī dūr? 'how much far?'.

آپ کا گھر يہال سے کتني دور ہے؟

āp kā ghar yahān se kitnī dūr hai?

How far is your house from here?

### tя honā 'to have', 'to possess'

We have already noted that Urdu has no verb like the English 'to have, possess'. To have relations or to possess things, which are not actually with you or on you, is expressed by using the postposition & kā with the honā:

اسلم کے چار بچے ہیں

aslam ke cār bacce hain

Aslam has four children ('Aslam's four children are')

رجم صاحب کی گاڑی نہیں ہے

rahīm sāhib kī gārī nahīn hai

Rahim does not have (own) a car ('Rahim's car is not')

If the noun (i.e. Aslam, Rahim) is replaced by a pronoun (I, you, he, they, etc.), then the possessive adjective (e.g. יוטא' ארו' ועא' ארו ועא' בן etc.) is used:

مرے چار نچ ہیں

mere cār bacce hain

I have four children ('my four children are')

a beautiful child خوبصورت بي خوبصورت لڑ کی ہے

The postposition & ka 's, of '

The postposition  $\delta'$   $k\bar{a}$  which we have already met as the second element of the possessive adjectives لا المراح المراح

translated as 'of', i.e. 'the house of Aslam'. Like other postpositions it must be preceded by the oblique case:

ではどうと mere larke kā nām my boy's name

larkīon kā iskūl

the girls' school

يدے شركا ہوئل

bare šahr kā hoṭal the big city's hotel

 $\delta'$  also changes for number, gender and case like adjectives in  $1-\bar{a}$ , having the forms  $\delta'$   $\delta' - \bar{k}$ ,  $k\bar{a}$ ,  $k\bar{i}$ , ke, the same endings as  $\delta' - \bar{k}$  acchā: a good boy

acchā laṛkā لڑ کے کا اسکول

larke kā iskūl

the boy's school

acche larke 2 y 201 larke ke dost لڑ کے کے دوست

goodboys the boy's friends

اليحف لؤكول كو

acche larkon ko to the good boys

larke ke doston se from the boy's friends لڑکے کے دوستوں سے

a good girl

acchī laṛkī المجمى لاكي لای ی کتاب larkī kī kitāb

the girl's book

لڑ کی کی کتابوں میں

acchī larkīon ko to the good girls laṛkī kī kitābon men in the girl's books

To sum up, the postposition  $\sqrt[k]{k}$  must take the oblique case of the word which precedes it; must agree in number, gender and case with the word which comes after it.

مرے بدے بینے کے اسکول کے الوکوں سے پوتھیے mere bare bete ke iskūl ke larkon se pūchīe

Ask the boys of my eldest son's school

ان کا بہت خوبصورت گھر ہے un kā bahut xūbsūrat ghar hai

un kā bahut xūbsūrat ghar hai
They have a very beautiful house

#### Expressing your age

There are two ways of expressing age in Urdu. The more straightforward is to use the word f'umr 'age':

آپ کی عمر کیا ہے؟ میری عمرا ٹھارہ سال ہے؟ āp kī 'umr kyā hai? merī 'umr aṭhāra sāl hai

What is your age? My age is eighteen (i.e. I am eighteen)

The other way is to use the postposition b'  $k\bar{a}$ , which must take the gender of the subject:

حامد چودہ سال کا ہے

hāmid cauda sāl kā hai

Hamid is fourteen ('Hamid is of fourteen years')

اس کی بیٹی دوسال کی ہے

us kī beṭī do sāl kī hai

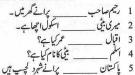
his daughter is two ('of two years')

Note that even though  $\frac{1}{sal}$  'years' is masculine plural and is followed by  $\frac{1}{sal}$  its form does not change to oblique.

### mašq Exercise تتن

#### 4.1 Correct form of 8 kā

In the following sentences give the correct form of b' ka. Make sure of the gender, number and case of the word which follows it:



### سایک mukālima ek Dialogue 1

Helen and Bilqis go to have some ice cream. Bilqis talks about her origins.

بلقیس: آیئی بیان، اس دو کان ش بهب اتھا آئی کریم ہے۔ جھے آئی کریم بہت پیند ہے۔

آئی امار سے خو ہر شریم مصروف ہیں۔ جس آئی کریم ہے۔

ہیلن: آپ کا خیال بہت اجھا ہے۔ کین ان لوگول و معلوم ہیں ہے کہاں ہیں! کوئی بات

ہیلن، آپ کے بیٹی آئی گائی گری ہے۔ بیٹی سے بتا ہے آپ کہاں کار ہے والی ہیں؟

بلقین: میں اصل میں ویک کی ہوں گئی ہیں را وطن میندوستان ہے تین میں چھین سے بہال

بلقین: میں اصل میں ویک کی ہوں ہوں ہے۔

کرا پی میں ہوں والم ما میں ویک کی ہوں ہوں ہے۔

ہیلن کی ماروں نے اس میں اور کی ہیں ، اردو ہے۔

ہیلن کی ماروں کی اس ہول ہیں ، اردو ہے۔

ہیلن کے ہیں ہیں دکو جب ہے اس شہر میں ہر طرح کوگ ہیں۔ بتا ہے اس و دکان کا نام کیا

بلقین: اس و دکان کا نام مجھے معلوم نہیں۔ جھے صرف یہ معلوم ہے اس کا آئی کر یم جھے پیند

ہے۔ جیلے ، اور دکھا تمیں!

bilqīs : āīe helan. is dūkān men bahut acchā āis krīm hai. mujhe āis krīm bahut pasand hai. āj hamāre šauhar šahr men masrūf hain. calen, āis krīm khāen.

helan : āp kā xayāl bahut acchā hai. lekin un logon ko ma'lūm nahīn ki ham kahān hain. koi bāt nahīn āte, baiṭhīe. āj vāqa'ī kāfi garmī hai. bilqīs, yih batāte. āp kahān kī rahnevālī hain?

bilqīs : main asal men dihlī kī hūn. ya'nī merā vatan hindustān hai, lekin main bacpan se yahān karācī men hūn. aslam sāhib kā vatan panjāb hai. vuh stālkoṭ ke rahnevāle hain. lekin un kī mādrī zabān panjābī nahīn. urdū hai.

helan : yih bahut dilcasp hai. is šahr men har tarah ke log hain. batāte is dūkān kā nām kyā hai?

bilqīs : is dūkān kā nām mujhe ma'lūm nahīn. mujhe sirf yih ma'lūm hai kī is kā āis krīm mujhe bahut pasand hai. calīe. aur khāen.

Bilqis : Come on, Helen. They have very good ice cream in this shop. I like ice cream very much. Today our husbands are busy in town. Come on, let's have ('eat') some ice cream.

Helen: Your idea is very good. Today our husbands are busy, and they don't know (that) where we are. It doesn't matter. Come on. Sit down. It is really very warm today. Bilqis, tell me. Where are you from?

Bilqis : In fact I am from Delhi, but I have been ('am') here in Karachi since childhood. Aslam's homeland is Panjab. He comes from Sialkot. But his mother tongue is not Panjabi. It's Urdu.

Helen: That's very interesting. In this city there are all sorts of people.

Tell me. What's the name of this shop?

Bilqis : I don't know the name of this shop. I only know that I like its ice cream very (much). Come on. Let's have ('eat') some more.

.0	اس دو کان میں	is dūkān	in this		dihlī	Delhi (f.)
		men	shop	وطن	vatan	homeland
		dūkān	shop (f.)	8- 5-2		(m.)
	<u> اس کریم</u>	āis krīm	ice cream (m.)	بچين.	bacpan	childhood (m.)
		šauhar	husband (m.)		bacpan se	since childhood
ø	چلیں	calen	let's go, come on	سيالكوث	sīālkoṭ	Sialkot(a town in
	خيال	xayāl	idea, opinion			Panjab) (m.)
			(m.)	كريخ والے	ke	is from
n		un logoń ko	to them	יַט	rahnevāle hain	
	گری	garmī	heat (f.)	مادری زبان	mādrī	mother
	کافی کری ہے	garmī kāfī garmī	it's quite		zabān	tongue (f.)
l i		hai	warm		zabān	tongue(f.)
			('there's quite a lot	برطر سحا	har tarah kā	all kinds of
			ofheat')	ال دوكاك	is dūkān kā	of this
1	كبال كى رہنے وال	kahān kī	where are			shop
	U <u>t</u>	rahnevālī hain?	you from?	اور کھائیں	aur khāen	let's eat some
	اصل میں	asal men	in fact			more

#### Oblique forms of ~ and »

with 'this, these' and wuth 'that, those' have the following oblique forms:

Direct		Oblique	singular	<b>Oblique plura</b>		
~	yih	ای	is	إك	in	
89	vuh	ال	us	أك	un	

These forms must be used before nouns in the oblique case; for example.

Directsingular	67,	yih larkā	this boy
Obliquesingular	ای لاکے ہے	is larke se	from this boy
Directplural	يہ لاک	yih laṛke	these boys
Obliqueplural	ان لا كول _	in laṛkoṅ se	from these boys
Directsingular	وه الزي	vuh laṛkī	that girl
Obliquesingular	أس لاكى سے	us laṛkī se	from that girl
Directsingular	وه لؤ كيال	vuh laṛkīāṅ	those girls
Obliqueplural	اُن الريول سے	un laṛkīon se	from those girls

When Urdu is written without vowel signs, which is usually the case,  $\mathcal{J}^{l}$  and  $\mathcal{U}$  could stand for both is/us; in/un. Thus,  $f \mathcal{L}^{l}\mathcal{J}^{l}\mathcal{U}^{l}$  could be read as is larke ko or us larke ko 'to this boy' or 'to that boy'. Only context can decide which one is which.

### Oblique plural pronouns and possessive adjectives

ہم لوگ پاکستانی ہیں

We ('people') are Pakistanis

وہ لوگ کون ہیں

Who are they ('those people')

ن a masculine plural noun, and when it is followed by a postposition it must have the plural oblique form الوكون logon:

ہم لوگوں کو معلوم ہے

ham logon ko ma'lum hai

We know ('to us people it is known')

تم لوگوں کو یہ کھانا پند ہے؟

tum logon ko yih khānā pasand hai?

Do you like this food? ('to you people is it pleasing?')

Plural possessive pronouns ('our, your, their') are formed by using لوگ log:

ham logon kā vatan our homeland ('of us people')

āp logoń ke bacce your children ('of you people')

# ال کر بخوال بین? **kahāṅ ke rahnevāle haiṅ?** 'Where do you come from?'

The word بن rahnevālā (m.) ابن rahnevālī (f.), composed of two of Delhi', even though the person may have been born and brought up in Karachi. In other words, you refer to family origins rather than to where you actually live at present. How to say the latter will be discussed in the next

The emotive word education 'homeland' again often refers to the ancestoral home:

میرا وطن پنجاب ہے merā vatan panjāb hai My (ancestoral) home is Panjab

## main bacpan se yahān hūn ٹی بچپن سے یہاں ہول

In Urdu, when you say 'I have been here since childhood', 'I have been here for five hours', you say 'I am here since ...', 'I am here for ...', because you are here still. 'Since' and 'for' are expressed by  $\leq$  se:

میں بچین سے یہاں ہوں main bacpan se yahān hūn I have been here since childhood میں پانچ کھنے سے اس ریسترال میں ہوں

main pānc ghanțe se is restarăn men hūn

I've been in this restaurant for five hours

ghanța means 'hour'. When the word is in the plural and followed by a postposition, the direct plural form is used and not, perhaps unexpectedly, the oblique plural:

pānc ghanțe عَلَيْ عَالَمُ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَلَيْهِ عَ five hours for five hours pānc ghanțe se پانچ گھنے ہے

لا بور يهال سے كتى دور ب؟ باره كفظ كا راسة ب lāhaur yahān se kitnī dūr hai? bāra ghante kā rāsta hai How far is Lahore from here? It's twelve hours away ('a road of twelve hours')

aur 'more', 'some more'

UNIT 4

as well as meaning 'and', may also mean 'more' or 'some more': 

اور کھائیں aurkhāen

let's eat some more

mukālima do Dialogue 2 عالمروو

Aslam reflects on the size and complexities of his country.

صاحب' آپ سيالكوث كر بخوال بين نا؟ كيا آپ بنجالي بين؟ بالما المسلم : المجتمع المسلم : " المبتم المسلم : المبتم المبتم

ہم سب ہو ت پاسان ہیں۔ ہی تعییدہ بات ہا ، ، ، ، کہ بیت ازادہ ہندہ سیال اور ہندہ سیال بہت بڑے ۔ ، ، کہ بیس از اس بہت بڑے ۔ ، کہ بیس از اس بہت بڑے ۔ ، کہ بیس نے بیس از اس بہت بڑے ۔ ، ، یہ بیس از اس بیس کا بیس کی کی بیس کی کرد کرد کرد ک

جان : خرور بھے بہت و کچی ہے۔ لین ان بہت ار ی ہے۔ بیلیں ایک کپ چائے پیکیں! اسلم : بالکل نمیک آپ کافیال انجیاجہ چلیں اس چائے خانے میں چائے ہیں۔

jān : aslam sāhib, āp sīālkoţ ke rahnevāle hain nā? kyā āp panjābī han? aslam : jī nahīn. sīālkoṭ merā vatan hai lekin mere vālidain hindustān ke hain. hamārī zabān urdū hai. jaisā ki āp ko ma'lūm hai is mulk men har tarah ke log hain, lekin phir bhī ham sab log pākistānī hain. kāfī pecīda bāt hai nā?

jān : jī nahīn. mere xayāl se behut ziyāda pecīda nahīn. pākistān aur hindustān bahut bare mulk hain. aur in mulkon kī tārīx bahut lambī hai.

aslam : yih to sac hai. sīālkoṭ karācī se kam se kam ek hazār mīl dūr hai. rel gāṇī se bīs paccīs ghanṭe kā safar hai. vahāṅ ke mausam aur yahāṅ ke mausam meṅ kitnā farq hai! har tarah kī zabāneṅ bhī haiṅ. kyā āp ko in bātoṅ se dilcaspī hai?

jān : zarūr, mujhe bahut dilcaspī hai. lekin āj bahut garmī hai. calen. ek kap cāe pīen?

aslam : bilkul thīk. āp kā xayāl acchā hai. calen, us cāe xāne men cāe pīen.

John : Aslam Sahib! You come from Sialkot, don't you? Are you a Panjabi?

Aslam: No. Sialkot is my homeland, but my parents are from India. Our language is Urdu. As you know, there are all kinds of people in this country, but even so we are all Pakistanis. It's quite a complicated matter, isn'tit?

John : No. In ('from') my opinion it's not all that complicated. Pakistan and India are very big countries. And the history of these countries is very long.

Aslam: That's true. Sialkot is at least a thousand miles from Karachi. By train it's twenty (or) twenty-five hours' journey. What a difference there is in the weather here and the weather there. There are all sorts of languages as well. Are you interested in ('to you is there interest from') these matters?

John : Of course. I am very interested. But it's very warm today. Come on, shall we have a cup of tea?

Aslam: Quite right! That's a good idea of yours. Come on, let's have tea

UNIT 4

hindustān ہندو تان کے ke	from India	وہالکاموسم	vahāṅ kā mausam	the weather
phirbhī 🏃 کی	even so	E 1135-1	(	there
pecīda ويجيره	complicated	فرق	farq	difference (m.)
mere xayāl میرے خیال <u>=</u> se	in my opinion	علاقه	'ilāqa	area,
mulk II	country (m.)		dilcaspī	region (m.) interest(f.)
ير tārīx	history (f.)	آپ کود کچی ہے		are you
با lambā	long		dilcaspī hai	interested
ہے کہ kam se kam	at least	الناباتولے	in bāton se	in these
ek hazār ایک بزار	athousand			things
rel gāṛī עלט	train (f.)		zarūr	certainly
paccīs چیں	twenty-five	ایک کپ چائے	ek kap cāe	
نخ safar	journey (m.)			tea
(r mausam	weather, climate			
	(m.)			807 1 (2.3) (4.

### gavā'id Grammar قواعد

### main hindustan kā hūn

We have met the phrase الْ رَجِوْلُ وَمِلُ مِنْ اللهِ مَنْ مِنْ وَمِنْ اللهُ مِنْ اللهِ اللهِ اللهِ اللهُ اللهُ اللهُ اللهُ اللهُ may be dropped without any difference to the meaning:

میں ہندوستان کا / کی ہوں

main hindustān kā/kī hūn

'I am of India' i.e. I originate from India

آپ کہال کے ہیں۔ میں اصل میں لندن کا ہوں

āp kahāṅ ke haiṅ? maiṅ asal meṅ landan kā hūṅ Where are you from? In fact I am from London

#### A har 'every'; - sab 'all'

n har, mostly used with singular nouns, means 'every':

har mulk every country مراكب har ādmī every person

When followed by يَل ek it means 'every single', يَرِيكِ har ek cīz 'every single thing'.

א את har tarah kā means 'all kinds of', 'all sorts of' לתט har tarah means 'way, method, kind' (f.).

אלעד באפל har tarah ke log all kinds of people אלעד באפל har tarah kī kitāben all sorts of books

- sab 'all' is mostly used with plural nouns:

sab log all (the) people sab cīzeṅ all (the) things

Note the word order in \( \sqrt{i} \) ham sab 'all of us' and \( \sqrt{i} \) \( \bar{a}p \) sab 'all of you'.

#### "mere xayāl se 'in my opinion' يرے خيال ت

خیال خیال نea, opinion, thought' (m.) is used in the expression خیرے خیال سے  $mere\ xay\overline{al}\ se$  'in (from) my opinion', 'I think that'. Note also the expression کی خیال ہے' (what is your opinion?', 'what do you think?'.

#### rel gārī se 'by train'

#### 'dilcaspī 'interest' رئجي, dilcaspī 'interest'

The adjective ولچپ means interesting:

The noun  $U_{\infty}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ , means interest (f.). The expression  $U_{\infty}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ ,  $U_{\infty}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ ,  $U_{\infty}^{\frac{1}{2}}$  mujhe is se dilcaspī hai 'to me from this is interest' means 'I am interested in this':

کیا آپ کو یاکتان سے ولچی ہے؟ جی ہاں مجھے بہت ولچی ہے

kyā āp ko pākistān se dilcaspī hai? jī hān mujhe bahut dilcaspī hai Are you interested in Pakistan? Yes, I am very interested

#### calen 'let's go', 'shall we go?'

UNIT 4

When added to the stem of the verb, the suffix u/-n expresses 'let's (do)', 'shall we (do)'. So far we have met the following examples:

The form is discussed in detail later. Note that the verb  $\psi$  calnā can mean 'to go, come, walk, depart', and that the exact translation is decided from the context.

### جى garmīhai 'it's hot'; جى sardīhai 'it's cold'

by garmī means 'heat' (f); (3) sardī means 'cold (ness)' (f). 'It is hot/cold today' is expressed in Urdu as  $-(5/6)^{-1}$  āj garmī hai 'there is heat today'  $-(3/6)^{-1}$  āj sardī hai 'there is cold today'. 'The mausam can mean both 'weather' and 'climate' (m.).

#### siqāfat Culture أقانت

In India and Pakistan, people are very proud of their origins, and even though they may never have lived in their ancestoral homeland  $\phi^{b_j}$  they still feel that they belong to it. The  $\phi^{b_j}$  might be a region, for instance Panjab or UP  $\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}$  the former British United Provinces to the east of Delhi, now called Uttar Pradesh (coincidentally with the same initials), or a city like Lahore or Lucknow  $\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{2}$  lakhnaū. After Partition, many Urdu speakers migrated to the newly founded state of Pakistan from Delhi and UP, the homeland of Urdu, and, even when firmly settled, still persisted in describing their  $\phi^{b_j}$  as that part of India from which their families and forebears originally came.

In Indian and Pakistani society men and women mix much less freely than they do in the West. In general, women have female friends while men prefer the company of their male friends widost. Hence the

word ייב is generally masculine, and applies to a male friend or friends in general. In exceptional circumstances, especially in Europe, where segregation of the sexes is less rigid, it would be possible to say: ייב עווי vuh merī dost hain 'she is my friend', making the word feminine. The word can however, only be used by a woman for her female friend.

### mašqen Exercises

### 4.2 Comprehension

Listen to the conversation between the two ladies, Fahmida (بهيوه) and Mumtaz (١١) and tick the correct answer.

1 Fahmida meets Mumtaz

At home ( ) In town ( )

2 The children are

On holiday ( ) At school ( )

3 Mumtaz is asked if she knows

A good shop ( ) A hotel ( )

4 The weather is

Warm() Cold() Have ice cream ( ) Have lunch ( )

5 Fahmida proposes they

4.3 Answer the questions: Look at the pictures and answer the questions.











1 یو محرصاحب اور ال کے بچے ہیں۔ ال کے کتنے بچے ہیں؟ 2 آج گری ہے یاسردی ہے؟

2 سار حم بیں۔ ان کو کھانا پندے؟

4 يه فېميده اور متازيس وه كېال يس؟

5 يهال دوبينك نوث بين \_ كتفروي بين ؟

### 4.4 Translate into Urdu

- 1 Mr Rahim is in fact a native of Delhi, but his house is in Pakistan.
- 2 There is much difference in the climate of England and the climate of Asia.
- 3 Hello, Mumtaz S\u00e4hiba. Let's go and have some ice cream.
- 4 It's very warm today. Let's go and have a cup of tea.
- 5 Lahore is at least a thousand miles (far) from Karachi.

آپ ہرروز کیا کرتے ہیں؟

### āp har roz kyā karte hain? What do you do every day?

In this unit you will learn how to:

- describe your daily routine
- ask others about their activities
- tell the time
- express the days of the week

mukālima ek Dialogue 1

John meets Aslam in his office and asks him about his day.

اسلم : آبے عن صاحب خوش آمدید بد میرادفتر ب عام طور بی میں بہال کام کرتا ہول۔ تشریف کی بیت ہیں۔ جان : شکرید اسلم صاحب آپ کاوفتر واقعی بہت فولصورت ب کیا آپ ہر روز بہال اسلم : بیمال کینی پیرے جمعے تک کام پر آنا ہوں۔ ہفتے اور اتوار کویش گھرپر رہتا ہوں۔ ۔ بیمار جان : آپيهال كتخ بج ينج بين؟ بی در این مسبب پی است با کا این این از پڑھتا ہوں اور بیوی اور بیوی اور بیوی کے ساتھ ماشتہ کرتا اسلم : شی ہر روز پائٹ کے افد گھرے کوئی سات بج لکتا ہول۔ خوش فستی سے میری گاڑی ہے۔ ڈرائیور انچھا آدی ہے۔ اور بھیشہ وقت پر آتا ہے۔ شن وقت میں کوئی آٹھ بج پنچتا

ہوں۔ جان : کیا آپ کی بیٹم کام کرتی ہیں؟ اسلم : چی نیس۔ میساکہ آپ کو معلوم ہے' حامد کا اسکول ہار کے گھرے گال دور ہے۔ دودوسرے پچول کے ساتھ ہیں ش اسکول جاتا ہے۔ وہال نو بجے پہنچاہے اور کوئی چار بجے گھر آتا ہے۔ اتھا' پہلے چاہئے میچے۔ اس کے بعد میں آپ کوسب چھ بتا تا ہوں۔

UNIT 5

aslam : aīe jān sāhib. xuš āmaded. yih merā daftar hai. 'ām taur se main yahān kām kartā hūn. tašrīf rakhīe. ham abhī cāe pīte hain.

iān šukrīa, aslam sāhib. āp kā daftar vāqa'ī bahut xūbsūrat hai. kyā āp har roz yahān āte hain?

aslam : jī hān, ya'nī pīr se jum'e tak kām par ātā hūn. hafte aur itvār ko

main ghar par rahtā hūn.

āp yahān kitne baje pahuncte hain? jān

aslam : maiń har roz pāńc baje uṭhtā hūń, namāz paṛhtā hūń, bīvī aur baccoń ke săth nāšta kartā hūñ. us ke ba'd ghar se koī sāt baje nikaltā hūń. xuš qismatī se merī gārī hai. ḍrāivar acchā ādmī hai, aur hameša vaqt par ātā hai. main daftar men koī āṭh baje pahunctā

hūn.

: kyā āp kī begam kām kartī hain. jān

aslam : jī nahīn, vuh ghar par rahtī hain aur baccon kī dekh bhāl kartī hain. jaisā ki āp ko ma'lūm hai, hāmid kā iskūl hamāre ghar se kāfī dūr hai. vuh düsre baccon ke sāth bas men iskūl jātā hai. vahān nau baje pahunctā hai aur koī cār baje ghar ātā hai. acchā pahle cāe pījīe. us ke ba'd main āp ko sab kuch batātā hūn.

Come in, John. Welcome. This is my office. Usually I work here. Take a seat. We'll have ('drink') tea right now.

John Thank you, Aslam Sahib. Your office is really very beautiful. Do you come here every day?

Aslam : Yes. That is I work from Monday to Friday. On Saturday and Sunday I stay at home.

John : What time do you arrive here?

Aslam: I get up every day at five o'clock. I say (my) prayers; I have ('do') breakfast with the wife and children. After that I leave ('go out from') the house at about seven o'clock. Fortunately, I have a car. The driver is a good man and always come on time. I arrive in the office at about eight.

John : Does your wife work?

No, she stays at home and looks after the children. As you know, Hamid's school is quite far from our house. He goes to school by bus with the other children. He arrives there at nine o'clock and comes home at about four. But first drink (your) tea. After that, I'll tell you everything.

hũn

## gavā'id Grammar قواعد

#### The Urdu verb

UNIT 5

A verb is a word which expresses action ('to do, go'), feeling ('to seem, feel'), existence ('to be, live'), etc. A verb is usually referred to by its infinitive, which in English is preceded by 'to': 'to do, go, to be'. Verbs have participles, which in English are often formed by adding-ing (the present participle) and -ed (the past participle) to the verb, e.g. loving, loved. English, however, has many irregular forms: 'doing, done; seeing, seen', etc.) Verbs also have tenses which indicate the time of the action. For example 'I go' is the present tense, 'I shall go' is the future tense, and 'I went' is the past tense. Urdu, being a language from the same family as English, has a similar range of verb forms: infinitive, participles and tense, etc.

The Urdu infinitive always ends in t-nā. So far we have met the honā 'to be', tt batānā 'to tell', tí ānā 'to come' the dekhnā 'to see' the khānā 'to place' the khānā 'to eat' and the pīnā 'to drink'.

The most basic part of the verb, the stem, from which all other parts of the verb are formed, is obtained by dropping the t  $-n\bar{a}$  of the infinitive. In the first dialogue of this unit we met some new verbs. These, with their stems, are as follows:

ws.				
	Stem		Infinitive	
T	ã-	tī	ānā	to come
5	kar-	55	karnā	to do
6,	rakh-	ر کھنا	rakhnā	to place
ړي	pī-	٠ الله	pīnā	to drink
ره د	rah-	دينا	rahnā	to stay, live
Ž.	pahunc-	ينجنا	pahuncnā	to arrive
اٹھ	uth-	اخصنا	uṭhnā	to get up
24	parh-	يزحنا	paṛhnā	to read
پرط تکل	nikal-	فكانا	nikalnā	to go out
جا	jā-	حاتا	jānā	to go
tz	batā-	tta	batānā	to tell
<i>v</i> .	so-	tor	sonā	to (go to) sleep

### $The \, present \, participle \, and \, the \, present \, habitual \, tense$

The present participle of the verb, which in some ways corresponds to the English 'going, doing', is formed by adding the suffixes  $\mathfrak{r}$  - $t\bar{a}$  (m. s.),  $\bar{\mathcal{J}}$  - $\bar{u}$  (f.),  $\mathcal{L}$  -te (m. p.) to the stem of the verb. The endings are the same as those of adjectives ending in i - $\bar{a}$ , such as  $\mathcal{L}^{\mathfrak{p}}$  - $acch\bar{a}$ :

Present participle	Stem	Infinitive

m.p.	25	f.	كرتي	m.s.	55	5	55	(karnā)
m.p.	2.7	f.	7تى	m.s.	tī	7	tT	(ānā)
m.p.	2	f.	3	m.s.	ييتا	ني	پنا	(pīnā)

The present habitual tense expresses action which is performed regularly and habitually, something which is done always, often or usually. It corresponds to the English tense 'I do (usually), I go (often)', etc.

It is formed with the present participle followed by the relevant part of  $t_{ST}$  hon $\bar{a}$ :

Gender is indicated by the ending of the participle; number both by the participle and the verb  $t_{\mathcal{H}}$  honā.

パ ham 'we', however, is always regarded as masculine plural. Both men and women say ヴェルタ ham jāte hain 'we go'.

Since the verb itself indicates the person to which it refers, the personal pronoun is often omitted:

The present habitual tense of the verb t / karnā 'to do' is as follows:

#### Masculine

maiń kartā hūń	میں کر تا ہوں	I do
tū kartā hai	تؤكرتائ	you do
yih, vuh kartā hai	يه' وه کرتاہے	he/it does
ham karte hain	ہم کرتے ہیں	we do

tum karte ho	42 SE	you do
āp karte hain	آپ کرتے ہیں	you do
yih, vuh karte hain	يه وه كرتے ہيں	they do
Feminine		
main kartī hūn	میں کرتی ہوں	I do
tū kartī hai	توکرتی ہے	you do
yih, vuh kartī hai	يه' وه کرتی ہے	she/it does
ham karte hain	ہم کرتے ہیں	we do
tum kartī ho	تح كرتى مو	you do
āp kartī hain	آپ کرتی ہیں	you do
yih, vuh kartī hain	په 'وه کرتی ہیں	they do

All verbs follow the same patern, without exception:

مين المقتابون	I (m.) get up	ميرابيثا پنچاہ	my son arrives
میں پڑھتی ہوں	I (f.) read	میری بٹی آتی ہے	my daughter comes
آپ جاتے ہیں	you (m.) go	ہم و مکھتے ہیں	we see
رجيم صاحب بتاتے ہيں	Mr. Rahim tells	میری بیگم کرتی ہیں	my wife does
	(plural of respec	t)	(plural of respect)

#### Phrase verbs

Many one-word English verbs are expressed in Urdu by a phrase which usually consists of a noun followed by a verb, for example  $\mathcal{L} / \mathcal{E}$   $k \bar{a} m k a m \bar{a}$  to do work' = to work;  $\mathcal{L} / \mathcal{E} / \mathcal{E}$   $k \bar{a} / \mathcal{E}$ 

Rahim works every day ('does work')

Aslam gets up and prays ('reads prayers')

Mrs Aslam looks after the children ('does the children's looking after')

ham abhī cāe pīte hain We'll have tea right now

#### Days of the week

The days of the week are:

itvār	اتوار	Sunday
pīr	Æ.	Monday
mangal	منگل	Tuesday
budh	بدھ	Wednesda
jumi'rāt	جمعرات	Thursday
jum' a	22.	Friday
hafta	ہفتہ	Saturday

Note that all are masculine except ""

"Thursday'. For "

"Monday' there is a common alternative "

"somvār, which is often heard in Panjab. For "

"Saturday' some people use "

"sanīcar. The word literally means 'the planet Saturn', which is regarded as unlucky, and therefore "

"Is generally avoided.

har roz means 'every day'. 'On a day' is expressed by ﴿ ko. Note that ﷺ and المشر are masculine nouns like ﴿ وَمُنْ اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَيْ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّا عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَّا عَلَّهُ عَلَّا عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَّ عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَّا عَلَى اللَّهُ عَلَّ عَلَّ عَلَّا عَلَّا عَل

vuh pīr ko ātā hai	He comes on Monday
jum'e ko chuțți hai	There is a holiday on Friday
hafte ko kām hai	There is work on Saturday
pīr se jum'e tak	From Monday to Friday
	jum'e ko chuṭṭī hai hafte ko kām hai

85

#### Telling the time

To say 'at ... o'clock' Urdu Uses 🔬 baje.

ek baje at one o'clock جِنِّ do baje at two o'clock علائه do baje at two o'clock علائه do baje at two o'clock علائه الكرائية الك

Note £ itne baje? at what time? 'at how much o'clock?'.

'What is the time' and 'it is ... o'clock' are expressed as follows:

kitne baje hain: What is the time? ('how many are o'clock?)
ek bajā hai It is one o'clock (singular)
do baje hain It is two o'clock (plural)

#### Compound postpositions

So far all the postpositions we have met have consisted of one word:  $\downarrow$  on;  $\leftarrow$  from;  $\downarrow$  in;  $\downarrow$  to;  $\leftarrow$  up to. There are many postpositions which consist of two words, the first of which is usually  $\leftarrow$  ke:  $\delta$ to  $\leftarrow$ ke:  $\delta$ t

おいとしき baccon ke sāth with the children mere kām ke ba'd after my work us ke ba'd after that

#### Selection of clocks ...

(a)



ب



بات کے











أَلُ koī 'about', 'approximately'

We have met  $\hat{\mathcal{Y}}$  koī in the sense of 'some', 'any':

كوئى بات نہيں

It doesn't matter ('it isn't any thing')

When preceding numerals, if means 'about', 'approximately':

اسلم كوئى سات بج يبنيخ بين

Aslam arrives about seven o'clock

ະເວ rahnā 'to stay, remain, live'

The verb  $t_{\pi}$ , rahnā has two basic meanings. It can mean to stay:

میری بیگم عام طورے گھر پردہتی ہیں

merī begam 'ām taur se ghar par rahtī hain

My wife usually stays at home

Its other meaning is 'to live, reside':

main karācī men rahtā hūn

I live in Karachi Where do you live?

آپڳال رڄ ٿِن؟ äp kahān rahte hain?

To go to place When you say 'I go to school', 'I go to Pakistan' in Urdu, no word for 'to' is required:

میرے بچ نو بجے اسکول جاتے ہیں

mere bacce nau baje iskūl jāte hain My children go (to) school at nine o'clock UNIT 5

میں ہر سال پاکستان جاتا ہوں

main har sāl pākistān jatā hūn

I go (to) Pakistan every year

The same applies to other verbs of motion such as ti 'to come' and ti 'to arrive':

میں آٹھ بے دفتر آتی ہوں

I (f.) come to the office at eight o'clock

### mašq Exercise شق

#### 5.1 Answer the questions in English

In her diary Fahmida records a typical working day. Read her entry and answer in English the questions which follow:

جعرات ۱۱رما

يا في بج المحتى مول (1)

نماز پڑھتی ہوں اور والدین کے ساتھ ناشتہ کرتی ہوں (r)

گھرے تکلی ہوں اور ریل گاڑی سے بینک جاتی ہوں

(٣) ایک چھوٹے ریستورال میں زگس کے ساتھ کھانا کھاتی ہول

(۵) پانچ بجد فترے تکتی ہوں اور گھر چھے بح پہنچی ہوں

(۲) سات بج کھانا کھاتی ہول اور ٹیلیویژان دیکھتی ہول

(٤) گياره بچسوتي بول

- 1 What time does Fahmida get up?
- 2 What does she do after getting up?
- 3 With whom does she have her breakfast?
- 4 How does she get to her bank?
- 5 Where and with whom does she have lunch?
- 6 What time does she get home?
- 7 What does she do in the evening?

### mukālima do Dialogue 2

Bilqis discusses her daily life with Helen.

ہیلن : بلقیں 'آپ کا گھروا تھی بہت آرامہ ہے۔ بلقیں : بی بال۔ ٹھیک ہے۔ کافی پر اتا گھر ہے لیکن ہیں بہت پنند ہے۔ شہر کے مرکزے زیادہ دور میں۔ اس علاقے میں سب دوکا میں ہیں اور اقبال اور نرکس کے اسکول کافی نزدیک

ہیلن : آپ توکام نہیں کر تیں! بلقس : بی نہیں۔ میں 'اکٹر عور تو آپ کی طرح گھر پر دہتی ہوں' بچو ل کا دیکھ جمال کرتی ہو ل اور کھانا پائی ہو ل۔ ہمارے دو تو کر ہیں لیکن تھے کھانا پاٹا پہند ہے۔ یہ میر می خاص دلچین ہے۔

ہیلن : کیا آپ بازار محمی جاتی ہیں۔ بلیس : تی فیس ' میں نیل زیادہ فیس جاتی۔ ہاراؤ کر عام طور سے فریداری کر تاہے اور بازار سے چیز میں لا تاہے۔ اسلم صاحب کو بازار بالکل پیند فیس ہے۔ وہ مجمی دہال میس جاتے۔ ہیلن : تی ہال' مجھے معلوم ہے۔ وہ میرے شوہر کی طرح ہیں۔ وہ دو کائول میں مجمی نہیں

helan : bilqīs, āp kā ghar vāqa'ī bahut ārāmdih hai.

bilqīs : jī hān, ṭhīk hai. kāfī purānā ghar hai lekin hamen bahut pasand hai. šahr ke markaz se ziyāda dūr nahīn. is 'ilāqe men sab dūkānen hain, aur iqbāl aur nargis ke iskūl kāfī nazdīk hain.

helan : āp to kām nahīn kartīn?

bilqīs : jī nahīn. main aksar 'auraton kī tarah ghar par rahtī hūn. baccon kī dekh bhāl kartī hūn aur khānā pakātī hūn. hamāre do naukar hain, lekin mujhe khānā pakānā pasand hai. yih merī xās dilcaspī hai.

helan : kyā āp bāzār bhī jātī hain?

bilqīs : jī nahīn. main ziyāda nahīn jātī. hamārā naukar 'ām taur se xarīdārī kartā hai, aur bāzār se cīzen lātā hai. aslam sāhib ko bāzār bilkul pasand nahīn hai. vuh kabhī vahān nahīn jāte.

helan : jī hān, mujhe ma'lūm hai. vuh mere šauhar kī tarah hain. vuh dūkānon men kabhī nahīn jāte. UNIT 5

Helen : Bilqis, your home is really very comfortable.

Bilqis : Yes. It's all right. It's quite an old house but we like it very much. It's not very far from the centre of the city. All the shops are in this area, and Iqbal's and Nargis' schools are quite near.

Helen : You don't work?

Bilqis : No. Like most women I stay at home. I look after the children and cook the food. But I like cooking ('to cook'). This is my special

Helen : Do you go to the bazaar as well?

Bilqis: No. I don't go all that much. Our servant usually does the shopping, and brings things from the bazaar. Aslam doesn't like the bazaar at all. He never goes there.

Helen: Yes, I know. He's like my husband. He never goes in the shops.

<b>,</b> .O	ārā آرامه		comfortable	زياده	ziyāda	all that
	kāl کام ٹیس کرتیں؟ ka ak:	artīn ?	don't you work? most; often		xarīdārī xarīdārī	much shopping to go
	kī کاطرح pa یکان		like to cook	עז	karnā Jānā	shopping to bring
	xā خاص		special	مجمعی نہیں	kabhī nahīn	not ever, never

#### qavā'id Grammar واعد

### Negative forms of the present habitual tense

The negative of the present habitual tense, 'I do not do', is formed by placing the negative particle  $\mathcal{L}'$  nahīn immediately before the verb:

ا کی جاتاءوں I go اس کی جاتاءوں I do not go جنگانی she cooks جنگانی she does not cook

ہم اکثر بوہری بازار میں خریداری کرتے ہیں ham aksar bohrī bāzār men xarīdārī karte hain We usually go ('do') shopping in Bohri Bazaar

UNIT 5

لم kabhī 'ever'; کی نیس kabhī nahīn 'not ever, never' kabhī means 'ever':

In negative sentences kabhī nahīn means 'not ever', 'never':

ميرك شوہر بازار مجى نہيں جاتے

mere šauhar bāzār kabhī nahīn jāte My husband never goes to bazaar

يهال ہم پانی تھی نہيں پيتے

yahān ham pānī kabhī nahīn pīte We never drink the water here

Most women do not work

Most Pakistanis speak Urdu

My wife mostly stays at home

kītarah 'like'

کر کا  $k\bar{\imath}$  tarah 'like' is a compound postposition, of which the first element is  $\sqrt{k\bar{\imath}}$ .

اکثر عورتوں کی طرح میری بیگم کام نہیں کرتیں

Like you, I am also a native of Lucknow

بازار میں ہم ہر طرح کی چزیں خرید ہیں

אַרע xarīdārī means 'shopping' (f.) The phrase verb אַבורט xarīdārī

mukālima tīn Dialogue 3

Aslam asks John about his routine in England. اسلم : جان صاحب الگستان ميں آپ لوگوں كامعمول كياہے ؟ مجھے اس ہے و كچپى ہے۔

بان : جیداکہ آپ کو معلوم ہے ہم دونوں ڈاکٹر بیں۔ اس لئے ہم پیشہ مصروف رہتے ہیں۔ آپ کی طرح ہم جم مح موریہ اضح بیں۔ باشنے کے بعد ہم کلک پر جاتے ہیں۔ مارا کلک کورے زیادہ دور کمیں اور عام طورے دو پر کو ہم گھر پر کھانا کھاتے ہیں۔

اسلم : کیاآپ لوگ برروز کام کرتے ہیں؟ جان : بی تبین عام طور پر ہم تکا کواور جمرات کوفار ٹارج ہیں۔ کین بیٹو کو ٹین بج تک ہم کام کرتے ہیں۔ شام کوہم کوئی آٹھ ہے گھر آتے ہیں اور کھانا کھاتے ہیں۔ اس کے ایم خمید جن لیے جریں کے بینے ہیں۔

اسلم : اچھا' توآپ کازند گاکانی معروف ہے! خیر کوئیات نہیں' اب توآپ کی چھٹی ہے۔ اس سے فائدوانٹ کے!

The verb ts may be optionally dropped:

main nahīn jātā I (m.) don't go

ى vuh nahīn pakātī she doesn't cook

However when عن is dropped from the feminine plural وه فيس عاتى بين عاتى بين عاتى بين عاتى بين عاتى الم nahīn jātī hain, 'they (f.) do not go' the participle changes the ending  $\,\mathcal{G}\,$  -1 to

vuh nahīn jātī hain they (f.) don't go ونين جاتمى vuh nahīn jātīn they (f.) don't go

Similarly د نین کر تی بی wuh nahīn kartīn they do not do, مین کی گیری میگر المروزی بین کی تی استان wuh nahīn kartīn they do not do, میری میگر المروزی المورزی المورزی

aksar 'most; often'

The word \*/ has two functions: as an adjective in the sense of 'most':

and as an adverb meaning 'often', 'mostly':

I often go to Pakistan

Like most women my wife does not work آپ کی طرح ش مجمی ککھنٹو کا رہنے والا ہوں

نيدارى كا xarīdārī karnā 'to go shopping'

The verb tạż xarīdnā means 'to buy':

bāzār men ham har tarah kī cīzen xarīdte hain We buy all sorts of things in the bazaar

karnā means 'to shop', 'to go shopping':

: jaisā ki āp ko ma'lūm hai, ham donon dākṭar hain. is lie ham iān hameša masrūf rahte hain. āp kā tarah ham subh savere uthte hain. näšte ke ba'd ham klinik par jäte hain. hamärä klinik ghar se ziyāda dūr nahīn aur 'ām taur se do pahr ko ham ghar par khā nā khāte hain.

aslam : kyā āp log har roz kām karte hain?

: jī nahīn. 'ām taur par ham mangal aur jumi'rāt ko fāriğ rahte ha in. lekin hafte ko tīn baje tak ham kām karte hain. šām ko ham koī āṭh baje ghar āte hain, khānā khāte hain, us ke ba'd ṭelīvižan pa r xabren dekhte hain.

aslam : acchā, to āp kī zindagī kāfī masrūf hai. xair, koī bāt nahīn. ab to āp kī chuṭṭī hai. is se fāida uṭhāīe.

Aslam: John! What's your routine in England? I am interested in this.

John : As you know, we are both doctors. Therefore, we are ('remain') always busy. Like you we get up early in the morning. After breakfast we go to the clinic. Our clinic is not far from the house, and usually at midday we have lunch ('eat food') at home.

Aslam: And do you work every day?

John : No. Usually we are ('remain') free on Tuesday and Thursday. But on Saturday we work till three o'clock. In the evening we come home at about eight, have dinner; after that we watch the news on television.

Aslam: I see. So your life is quite busy. Well, never mind. Now you're on holiday. Take advantage of it.

		c	٦	ı
3	S	'n	٠	п

معمول	ma'mūl	routine (m.)	مع سورے	subh savere	early in the morning
ېم دونو ل	ham donon		كلتك	klinik	clinic (m.)
اس کے	is lie	therefore	کلنگ پر	klinik par	to the
صح	subh	morning, in the	16.33	do pahr	clinic midday (f.)
		morning (f)	دو پېر کو	do pahr ko	at midday

telīvižan ٹیلیویژان دیکھنا to watch أَن fāriğ free, at TV dekhnā news (f.p.) xabren خریں fāriğ rahte قارغ جين we are ż xair well!, so! ('remain') hain fāida فاكره advantage free evening (m.) خار šām se faida ے فائدہ اٹھانا (f.)

in the šām ko evening telīviżan ٹیلیویژن television (m.)

advantage of

uṭhānā

### gavā'id Grammar

### ورنوں donon عَنِي donon ورنوں donon ورنوں

When the suffix U, -on is added to a numeral, it gives the sense of 'all two, all three, all four', so-called 'inclusive numbers'. *ii* do has a slightly irregular form  $\cup j$  do non which is best translated as 'both':

Note the word order مرونول 'we both' which is often rendered in English as 'both of us'. Other numerals add ن -on regularly: نيون finon 'all three', cāron 'all four', عارول pāncon 'all five':

pākistān, hindustān aur bangla-deš, tīnon mulk janūbī ešiyā men hain Paistan, India and Bangladesh, all three countries are in South Asia.

### ta rahnā 'to be somewhere usually'

When you are usually or always somewhere, the verb 'to be' is often translated by to rahnā'to remain':

main istešan par hūn

I am at ('on') the station (now)

main nau baje se pānc tak daftar men rahtā hūn I'm always at the office from 9 till 5

ham is vaqt masrūf hain We are busy at this moment

ham aksar masrūf rahte hain

We are usually busy

#### Times of the day

The most common word for 'day' is & din:

main din men kām kartā hūn

I work during ('in') the day

The word 200 roz is used only in certain expressions like  $\frac{1}{2}00$   $f_0$  har roz 'every day', or by itself in the same sense:

main roz klinik par jātā hūn

I go to ('on') the clinic every day

Divisions of the day are as follows:

50	subh	morning/in the morning (f.
مع سويے	subh savere	early in the morning
1493	do pahr	midday(f.)
\$ 1600	do pahr ko	atmidday
دو پہر کے بعد	do pahr ke ba'd	in the afternoon
الم	šām	evening(f.)
شام کو	šām ko	in the evening
رات	rāt	night(f.)
دات کو	rāt ko	atnight

These expressions are illustrated in the following passage, which you should practise reading aloud:

یں صح سویرے افستاہوں۔ میں فیخ تو بچے دختر پہنیا ہوں۔ دوپہر کو میں ایک چھوٹے ریستر ال میں کھانا کھا تاہوں۔ دوپہر کے بعد مثل دوخر میں کام کر تاہوں ادرعام طورے میں شام کو کو تی سات ہے گھر پہنیا ہوں۔ میری پینم کھانا پائل میں ' اور کھانے کے بعد ہم ٹیلیو تزان کھیتے ہیں۔ رات کو میں ت تک سو تاہوں

main subh savere uṭhtā hūn. main subh nau baje daftar pahunctā hūn. do pahr ko main ek choṭe restarān men khānā khātā hūn. do pahr ke ba'd main daftar men kām kartā hūn aur 'ām taur se main šām ko koī sāt baje ghar pahunctā hūn. merī begam khānā pakātī hain, aur khāne ke ba'd ham ṭelīviżan dekhte hain. rāt ko main subh tak sotā hūn.

I get up early in the morning. I arrive at the office at nine o'clock in the morning. At midday I have lunch in a small restaurant. In the afternoon I work in the office and I usually arrive home at about seven in the evening. My wife cooks the dinner. After dinner, we watch the telivision. At night I sleep till morning.

'This morning', 'this afternoon', 'this evening', 'tonight' are expressed:

750	āj subh	today morning
آج دو پہر کے بعد	āj do pahr ke ba'd	today afternoon
آج شام کو	āj šām ko	today in the evening
آجرات کو	āj rāt ko	today at night

#### Numbers

UNIT 5

At this stage the numerals 21-30 (Appendix 1) should be learnt.

#### siqāfat Culture ڤات

In India and Pakistan, professional people living in cities have a daily routine similar to that of most countries in the world. The British institution of the 'weekend' still aplies and most offices are closed on Saturday and Sunday. Muslims regard Friday as the most important day of worship, and mosques are crowded for midday prayers. Many middle-class women still do not go out to work and fulfil their traditional role of looking after the house and family. Even relatively poor families can afford one or two servants, who often become part of the household, working for little more than their keep. The situation is of course very different in villages, where women play as

great a part in agriculture as the men. The amount of freedom women have to go out shopping and enjoy themselves in town with their friends depends upon the traditions of the family and the attitude of their husband.

### mašqen Exercises

#### 5.2 Dialogue

Take your part in the following dialogue. When answering in the first person, make sure you use the appropriate gender for yourself.

Aslam : آپ کہال کے رہنے والے بیں / کی رہنے والی ہیں؟ (Tell him that you come from England) : You

Aslam : انگلتان میں آپ کیا کرتے (کرتی) ہیں؟

(Tell him that you are a doctor in London) You

Aslam : آپ کوپاکتان پند ہے؟

(Tell him you like it very much) You

Aslam : کراچی میں آپ کے دوست ہیں؟

(Tell him that you have many) : You

Aslam : آج گری ہے۔ چلیں 'ایک کپ چائے چیسی ؟

(Tell him that it is a good idea, and agree to go) : You

#### 5.3 Answer the questions in Urdu

Here is a picture of Aslam and his family. From what you have read about them answer the questions, remembering to use plural of respect for the adults.

UNIT 5

1 اسلم صاحب اور بلقيس صاحبه كهال رست بين؟

2 ان كے كتنے يج بين اور بچول كے نام كيابين؟

3 اسلم صاحب برروز كام كرتے بيں؟

4 گرير کھاناکون پکاتی بيں؟

5 عام طور سے خریداری کون کر تاہے؟ 6 جان اور اسلم کوباز ارکی دوکا نیس پیندہیں؟

#### 5.4 True of false?

Here are some statements about our story so far. Tick which are true and which false:

True	False
-11-4	

1 اسلم صاحب بہت امیر ہیں۔ اس کئے دو کام نہیں کرتے۔ 2 بلتیں ' بچو ل کو کی بھال کرتی ہیں۔ 2 ما ساحب بالى كاريند 3 اسلم صاحب بالى كريندواك بين-4 سيلن كام نيس كريش اوراكثر گريد بتى بين-5 حاد ايك بزير امريكن اسكول بيش پز هتاب-

6 اس وقت كراچى مين بهت سردى ہے۔

#### 5.5 Tell the time

From the clocks in 1 to 5, state what the time is. Use both words and











In this unit you will learn how to:

- say 'who?, 'whose?'; 'someone', 'someone's'
- state what is usually the case
- say more about the weather
- identify months and dates

Now that you have had plenty of practice in reading the Urdu script, it will not may you have had premy or practice in reading the Urdu script, it will no longer be necessary to give the dialogues and reading passages in Roman transcription. All new words, however, will be transcribed in the vocabularies and in the examples given in the grammar sections. Translation of the Urdu texts are given in the Answer key.

### mukālima ek Dialogue 1

Aslam and his family take the Smiths to the seaside resort of Clifton for the day. Helen is persuaded to ride a camel along the beach.

y. Helen is persuaded to ride a camel along the beach.

عان : اچهائه کشش ہے! یمهال بہت شاندار گریں۔ میرے خیال ہے یمهال کافی امیر لوگ

رجے ہیں۔ و بلیحی و ور براخو یصورت مکان۔ وہ کس کا گرے؟

اسلم : میرے خیال ہے وہ کسی وزیر کا گرے ۔ وزیر قوہر ملک میں امیر ہوتے ہیں تا؟ کین وہال

عان : اور وہال سندرہ ۔ بتاہیے اسلم صاحب نیر کون ساسمندرہ ؟

اسلم : یہ بیری کا حرب ہے۔ لین علی حرب کا سندر ،

ہیلن : کین سمائل پر بہت کم لوگ ہیں۔ کیاپاکستان میں لوگ سندر میں نہیں نہاتے ؟

اسلم : یہ تیمی کی سائل سان میں انگستان کی طرح اوگوں کو سائل پر بیٹھنے اور سندر میں تیم نے کی عادت ہیں۔

اسلم : ی فیمی ہے کہتان میں انگستان کی طرح اوگوں کو سائل پر بیٹھنے اور سندر میں تیم نے کی بیمان : اور وود بلیھیے اسامل پر اور خیاہے۔ وہاد خت کس کا ہے ؟

اسلم : میرے خیال ہے دواس چھوٹے لڑکے کا ادف ہے۔ ظاہر ہے کسی کا تو ہے ایمی بھی فورسٹ بہال ہوتے ہیں۔ان کو ادف پر پیشا ایند ہے۔ بیلن : آن کتابایداموسم ہے اندگر کی ہے ند سردی۔ اسلم : می ہال نومبر کے مینٹے میں موسم عام طورے اچھاہو تا ہے۔ جیلیے بیلن صاحبہ۔اوٹ ریشھے۔ بر شھیے۔

				* *.		
0	ساحل سمند	sāhil-e	seashore,	بيضنا	baithnā	to sit
		samandar	seaside	تير نا	tairnā	to swim
	130	vazīr	minister	اونث		camel (m.)
2.			(m.)	حمس كااونث	kis kā ūnt?	
	برايك	har ek	every			camel?
	يوتے ين	hote hain	are	ظاہرےکہ	zāhir hai ki	
1			(usually)			obvious
		samandar	sea (m.)	,		that
		kaun sā	which?	کسی کااونٹ	kisī kā ūnt	someone's
	بجرة وب	buhaira-e	the		37.0	camel
		'arab	Arabian		tūrist	tourist(m.)
			Sea		hote hain	are (often)
	ارب	'arab	Arabia,		piyārā	lovely
			Arab (m.)	ندند	nana	neither
	ساحل	sāhil	beach,	요 그 무역 첫	188	nor
		All Street Land	shore (m.)	تومير	navambar	November
	1	kam	few		nonagenal ton	(m.)
	نہانا	nahānā	to bathe	مهيب	mahīna	month(m.)
ت	نہانے کی عاد	nahāne kī	custom of	اچھاہو تاہے	acchā hotā	
		'ādat	bathing		hai	good
	عادت	'ādat	custom,			
			habit(f.)			

### وَامِر gavā'id Grammar

#### چ hijje **Spelling**

We have already met the izāfat meaning 'of' in the phrases gulšan-e iqbāl 'The Garden of Prosperity' and אלפיטויקע koh-enūr' Mountain of Light'. In the phrase אליי אינע sāhil-e samandar 'the shore of the sea' 'seaside' the izāfatic wead in the name war. side', the izāfat is used in the same way.

#### لان kaun? لان kis kā? 'who?, whose?'

The so-called interrogative pronoun 'who?' is of kaun.

Remember that interrogative words (i.e. words asking questions) which in Urdu mostly begin with  $\checkmark$ , such as  $\circlearrowleft$  kaun 'who',  $\checkmark$  kya 'what?',  $\checkmark$  kaise 'how?',  $\circlearrowleft$  kyon 'why?', always come immediately before the verb:

vuh ādmī kaun hai? Who is that man? آپ کیا کے ٹیں؟ āp kyā karte hain? What do you do? ? الله vuh kyon jāti hai? Why does she go?

آپاوگ کے بیں؟ āp log kaise hain How are you (people)?

has the oblique form مر kis, which is used before postpositions: حول from whom? J upon whom? to whom?.

Note that  $\sqrt[6]{kis \, k\bar{a}}$  'of whom' = whose.

yih ghar kis kā hai? Whose house is this? المركزي المناه kis kā beṭi yahān hai? Whose daughter is here?

may be singular or plural, referring to one or more pople:

yih bacca kaun hai? Who is this child? ? yih bacce kaun hain? Who are these children?

The plural oblique form, however, is win:

یہ کن کے گریں؟

yih kin ke ghar hain?

Whose houses are these ('of which people?)

يدكن كا كرب؟ يد وزير كا كرب

yih kin kā ghar hai? yih vazīr kā ghar hai

Whose (plural of respect) house is this? It is the minister's house

Like and so, we may be additionally pluralised:

یہ کون لوگ ہیں؟

yih kaun log hain?

UNIT 6

Who are these people?

آپ کن لوگوں سے ملتے ہیں؟

āp kin logon se milte hain?

Whom ('which people') do you meet?

یہ کن لوگوں کی کتابیں ہیں؟

yih kin logon kī kitāben hain?

Whose ('of which people') are these books?

لَوْلَ koī 'someone' ﴿ kuch 'something'

The so-called 'indefinite' pronoun وَلَى means 'someone', 'anyone': يَهِال كُولَ عَبِال وَلَا ? yahān koī hai? 'is anyone here?'.

In negative sentences وَلَى تَشِيل 'not anyone' can also be translated 'no one': yahān koī nahīn hai 'there isn't anyone here / there is no one here'.

English overcomplicates the issue with 'someone, anyone, somebody, not anyone, no one, nobody'. In Urdu all these words are expressed simply by

The oblique form of وَى is الله from someone; کی از to someone; کی از to someone; someone's:

کی ہے پوچھے Ask someone ('from someone')

میں کی ہے نہیں ملا I don't meet anyone

کسی کودیجیے Give (it) to someone

یہ کسی کا اونٹ ہے This is someone's camel

It will be observed that the oblique forms of of and if are formed similarly to those of z and w: كون

**Direct singular** 

يس Obliquesingular

كوك Directplural

**Oblique plural** 

UNIT

103

```
'someone' can, of course, have no plural forms.

**kuch means 'something' or 'some'; کی کی 'not something' = nothing:

\[
\begin{align*}
\sum_{\text{such}} \psi_{\text{such}} & \psi_{\text{such}} &
```

From which person? کی آئی ہے؟

From which books?

The more common word for 'which', however, is  $kaun \, s\bar{a}$  (also written as one word  $kaun \, s\bar{a}$ ) which changes for number, gender and case as is

coming before singular nouns means 'some': צُوْلُ کَابَ اللَّهِ koī kitāb 'some book', كُوْلُ کَابَ لَهُ اللَّهُ اللَّاللَّ ا

﴿ coming before plural nouns and nouns which in Urdu can have no plural such as بِ وَهُو 'tea', مِن dūdh 'milk', etc., also means 'some':

はいた kuch kitāben some books よれ kuch log some people とした kuch cāe some tea のかれ kuch dūdh some milk

### ج hai 'is', جِรห hotā haī 'is generally'

- means 'is' by nature, at a certain time or in a certain place:

برانان، vuh insān hai He/she is a human being (by nature) بان الله المراكب المراكب المراكب vuh āj ṭhīk nahīn hai He/she is not well today بالمراكب vuh ghar par hai He/she is at home

The regular present habitual tense of  $t_{\mathcal{H}}$ .  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$  main hotā hūn,  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$  vuh hotā hai,  $s_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$  tum hote ho,  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$   $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{H}}$  and so on means 'I am, he is, you are', habitually, always, generally.

The English sentence 'he is ill' can mean 'he is ill now' or 'he is often ill'. Urdu is much more precise and makes a distinction between the two concepts. Compare the following:

ي لاکي خيمورت به yih lapkī xūbsūrat hai This girl is pretty (specific) لاکيال خيمورت يوني پي lapkīān xūbsūrat hotī hain

Girls are (usually) pretty (general)

آج موسم اچھا ہے

āj mausam acchā hai

Today the weather is good (specific)

نومبر میں موسم اچھا ہوتا ہے

navambar men mausam acchā hotā hai

In November the weather is (usually) good (general)

#### The infinitive with postpositions

The infinitive of the verb may be used in the same way as a noun such as 89:

الْكَااتِيَاتِ larkā acchā hai The boy is good
bolnā acchā hai To talk is good/talking is good

Like nouns in  $\ell$  - $\bar{a}$  it forms its oblique by changing its ending to  $\angle$  -e.

The infinitive may often be translated 'reading', 'doing', etc. in such circumstances.

Note carefully the way in which the oblique infinitive is used in the following phrases:

ا باخان المادت nahāne kī 'ādat the custom of bathing باخا باید jāne ke ba'd after going khāne se pahle before eating

se pahle is a compound postposition meaning 'before'.

means 'sometimes':

بھی بھی بچ ایتھ ہوتے ہیں' بھی بھی شریر بھی ہوتے ہیں

kabhī kabhī bacce acche hote hain, kabhī kabhī šarīr bhī hote hain Sometimes children are good; sometimes they are naughty as well

∴ ...... na 'neither ... nor'

2...2 na ... na means 'neither ... nor':

آج نہ گری ہے نہ سروی ہے

āj na garmī hai na sardī hai Today it is neither hot nor cold

Remember that 'it is hot today', 'it is cold today' is expressed as: جَائِ كَلِي عَلَيْهِ وَاللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ اللَّهُ الللَّا

#### The names of the months

The word for 'month' is mahīnā.

For official purposes both India and Pakistan use the 'Christian' calendar, and the names of the months are all adapted from English:

لالي *jūlāī* (f.) ianvarī (f.) اگست agast (m.) فروري farvarī (f.) sitambar (m.) mārc (m.) اكتوبر aprail (m.) aktūbar (m.) نوبر maī (f.) navambar(m.) خى disambar(m.) ⊍ . jūn (m.) 1.5

It is common to add کامپین kā mahīna to the name of the month:

نومر کے مینے میں بہت بیارا موسم ہوتا ہے

navambar ke mahīne men bahut piyārā mausam hotā hai In the month of November the weather is quite lovely UNIT 6

---

#### baiṭhnā 'to sit, get into transport' بيُّمنا

The verb بينمنا 'to sit' is used for getting into transport or onto animals:

صبح سورے میں بس میں بیٹھتا ہول اور کام پر جاتا ہول

subh savere main bas men baithtā hūn aur kām par jātā hūn Early in the morning I get ('sit') in the bus and go to work

### mašq Exercise مثن

#### 6.1 Complete the sentences

Complete the following sentences with the correct form of tr (i.e.  $\cup \pi$  '  $\leftarrow \pi$ '  $\cup \pi$ '  $\leftarrow \tau \pi$ '  $\rightarrow \tau \pi$ "  $\rightarrow \tau$ 

1 عام طور پر بندو ستان میں کائی گری \_\_\_\_\_ 2 آپ کا گھروا قتی بہت خوبصورت \_\_\_\_ 3 یہ آم بہت مزے دار \_\_\_\_\_ بہاں' آم ہمیشہ مزے دار \_\_\_\_ 4 بخواب کے لوگ مہمان نواز \_\_\_\_ و و آدی و زیرے ام طور پر ائیر \_\_\_\_\_

#### mukālima do Dialogue 2

Hamid shows the guests his school; Aslam loses the car keys!

جان : حامد 'جو تک ہم آئ کلفٹن میں ہیں' تو ہمیں اسکول دکھاؤ۔ تم یہاں پڑھتے ہو نا؟
حامد : تی بال کین آئ ہفتہ ہے۔ ہم ادا اسکول بند ہے۔
جان : کو کی بات نہیں۔ کم ہے کم دکھاؤ کہ تم آبال پڑھتے ہو۔
حامد : اچھا' کین کلفٹن کافی بڑا علاقہ ہے۔ ہیر اسکول یہال ہے ورادور ہے۔
اسکم : ٹھیک ہے۔ خوش قستی ہے ہمارے پاس آئ گاڑی ہے۔ گاڑی میں مرف پانچ مند کا
راستہے۔ آئے' گاڑی میں تی تھے۔ کین ایک منٹ تھم ہے ہمرے پاس چاپی نہیں
ہے۔ چاپی کس کے پاس ہے ؟ کی کے پاس ہے۔ بیتیں! چاپی تمہارے پاس ہے کیا؟
بیتیں : تی ہال۔ آپ گرند کچے۔ ہمرے پاس ہے۔

بلقيس : مير ياس اس لئے ہك آپ بيشد س كھ بعولتے ہيں۔ كياآپ ك پاس آن پي یں ۔ اسلم : بی بال میں اب و مکتابوں۔۔۔ بی میں میرے پاس پیے تمین بیں بلقیں : ریکھیے او بالی مجولتے ہیں کیے بھولتے ہیں۔ تو اٹھا ہے کہ میرے پاس پیے ہیں۔ جہیلے میرے پاس جالی ہے ' تو آئ میں گاڑی جائی ہوں۔

چلانا	calānā	to drive (a car)	کس کے پاس ہے	kisī ke pās hai	is with someone,
چونک	cūṅkī	since, because		120	someone has
وكحاتا	dikhānā	to show	كأمرا	thahrnā	to wait,
ہمیں د کھاو	hameń	show (to)	• 74	pamin	stay
	dikhāo	us (to)	م داء م	mere pās	is with me.
1:00	parhnā	tostudy	ナンサース	hai	I have
	band	closed.	یرے پا تاہے حالی تمہارے پاسے	11d1 -=L=	
	vanu	shut	عان	cabi	key (f.)
			تمہارے پاس		is with
	zarā	just, rather		pās hai	you, you
テルト		is with us,	6		have
		we have	<b>کار</b>	fikr	worry,
کے پاک	ke pās	with, near,			care
		by			(m./f.)
	sirf	only	فكرندكجي	fikr na	don't
پانچ منٹ پہلے	pānc minaţ	5 minutes		kījīe	worry
	kā rāsta	away	کیوں ۔	kyon?	why?
منت	minaț	minute	ال لخے کہ		it is
		(m.)	- 170	ki	because
کی کے پاس ہے؟	kis ke pās	is with	كيمو لنا	bhūlnā	to forget
	hai?	whom?	آپ کے یاں ہ		is with
		who has?	+0;-4	hai	
		wild itas:		IIAI	you, you have

### ठाँ व्यथ्ये'id Grammar

### க்ஜ் cūṅkī 'since, because'

يو كر cūnkī means 'since', in the sense of 'because'. The second part of the sentence (known as the 'main clause') is always introduced by F to 'then'

چونکہ آپ چھٹی پر ہیں تو فائدہ اٹھائے

cūnkī āp chuṭṭī par hain, to fāida uṭhāīe Since you're on holiday, take advantage (of it)

پن parhnā 'to read'; 'to study'

UNIT 6

can mean both 'to read' and 'to study':

میں ہر روز اخبار پڑھتا ہوں

main har roz axbār parhtā hūn

I read a newspaper every day

میرا بینا اس بوے امریکن اسکول میں پڑھتا ہے

merā beţā us bare amrīkan iskūl men parhtā hai My son studies in that big American school

ريد ke pas 'near, by, with'; 'at the place of '

الله is a compound postposition meaning 'by, near, with, on (you)', 'at

By the sea سندر کے پاس سیراگر آپ کے گرکے پاس ہے My house is

My house is near your house

ا انبول چم کے پاس دہتاہوں I live at Rahim's place

שאידיען בין l'll come to your place

It is also used to express 'to have something with you or on you':

ر حیم کے پاس پیے نہیں ہیں

Rahim has no money ('with/on Rahim there is

not money')

آپ کے پاس کتے ہے ہیں؟ How much money do you have (on you)?

ان کے پاس گاڑی ہے He has a car (with him) today

Remember that to have or possess something which is not necessarily with you, and to have relations is expressed with & or the possessive adjectives etc.: آپکا ' مارا ' اُسکا ' میرا

Aslam has four children

رجم کی گاڑی ہے لیکن آج ان کے پاس نہیں ہے

Rahim has a car but does not have it with him today

### mašq Exercise مثق

UNIT 6

#### 6.2 إيلا? Sahīh yā ğalat? 'True or false'?

Read each of the following statements and tick which answers are true and which are false:

1 رقيم : آج مير عياس گاڙي -ا رہے : ان میرے پال دوں ہے۔ 2 بلقیں : آپ بھے نہ پوقعے۔ میرے پال پیمے نہیں ہیں۔ 3 اسلم : حامد ، تمبارے پال جاؤلی ہے؟ حامد : تمبال میرے پال ہے۔ 4 جان : آداب عرض ہے اسلم صاحب آج میرے ساتھ میرے دوست ہیں۔ 5 تمبلن : بدکس کا اوض ہے؟ بلقیں : معلوم نہیں۔ کسی کا اوض ہے۔

#### 1. Rahim has his car with him today.

- 2. Bilqis has no money on her.
- 3. Aslam has the key.
- 4. John has his wife with him.
- 5. Bilqis says the camel belongs to the boy.

True

False

109

### like us ماری طرح is lie ki 'because' اس لخ

Similarly:

The phrase Secuse':

like me میری طرح like Rahim رحیم کی طرح

Compound postpositions with pronouns

etc. Some examples are as follows: on/with/after Rahim

me

you

you

you

them

them

him, her, it

him, her, it

When a compound postposition, the first element of which is  $\angle$  or  $\sqrt{}$  (such as  $\sqrt{}$   $\sqrt{}$   $\sqrt{}$   $\sqrt{}$ ),  $\sqrt{}$  etc.), is used with one of the pronouns,  $\sqrt{}$ ,  $\sqrt{}$ ,  $\sqrt{}$ ,  $\sqrt{}$ , for example, the oblique form of the possessive adjectives  $\sqrt{}$  or  $\sqrt{}$  etc. are employed, and the  $\sqrt{}$   $\sqrt{}$  elements of the postposition are

mere pās, میری طرح merē tarah,

رجم کے پاس اساتھ ابعد

میرے یاں اساتھ ابعد

تيرے پاس/ساتھ/بعد

اس كے ياس اساتھ ابعد

أس كے ياس اساتھ ابعد

مارے پاس اساتھ ابعد تہارے یاس اساتھ ابعد

آپ کے پاس/ساتھ /بعد

ان کے پاس /ساتھ /بعد

ال كے ياس /ساتھ /بعد

like them ال کی طرح like you تمہاری طرح

like him اس کاطرت

mere pās is lie ki āp sab kuch bhūlte hain (It's) With me because you forget everything

A verb may come between 2 und ム:

main ap se is lie puchta hun ki mujhe ma'lum nahin hai I ask you because I don't know

### Mukālimatīn Dialogue3

The Smiths learn about education in Pakistan.

جان : واو! واو! کتاشا ندارا سکول ب عامد! یهال کون سے بچر چیتے ہیں۔ اسلم : یهال زیادہ تر متوسلاد رج کے خاندانوں کے بچر چیتے ہیں۔ بد قسمی سے یہال خریب لوگوں کے بچ نہیں پڑھتے۔ دنیا کے ہر ملک میں خریب لوگ تو ہوتے ہیں نالہ لیمن کیا کریں کوئی امیر ہے اور کوئی خریب۔

جان : میرے خیال ہے یہاں کی تعلیم انتہا ہے ہے ۔ اسلم : بی بال عام طور ہے کر اپنی کے بیرے اسکولوں میں تعلیم بہت انتہاں ہوتی ہوتی ہے۔ حامد ، جان صاحب کو بتاؤکہ کم کم کیا پڑھتے ہو اور کوئٹ مصلی پیند ہیں۔ حامد : ہم برطرح کے مضون پڑھتے ہیں ، زبانوں میں ہے انگریزی ، آورد اور عربی۔ اس کے علاوہ تاریخ ، جغرافی ، سائنس وغیرہ حال : اور مرکوائم مزد کا بینٹ ہے ؟

جان : اور تم کوانگریزی پیند ہے؟ حامہ : جمال۔ انگریزی کافی آسان ہے۔ لیکن عربی بہت مشکل ہے۔

<b>*</b> -0	! ele ! ele !	vāh vāh!	bravo! wonder- ful!	يبال کی تعليم	yahāṅ kī ta'līm	the educa- tion (of) here
		ziyādatar	mostly	مضمول	mazmūn	subject
		mutavassit	middle			(m.)
		mutavassit darja	middle class (m.)	یں ہے	men se	from among
	ورجه	darja	class (m.)	3,5	'arabī	Arabic
	خاندان	xāndān	family	اس کے علاوہ	is ke 'alāva	in addition
	بدشمتی۔	badqismatī	(m.) unfortu-	جغرافيه	jugrāfīa	geography (m.)
	ماک	se har ek	nately every	سا تنس	sāins	science
		kyā karen?			vağaira	(m.)
		,	do?		vagaira āsān	et cetera
	تعليم	ta'līm	education	انان	asan	easy
			(f.)			

### وَاعِد اَنَ qavā'id Grammar

unfortunately برتمتی ے fortunately

تست *qismat*, from which the word 'Kismet' comes, means 'fate', 'luck', 'fortune' (f.): مری قست انجی کیس به I don't have good luck.

From it come two phrases:

ا المنتوان المنتوان

#### = of men se 'from among', 'out of '

Here the two postpositions  $\mathcal L$  and  $\boldsymbol \omega$  are used together in the sense of 'from in', 'from among', 'out of':

ان کھانوں میں سے آپ کو کون سا زیادہ پند ہے

in khānon men se āp ko kaun sā ziyāda pasand hai? From among these dishes which do you like most?

#### Dates

UNIT 6

There are various ways of expressing dates. The simplest and most common way is to place the numeral before the name of the month:

20 December بیرو ممبر

25 June ميكيري ون

18 January اتفاره جؤري

'On' a date is expressed by f ko:

میں یا نج اگست کو پہنچتا ہوں

main pānc agast ko pahunctā hūn

I arrive on the 5th of August

میری سالگرہ چیس فروری کو ہے

merī sālgirah chabbīs farvarī ko hai

My birthday (lit.: year knot) is on the 26th of February

#### Numbers

Here the numerals 31-40 (Appendix 1) should be learnt.

### siqāfat Culture قات

Clifton, a smart area of Karachi, about ten minutes' drive from the centre, is on the shore of the Arabian Sea. Its beach is still very under-exploited, and a seaside holiday means little to most Indians and Pakistanis, who would never dream of disrobing themselves to bathe in the water for pleasure. Camel rides are offered to tourists, mainly by small boys who take little money for their services.

Good education is still, unfortunately, the preserve of the middle and upper classes, and in both India and Pakistan the literacy rate is still low. The best

schools in the larger cities, however, rank among some of the finest in Asia, and rigidly preserve the former British public school standards and

### mašqen Exercises

### 6.3 Comprehension

Listen to the dialogue on the tape and tick the correct answers to the following questions:

- 1 Rahim and Khan meet (a) in a tea shop 2 The train arrives at
  - (a) five o'clock
- (b) at the station (b) three o'clock
- 3 Today's date is
- (a) the 4th of
- (b) the 8th of
- November
- November
- 4 Rahim
- (a) is on holiday
- (b) is going to work
- 5 The celebration is for
- (a) the minister's birthday
- (b) the minister's arrival
- 6 The minister is a
  - (a) rich man
- (b) great man

#### 6.4 Correct postposition

Complete the following sentences with the correct postposition taken from the following:  $(\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{L}, \mathcal{L}$ 

#### 6.5 Dates and sums

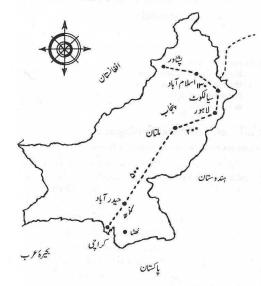
Write the following using both words and figures. Use the equal sign (=) for 'equals':

On the fifth of November; at twelve o'clock; on the second of January; 9+16 = 25; the thirty first of October; my birthday is on the 27th of April; there are sometimes thirty days in a month and sometimes thirty one days; twenty five rupees; there are a hundred paisas in one rupee.

#### 6.6 پاکتان کانشه pakistān kā nagša The map of Pakistan

UNIT 6

Look at the map of Pakistan, on which approximate distances are given in miles, then answer the questions which follow.



1 نشقر کتر شرین ؟ 2 لامور کبال ب؟ بخاب ش ب یاسنده ش؟ 3 اسلام آباد لا امور کش دور ب؟ 4 حیر رآباد سال ک کشی دور ب؟

5 کراچی کون سے سندریرے؟

# مارے پاس ریزدویش نہیں ہے We don't have a reservation

In this unit you learn how to:

- say what you are doing now
- book tickets and reserve seats
- use the telephone
- express more dates

# mukālima ek Dialogue 1 John decides to take the train from Karachi to Lahore.

رجم : آداب عرض ب عان صاحب کیے مزاج ہیں؟ آپ آج کل کیا کردہ ہیں؟ جان : آپ کی دعائے و جم صاحب آج کل میں کافی معروف ہوں۔ ہم لوگ لاہور جانے کی تاری کررہے ہیں۔

رجيم : اچھاا كب جارب ين ؟ جان : شايد الله منتور س تاريخ كور اب تك جميس يقين ميس ب

پوٹ سی میں میں کے جارہے ہیں کا رہل گاؤی ہے ابوائی جہازے۔ جان : رہل ہے جارہے ہیں کا کارادہ ہے۔ آپ کا کیا خیال ہے؟ رچم : یہ چھاہے کیونکہ وس تاریخ کو میری پری بہن اور ان کے شوہر رہل ہے لا ہور جارہے ہیں۔ اس سمان سمانتھ جائے۔

ہیں۔ ان نے ساتھ جائے۔ جان : یہ بہت اتھا ہے 'کین ہمارے پاس کلک اور ریزرویشن نمیں ہیں۔ کلک کہال سے ملتے ہیں ؟ کیا اسمیشن سے ملتے ہیں؟ رجیم : کی نمیں 'کہ کیا شمیشن پر مت جائے۔ وہال بھٹ گریز ہوتی ہے۔ ہیں ایسا کر تا ہول۔ میر ساکید دوست بہال ایک کر بول بجسی میں کام کرتے ہیں۔ آئی میں ان کو شیلیوں کر تا ہول۔ آپ گر نہ تیج نہ تو آئ کا مطلب ہے ہے۔ کر ایگی۔ لا ہور پہلے درجے کے دو کلٹ وس تا رق کے لئے۔ محمیک ہے؟

بان : رحیم صاحب کی بری مهر پائی۔ رحیم : کوئی بات نیس! آپ یکھے آئ شام کو ٹیلیفون کیجے۔ کیا آپ کے پاس میر انمبر ہے؟ بان : بی نمیس میرے پاس نمیس ہے۔ رحیم : اچھا تو لکھے: ایک مفر پانٹی نو تمان اب میں ایک جگد جار ہا ہوں۔ اجازت۔ جان : بہت شکریہ 'رحیم صاحب خداحافظ۔

ريزرويش	rezarvešan	reservation	جانے كاار اده	jāne kā irāda	intention
	kaise mizāj	(m.)	60		of going because
ي النان	hain?	how are		kyońki bahin	
		you?			sister (f.)
كرد بين؟	kar rahe hain	are you doing?	جارے ہیں	hain	are going
تياري	tayyārī	preparation	بمكث	tikat	ticket(m.)
		(f.)	كبال ہے گئے	kahān se	'where are
جانے کی تیاری	jāne kī	preparation	ين؟	milte	they got?'
٠.٠	tayyārī	for going when?	e de la Company	hain?	(where do
•					you get
مدے ہیں؟		are you		71. 1	them?)
شايد	hain? šāyad	going? perhaps	عے ہیں؟	milte hain?	'are they got' (can
	hafta agle hafte	week (m.) next week			they be got?)
	das tārīx	on the	2600	mat jāīe	don't go!
	ko	tenth		garbar	confusion,
7-15	tārīx	date (f.)		8-11	trouble (f.)
	ab tak	up to now,	ایا	aisā	such, like
ہمیں یقین ہے	hamen	we are	ميرسايك	mere ek	a friend of
-U-U-	yaqīn hai	certain		dost	mine
~~	kaise	how?	زوت نربول ایجنی		travel
المراكب	havaī jahāz		0.020	ejansī	agency (f.)
16.013	na van janaz	(m.)	مطل	matlab	meaning
ہوائی جہازے	havaī jahāz	by air	سبب ا	шанао	(m.)
	se		اسكامطلب	is kā	this means
اراده	irāda	intention.	-	matlab yih	

پہلے	pahle	first (of all)	ایک جگه	ek jagah	'one place',
נוקה ז או ייי	darja pahlā darja	class (m.)			some- where
בָּיְשְׁטׁ כֹּנְכָּה		(m.)	جا رہا ہوں	jā rahā hūn	
22	ke lie	for, on			

### ठाँ qavā'id Grammar

### More greetings and politenesses

Urdu has a large stock of greetings and polite phrases, some of which we have already met. 'How are you?' can be expressed in the following ways:

means 'how?', 'of what sort?', & means 'disposition, temper'. Typical answers, all meaning 'I am well', 'everything is fine' are:

In the dialogue we met another common word for 'thank you': برباني mihrbānī, literally, 'kindness' (f.):

āp kī aur āp ke doston kī barī mihrbānī hai it is the kindness of you and your friends (i.e. thanks to ...)

### kaisā 'how', 'what sort of'

is an adjective meaning 'how?' in the sense of 'of what kind or quality?':

?How is the food

? What sort of man is he

The adverb \_ means 'how?' in the sense of 'by what means?' ? How do you go? By bus?

#### Present continuous tense

The present continuous tense is the equivalent of English 'I am doing (now, 

ש אינן אפט main kar rahā hūn I am doing (m.) main kar rahī hūn I am doing (f.) vuh kar rahe hain they are doing (m.)

vuh kar rahī hain they are doing (f.)

As with the present habitual  $\int_{1}^{t}$  is always regarded as masculine plural, whether said by men or women  $\int_{1}^{t} \int_{1}^{t} we$  (m.) are doing'.

The negative ('I am not doing') is formed by placing directly before the

main nahīn kar rahā hūn I am not doing The present continuous tense of t is as follows:

#### Masculine

	1124GCUIAIRC	
يس كررباءون	main kar rahā hūn	I am doing
توكردباب	tū kar rahā hai	you are doing
يه وه کردها ب	yih/vuh kar rahā hai	he, it is doing
بم كرر بي	ham kar rahe hain	we are doing
87 - 15 B	tum kar rahe ho	you are doing
آپ کردے ہیں	āp kar rahe hain	you are doing
يه وه كرربين	yih/vuh kar rahe hain	they are doing

#### **Feminine**

میں کررہی ہوں	main kar rahī hūn	I am doing
توكرر بى ب	tū kar rahī hai	you are doing
يے دہ کرربی ہے	yih/vuh kar rahī hai	she, it is doing
ہم کردے ہیں	ham kar rahe hain	we are doing
م کرد بی ہو	tum kar rahī ho	you are doing
آپ کردہی ہیں	āp kar rahī hain	you are doing
UT15.1505 -	vih/vuh kar rahī hain	they are doing

#### Examples of the present continuous are:

المهم حاب "آپ کیا کررہے ہیں؟ Stam, Sahib, what are you doing? Helen, what are you doing?

الار ک کرا کی جارے بال We are going to Karachi on the tenth My wife is doing the shopping

I'm not watching TV میں ٹیلیوژن نیس دیکھ رہاموں

Note the difference between the present habitual and the present continuous:

عام طور سے میں صبح نباتا ہول

I usually have a bath ('bathe') in the morning

رجيم كبال بين؟ وه نها رب بين

Where is Rahim? He's having a bath

# נט tayyārī 'preparation' (f.); איל kītayyārī karnā 'to prepare'

We have already had the adjective が tayyār 'ready, prepared':

Dinner is ready کمان تیار ب

The noun frequency, and the phrase verb the means 'to prepare':

میری بیگم کھانے کی تیاری کر رہی ہیں

merī begam khāne kī tayyārī kar rahī hain

My wife is preparing ('doing the preparation of') the dinner

ני אַ אַרט אָד karne kī tayyārī karnā means 'to prepare to do':

We are preparing to go to Lahore

### hafta 'week' منت

The word بينت means both 'Saturday' and 'week'. However, no confusion can arise:

ایک ہفتے میں سات ون ہیں

ek hafte men sāt din hain

There are seven days in one week

UNIT 7

ہفتہ آخری دن ہے

hafta āxirī din hai Saturday is the last day

うさ hafte ko means 'on Saturday', びさ hafte men means 'during the week'

Note also the following expressions:

is hafte this week

agle hafte next week

#### More on dates

The word for 'date' is  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{F}}$  tārīx (f.) (the same as for 'history'). 'On the tenth', without specifying the month, is  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{F}}$  to  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{F}}$  das  $t\bar{a}r\bar{i}x$  ko. We have seen that 'on the tenth of December' is simply  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{F}}$  and this may also be expressed  $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{F}}$  disambar  $k\bar{i}$  das  $t\bar{a}r\bar{i}x$  ko.

'right now' ابجی 'till now, still' اب تک 'right now'

The most usual word for 'now' is -1 ab:

اب میں تیار ہوں Now I'm ready

ab tak 'up to now' can be translated as 'so far, still, yet':

I don اب تک مجھے معلوم نہیں

I don't know yet/so far

יאיף דב איטיייט We're still here

abhī is more emphatic 'right now':

I'm coming right now

יַבּיֵּט yaqīn 'certainty' (m.); בּׁיַלֶּט mujhe yaqīn hai 'I'm certain'

is a noun meaning 'certainty'. The construction عُصِيْتِين به mujhe yaqīn hai 'to me is certainty' means 'I am certain':

I'm not certain (that) what this is

### irāda 'intention, plan'

is a noun meaning 'intention, plan' (m.). The construction الراده a noun meaning 'intention, plan' (m.). The construction المادة عند المادة ا

Next week we intend to go to Pakistan

These constructions with يقي علم معلوم علم are similar to اراده and الراده علم معلوم علم معلوم علم معلوم علم المعلم المع

#### The imperative expressing 'if'

The imperative (e.g.  $\Leftarrow$  etc.) often has the sense of 'if you do'. The second part of the sentence begins with  $\mathcal F$  'then':

in ke sāth jāīe to koī muškil nahīn

If you go with them, (then) there is no problem ('go with them, then ...')

The word مشكل 'difficult' is also used as a feminine noun meaning 'problem':

#### ₩ milnā 'to be got, to be acquired'

We have already met the verb the in the sense of 'to meet (with)'. But it is also used in the sense of 'to be got, to be acquired', better translated into English as 'one gets':

rel gārī ke tikat kahān se milte hain?

'Where are train tickets got?' (i.e. where can you get ...?)

If you want to say 'I get, Mr Rahim gets/acquires', you must say 'to me  $(\cancel{\mathscr{E}})$ ' to Mr Rahim  $(\cancel{\mathscr{I}})$  is got/acquired:

mujhe rel gāṛī ke ṭikaṭ kahāṅ se milte haiṅ?

Where do I get train tickets from? ('to me tickets from where are got?')

### رجم صاحب کو دعمبر میں چھٹی ملتی ہے

rahīm sāhib ko disambar men chuṭṭī miltī hai Rahim gets a holiday in December ('to Rahim is got')

In these sentences the subjects are 'rail tickets' and 'holiday'.

#### matjāle 'don'tgo'

We have seen that when a negative command is given (e.g. 'don't do!')  $\hat{\omega}$  is used for 'not':

don'tdo! د کچه

A rather stronger prohibition can be used by using in place of z:

istešan par mat jāīe; vahān hameša garbar hotī hai don't go to the station; there's always a mess/confusion there

Note the following extremely useful phrase, often to be used in the sub-continent:

mere pet men garbar hai

There is confusion in my stomach. (i.e. 'my stomach is upset'):

#### aisā 'such, like this'

means 'such' in the sense of 'like this', 'of this quality':

'such people', people like this

aisī 'imāraten' 'such buildings', buildings like this

Used as an adverb it means 'like this', 'in this way':

I'll do like this; I'll phone at ten this evening

fon is, as in English, a common abbreviation for 'telephone' (m.).

### 'matlab 'meaning' مطلب

The word مطلب 'meaning' (m.) is used in the following expressions:

اس لفظ کا مطلب کیا ہے؟

is lafz kā matlab kyā hai?

What is the meaning of this word?

اس کا مطلب سے کہ آپ کو دو کلٹ چامیس

So that means you need two tickets ('its meaning is that ...')

#### ≥∠ ke lie 'for, on behalf of'

 $\not\supseteq \not\subseteq$  is a compound postposition meaning 'for' in the 'sense of', 'on behalf of', 'destined for':

میں بوی اور بچوں کے لئے کام کرتا ہوں

I work for (my) wife and children

ميرے لئے ان كو ميليفون كي

Please telephone him for me

یہ گاڑی لاہور کے لئے ہے؟ Is this train for Lahore?

# mašq Exercise مثق ک

وه لوگ کیا کردے ہیں 7.1

Look at the pictures and use the present continuous tense to say what each







(a)

(b)

(c)

UNIT 7





(e)

### mukālima do Dialogue 2 مكالمروو

Rahim succeds in getting John's tickets.

tu bulānā

جان : بیلو میں جان بول رہا ہوں۔ کیا رسم صاحب طربہ سرید رسے ہے۔
یکی رہے : جی ہاں۔ ایک منٹ میں ابھی بالی ہوں۔ وہ آرہے ہیں۔
رجم : آداب عرض ہے ، جان صاحب سیے۔ ایک فوشخری ہے۔ آپ کے محک میر کے
یاں ہیں۔ میر کے دوست بہت جالاک آدی ہیں۔ ان کو محک بیشہ آسائی ہے لیے
ہیں۔ بھی معلوم میں کھے۔ میں جی نہیں بو چھا۔ خیر اس کا مطلب سے ہے کہ 'آپ
لوگ اکھ ہفتے تی وس تاریخ کو محتم آسے ہے جائے ہیں۔
لوگ اکھ ہفتے تی وس تاریخ کو محتم آسے ہے جائے ہیں۔

بان : شکریه و جم صاحب یه آپ کاادر آپ کے دوست کی مربانی ہے۔ رجم : توبتا ہے جان صاحب آب شام کو آپ اوگ کیا کررہے ہیں؟ کہیں باہر جارہے ہیں؟

: بی نہیں ، ہم اس وقت ہو عل میں ہیں۔ عام طور سے ہم شام کا کھانا یہال کھاتے ہیں۔ جاك

: اچھا آپ وہال مت کھائے۔ آپ ادھر آھے کھانے پر۔ آئ شام کو میری بہن اور ان کے شوہر مجی آرہے ہیں۔ آپ ان سے ملیے۔ اب کتنے بح ہیں 'مات بح ہیں نا؟ تو آپ لوگ آٹھ بچ تک آھے۔

: شكريه ارجيم صاحبد بم فيك آ مُع بِ بني إن يا جاك

cunning

**..**O helo 🖈 hello! ننا sunnā to hear, ⊌ s. bolnā to speak is he at listen تغريف ركحتي tašrīf xušxabrī خُرَى goodnews rakhte (f.) حالاك cālāk hain? clever,

to call

آماني	āsānī	ease (f.)	ادهر	idhar	here, to
آسانی ہے	āsānī se	easily	731	idhai	here, to
کہیں	kahīṅ	somewhere	آٹھبچتک	āth baje	by eight
بابر	bāhar	out, outside	نحيك آخريج	tak ṭhīk āṭh	ateight
بابرجائے	bāhar jānā	to go out		baje	precisely

### हीं व्याप्त qavā'id Grammar

#### hijje **Spelling**

As we have seen, the sign " tašđīd is written above a letter to show that it is doubled: v tayy $\bar{u}$ , v bacca, etc. The infinitive of verbs with a stem ending in v v v v however, is always written with two separate v v v vsunnā (stem 👉 sun-) 'to hear'.

#### Making telephone calls

\*helo! When answering or beginning a telephone call, the universal 

When someone rings you, you can answer by saying:

بيلو على جان بول ربا مول/ بيلو على بيلن بول ربى مول

helo, main jān bol rahā hūn/helo, main helan bol rahī hūn Hello! This is John/Helen speaking ('I John am speaking')

If you get a wrong number, you can excuse yourself by saying:

mu'āf kījīe Excuse me ('do forgiveness') mu'āf is usually pronounced māf.

Urdu is usually strict about the correct order of words in the sentences: the verb always comes at the end of the sentences, and 'question' words, such as 'how?, who?, what?, how much?', etc, always come immediately before the verb. In everyday speech, however, the rules can be broken for various reasons.

UNIT 7

In the phrase in the dialogue 'I never ask', the word order should strictly speaking be:

maiń kabhī nahīń pūchtā

Transferring سير to the end of the sentences, i.e. سير to the end of the sentences, i.e. 

#### More expressions of time

After £ the postposition £ 'up to' is used in the sense of 'by':

The car arrives by eight

Before expressions of time bas the sense of 'precisely':

They are coming at eight o'clock precisely والمحكر آتم بج آرے بیں It is five o'clock precisely

### mukālima tīn Dialogue 3

Rahim's brother-in-law proposes a hotel for the Smiths in Lahore.

رحیم : آئے ' جان صاحب ' آئے بیلن صاحب ۔ تو بیف الے یہ میری بیگرے میلے۔ ان کا
رحیم : آئے ' جان صاحب ' آئے بیلن صاحب۔ تو بیف لا ہے۔ میری بیگرے میلے۔ ان کا
لاہور کے رہنے والے ہیں۔ یہ لوگ افکل جسم ات کو آپ کے ساتھ جارہے ہیں۔
قاسم صاحب لاہور کے بارے بیس سب بچھ جانے ہیں۔ قاسم صاحب ' آپ کو معلوم
ہے کہ جان اور بیٹن ہمارے آگر یہ دوست ہیں۔ ووٹوں انگھتان بیل ڈاکٹر ہیں۔
اور دوٹوں بہت آئی کرور کے بارے بیس بہاں طمیر نے کا ارادو ہے؟
قاسم : بیان صاحب ' ابور میں کہاں طمیر نے کا ارادو ہے؟
جان : اب سبک بچھ معلوم فہیں۔ میرے خیال ہے کی ہو ٹی بیس۔
جان : اب بک بچھ معلوم فہیں۔ میرے خیال ہے کی ہو ٹی بیس۔
تاسم : لاہور میں بہت ایتھے ہو ٹل ہیں گئن ہمرائیدی ہو ٹل بیل کا برادو ہے۔
بال دوڑ کے پاس ہے۔ بیس مرکز جس۔ آپ کواس کا ٹیلیوں گیروزیا ہوں۔ کل میٹیوال

ميليفون يجيئ أورمير أنام ديجئ

			ı	
	ė	C	٦	
۷			1	

-	ṭhahrnā fātima	to stay Fatima	بزی انچی اردو	baṛī acchī	very good
	0			urdū	Urdu
-	kausar	Kausar	مال روۋ	mäl rod	Mall Road
ہم کیارے پی	bahnüi qäsim ke bäre men jännä	brother- in-law (m.) Qasim about, con- cerning to know	<i>يين مركز پين</i> دينا كل	'ain 'ain mar- kaz men denä kal kal subh	(Lahore) right, just right in the centre to give tomorrow tomorrow

### أَوْمَ الْمَا وَ qavā'id Grammar

### டி aglā 'next'

The adjective  $^{\| f \|}$  aglā means 'next' and is used with the names of the days of the week and months:

I am going ('on') next Monday

المُورِيَّ الْمُعَلِّمُ الْمِالْمِالِ اللهِ ال

انگریت بری بانگره به Next week I have my birthday Note that in the last two expressions no postposition is used.

### لاك الله ke bare men 'about', 'concerning'

is a compound postposition consisting of three words and means 'about', 'concerning':

Please tell me about Lahore لاہورے بارے میں مجھے بتایے What do you know about us?

#### to know' وَا اللَّهُ ا

(stem أَجَالُ jān-, i.e. the infinitive is written with two nuns) jānnā 'to know' is the equivalent of معلوم بداً.

UNIT 7

يانا jānnā should not be confused with إلى jānā (stem أَ بِ jā-) 'to go'. For example: كَنْ بِانَا بِعَلُ main jāntā hūn 'I know', but من المانا بعن main jātā hūn 'I go'. By and large, المطوم : معلوم : م

آپ جانے ہیں کہ بندر روؤ کہاں ہے؟

Do you know (that) where Bandar Road is?

وہ لاہور کے بارے میں بہت جانا ہے

He knows a lot about Lahore

#### ½ barā 'very'

Coming before other adjectives, 12 'very', is the equivalent of ::

#### thahrnā 'to wait'; 'to stay/reside'

t, means both 'to wait' and 'to stay' (in a hotel, etc.):

نورا تظہر نے 'شن ایجی آتا ہول Wait a bit. I'm just coming آپ یہاں کہاں تھہرے بین ؟

Where are you staying here?

### siqāfat Culture أثانت

In India and Pakistan, trains are efficient, if rather slow, but if you have the time they provide you with one of the best ways of seeing the country and observing its day-to-day life. First-class travel is relatively inexpensive and reasonably comfortable. Second, 'Inter' and Third class can be crowded and chaotic, but for a short journey are worth trying. In India the 'Air-Conditioned Chair Car' between Delhi and Calcutta, Delhi and Bombay is excellent value. This is one way of experiencing what they call the 'real' India or Pakistan. The issue of tickets and reservations is subject to bewildering bureaucracy, a legacy of the British Raj, which has been developed to a fine art. Your chances of acquiring a ticket at the station, especially if you are a stranger to the country, are almost nil. One always seems to be number 529 on the waiting list! The best way is to find a local who knows the system – a friend, a hotel manager, or anyone in a vaguely official position.

## mašqen Exercises

### 7.2 Take your part in the dialogue

Rahim : آواب عرض ب ا آپ آج کیاکرر بے اربی ہیں؟ Say you are busy and are preparing to go to Islamabad

(اسلام آباد) Rahim : اچھا' کیا آپ ہوائی جہازے جارہ ہیں؟

Say no. You are planning to go by train You

Rahim : آپ کومعلوم ہے کہ ریل گاڑی یہاں ۔ آٹھ بج جاتی ہے؟

Say that you know, and ask where you can get a ticket : You

Rahim : كوئي مشكل نهيل - المنيثن يرمت جائي - مجمع شام كوفون كجيا-

Thank Rahim, and say that you will telephone at eight sharp You

#### 7.3 Listen to the Urdu dialogue on the tape and tick the correct answer:

1 Kausar is at home:

(a) looking after the (b) cooking children

2 Fatima asks Kausar if:

(a) she likes cooking (b) she is free

3 Kausar is:

(a) going out this (b) staying at home

4 Tomorrow morning Kausar: (a) has time to spare (b) is busy

5 Fatima ask her to:

(a) come and have (b) phone her

ice cream

#### 7.4 Using the telephone

You ring a number you have been given to find out from Mr Qasim information about going by train to Lahore. Do the following:

- 1 Say hello and ask is the number is 60495
- 2 Ask if Mr Qasim is there
- 3 Tell him you are either Bill Brown (المري الأول) or Mary Jones (ميرى المري ) and you are going to Lahore next Thursday. Say you are American
- 4 Ask if he knows where you can get a first-class reservation
- 5 Thank him and say that he is very kind. Give him your number and ask him to phone you in the evening.

# ہمیں حساب ویکیے؟ Can we have the bill?

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say what you will do in the future
- check out of a hotel
- say what you must do
- line a porter at the station

mukālima ek Dialogue 1 مكاله ايك

John settles his bill with the hotel manager and prepares for departure.

جان : السلام عليكم ؛ جناب

نيجر : وعليم اللام اسمته صاحب آب كي بين؟ كراجي مين وقت اچها كررابك؟

جان : کی ہال ، بہال بہت احتصد دن گزررے ہیں۔ ہمیں آپ کا موشل بہت پسند ہے۔ کل مح

نیجر : اچھا' آپ کیے جائیں گے۔ ریل سے یا ہوائی جہازے؟

جبر المجان : ہمریل عبان کے دریا کے پیدال ہوں المجانے ، جان : ہمریل عبان کے دریل گاری گئ آخر ہے المیشن عدواند ہوگا۔ اس لئے ہمیں موری افعال ہے۔ کیا یہاں عمل کئی موگار میں آخر کے لئے سات بج کیسی بلاوں گا۔ جانے نیجر : تی ہاں کوئی مشکل نہیں ہوگا۔ ٹین آپ کے لئے سات بج کیسی بلاوں گا۔ جانے سے پہلے بہاں المشر کچے۔ کیا آپ کرے ٹین ناشتہ کریں گے؟

جان : بديبت اچھامو گار اور آن شام تك جھے حساب ديجيد جھے ابھى دو تين كھنے كے لئے باہر

جانا ہے۔ میں کوئی چھے بجے واپس آؤل گا۔

، من ری سے بیدوہ اول کا۔ محکم ہے' اسمتہ صاحب آپ جائے۔ جتھ بجے تک سب تیار ہوگا۔ کیا آپ لوگ مار کو مختان بہال کھائیں گے؟ مار کو مختان بہال کھائیں گے؟

جان : می فیمیر۔ ہم دوستوں کے پائی جارے ہیں۔ان کے ساتھ ہم کھانا کھائیں گے۔ نیجر : بہترے ماحب میں شام کو بیمال رہوں گا۔ اگر آپ کواور پکھ چاہتے تو یکھے بتا ہے۔ جان : شکریر۔ ہم شام کو چرکلیس گے۔

### हीं व्याप्त विश्व Grammar

bulāūṅgā باذك

tel guzarnā '(of time) to be spent, pass'

til guzarnā means 'to pass, be spent (of time)':

كراچى مي اچها وقت گزر رہا ہے

karācī men acchā vaqt guzar rahā hai

I'll call

A good time is being spent in Karachi ('we are having a good time')

عام طور سے چھٹیاں سندر کے پاس گزرتی ہیں

Holidays are usually spent by the seaside

Note that English usually 'personalises' such expressions: 'we are having a good time; we usually spend ...'.

UNIT 8

#### Future tense 'I shall do'

The future tense, as its name implies, expresses what will happen in the future: 'I shall do, you will be', etc.

The future tense is formed by adding the following endings to the stem of the verb:

M	<b>lasculine</b>	Fe	eminine		
- ول گا	-ūṅgā	- وں کی	-ūṅgī		
6	-egā	- ے گ	-egī		
20-	-enge	- یں گ	-eṅgī		
_و_	-oge	- وگ	-ogī		
ميں كروں گا	main karūngā	I shall do	8_500	vuh karegā	he will do
ده کرے گ	vuh karegī	she will do	آپرينگ	ãp kareṅgĩ	you (f.) will do
بمريرع	ham kareṅge	we will do			- 11

Note that, as usual, fi is regarded as masculine.

It is made negative by placing the particle الله directly before the verb: شرى الله الله main nahīn karūngā 'I shall not do'.

The future tense of t / karnā (stem / kar-) 'to do' is:

Ma	sculine	Fer	ninine	
8005	karūngā	کروں گی	karūngī	ښ
825	karegā	525	karegī	7
825	karegā	5-5	karegī	بي 'وه
EUS	karenge	EUS	karenge	6
2,5	karoge	5,5	karogī	7
LUS	karenge	كريركى	karengī	آپ
205	karenge	500	karengī	بي ده

The suffixes  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}$  are usually written separately, but may be joined:  $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L} =$ 

ہم ا گلے ہفتے لا ہور جائیں کے We shall go to Lahore next month ر خیم صاحب آج کام نہیں کریں مے Mr Rahim will not work today My wife will not go out today

#### Future tense of ten honā

The future tense of  $t_{\mathcal{F}}$  is slightly irregular:

Masculine		Fer		
ہوں گا	hūṅgā	ہوں گی	hūṅgī	ښ
6 91	hogā	ہوگی	hogī	7
8 30	hogā	ہوگی	hogī	ىي ' وە
2Um	honge	Lun	honge	Č
En	hoge	ہوگی	hogī	7
ہوں گے	honge	ہوں گی	hoṅgī	آب
EU9?	honge	ہوں گی	hoṅgī	س' رہ

#### 'must', 'have to' obligation

'I must do', 'Mr Rahim has to do' is expressed in Urdu with f ko and the infinitive followed by - hai:

rahīm ko jānā hai 'to Rahim is to go' Rahim must go mujhe paṛhnā hai 'to me is to read' I must read علمية ومناب جلدی کرو۔ ہمیں دوستوں کے بال پانچ بج پہنچنا ہے

jaldī karo! hamen doston ke hān pānc baje pahuncnā hai Hurry up! We have to be at (our) friends' place by five ('to us is to arrive')

جلدى to hurry'. Used as an adverb جلدى jaldī means 'hurry' (f.); جلدى means 'quickly, soon':

اے بیرا! کھانا لاؤ اور جلدی لاؤ

Waiter! Bring the food, and bring (it) quickly/soon  $U \subseteq ke h \bar{a} \dot{n}$  is a compound postposition meaning 'at the place/ house of': مارے دوست مارے بال مخبریں کے

Our friends will stay at our place

#### aur kuch 'something else'

UNIT 8

We have already seen that as well as meaning 'and', also means 'more': 'more tea', اور کھائی 'let's eat some more'. In the phrase first it is translated as 'else':

آپ کو اور کھ وابي؟ بى نبيل جھے اور کھ نبيل واب

Do you want something else? No, I don't want anything else

### پر بایر کے phir milenge 'we shall meet again'

When taking leave of each other, people often say: اجازت و مسجيد خداحافظ ۽ تم مجر ملسل ڪ 'Give me leave. Goodbye. We'll meet again'.

" may be better translated as 'see you!':

اچھار جم صاحب مجھے اب جاتا ہے۔ پھر ملیں مے

Ok, Rahim. I've got to go now. See you!

### mukālima do Dialogue 2

John and Helen make their final агтапдетенть for departure.

جان : اللام عليم 'جناب ناشخ ك لي بهت شكريداس ك لئ يجي آب كوكتن بيودي

مینجر: آپکاسامان کہال ہے؟ کرے میں ہے؟

جان : بى بال ، تىن سوك كيس بير ليكن ده كافى بعارى بير-

جان : بی بان سی سوط یعنی بیراب میں دوہ فاریکا دل ایس اس کے دوہ سال لائے گا اور شکسی شغیر : فیک ہے آپ کے بیال تشریف رکھے۔ میں قلی کو بداؤں گا۔ دوہ سال لائے گا اور شکسی شمار کے گا۔ آپ کے پارس بہت دوت ہے۔ کیا جانے نے پہلے چائے اوفی میش گے ؟ جان : بی نمین شمرید۔ میرے خیا ل ہے ہما بھی چلیں گے۔ کیو تکہ جمیں اشیش پر دوستوں ہے خاتے ہے۔ دہ تھی ہمارے ساتھ اوا ہور جارے ہیں۔ مینجر : لاہور کے بعد آپ کا کیا ارادہ ہے؟ کیا آپ دہال ہے گھر چائیں گے؟

جان : بی تبیں۔ ہم وہاں ہے دہلی جا کیں گے اور ہندوستان میں دو ہفتہ کے گئے رہیں گے۔ منیچر : اچھا! آپ کو وہلی بہت پندا ہے گا۔ دہلی میر سے خاندان کا وطن ہے بینی میں دہلی کا رئے والا امول۔ بہت شاندار شہر ہے۔ جان : مجھے بیتین ہے کہ وہلی بہت شاندار ہے۔ لیکن ہم پہلے لا ہور دیکھیں گے۔ اچھا، بیہ ہمارائیکی والا ہے نا؟ تو ہم چلیں گے۔ ایک بار چھرے آپ کا بہت بہت شکر بیا! ہم پچر کھیں گے۔ خدا حافظ۔

جناب مجھے پیے دینے ہیں	janāb mujhe	Sir (m.) I have to	سوٹ کیس	sūt-kes	suitcase (m.)
	paise dene hain		بھاری قلی	bhārī qulī	heavy porter (m.)
کی طرف سے سؤ	kī taraf se safar	pay from, on journey	قلی کوبلا وَں گا ک	qulī ko bulāūṅgā rakhnā	I'll call the
پيل پيل	phal	(m.) fruit (m.)	رھنا آپ کے پاس وقت ہے	такппа äp ke päs vaqt hai	you have
ماری طرف <i>ہے</i>	hamārī taraf se	from us; on us	کوفی جلنا	kofi calnā	coffee (f.)
ارے جمیں یاد رہے گا	are! hamen yād	oh! well! we'll			depart,
مالمان	rahegā sāmān	remember luggage		ek bār phir se	once more
of	kamra	(m.) room (m.)	<i>پچربھی</i> آئے	se phir kabhī āīe	come again some time

### qavā'id Grammar قراعد

### بناب janāb 'Sir'

is an Arabic word literally meaning 'courtyard of a noble's palace in which the oppressed might take refuge'. In Persian and Urdu it has come to mean 'My Lord', but in modern Urdu it simply means 'Sir', and may be used when addressing any male.

### More rules for obligation 'must'; the object of the verb

In certain circumstances, the infinitive behaves like adjectives in  $\ell$  - $\bar{a}$ , such as  $|\vec{x}|$ :

	Adjecti	ve	Infinitive	
Masculinesingular	acchā	احجفا	karnā	55
Masculine singular oblique	acche	201	karne	25
Masculine plural	acche	27-1	karne	25
Feminine	acchī	ا چھی	karnī	35

We saw earliar that 'I must give, I have to give' is expressed in Urdu as 'to me is to give'. If in such a sentence the verb takes an object, e.g. I must give money, the infinitive (in this case \( \xi\_2 \)) takes the number and gender of the object. Here the object of the verb is \( \xi\_2 \) paise 'money', which is masculine plural. Therefore the infinitive also changes to masculine plural \( \xi\_2 \) in order to 'agree' with its object. The verb also changes to plural \( (\xi\_2 \) hain):

ئے ہے رہے ایں mujhe paise dene hain

#### Compare the following:

UNIT 8

مجھے گھرد کھناہے	mujhe ghar dekhn <b>ā hai</b>	I have to see a house (m.s.)
مجھے كتاب ديكھنى ہے	mujhe kitāb dekhnī hai	I have to see a book (f.s.)
مجه گرد يكھنے إل	mujhe ghar dekhn <b>e hain</b>	I have to see houses (m.p.)
مجھے کتابیں ویکھنی ہیں	mujhe kitābe <b>n dekhnī hain</b>	I have to see books (f.p.)

If the object of a verb is a person ('boy', 'Mr Rahim', etc.) or a pronoun ('me, you, him, her, us, them'), the object must be followed by f(x)

	, and deject mast be followed by 7 kg).
میں رحیم کودیکھتا ہوں	main rahīm ko dekhtā hūn I see Rahim
ر هيم جي كور جي ديكية بيل	rahīm mujh ko/mujhe dekhte hain Rahim sees me
ہم اوے کوبلاتے ہیں	ham larke ko bulāte hain We call the boy
قلی کوبلاؤراے بلاؤ	qulī ko bulāo/use bulāo Call the porter/call him

Thus خَالَيْ اَبِينَ اَبِينَ اَبِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ الْمِينَ ال are the equivalent of English: 'me, you, him, her, us, them'.

In sentences of obligation, when the verb takes an object followed by f, the infinitive always remains masculine singular, regardless of the gender or number of the noun or pronoun, and the verb  $\leftarrow hai$  also remains singular:

### mašq Exercise شق

#### 8.1 Complete the sentences

### kī taraf se 'from' 'on the part of' 'on'

) literally 'from the side of' can be translated into English as 'on, from', 'on the house':

This meal is on me

The fruit is from the hotel/on the house

### yād 'memory' غير mujhe yād hai 'I remember'

ين yād means 'memory' (f.) and بيان mujhe yād hai 'to me a memory is' means 'I remember':

I don't remember your name ('your name isn't a memory to me')

آپ کا ہوٹل بیشہ یاد رہے گا

We shall always remember your hotel ('your hotel will remain a memory')

#### caln عادا

UNIT 8

We have already met the verb  $\psi$  which expresses the idea of motion in various senses. In English it can be rendered 'to come, go, move, walk, leave, depart, get going', etc. according to the context. Compare the following:

imy car won't go ('it's broken down't go ('it's broke

I have to leave now

The related verb  $t \not = cal\bar{a}n\bar{a}$  means 'to drive':

آپ طاتے ہیں Do you drive? بلقیں گاڑی طاتی ہیں Bilqis drives a car

### / phir 'then, again'

has two meanings: 'then, afterwards'; 'again':

We'll go to Lahore first, then to Delhi آم بہلے لاہور جائیں گے بچر دبی جائیں گے . We'll meet again some time

### mukālima tīn Dialogue 3 مكاله تين

John and Helen take a taxi to the station and find a porter.

شکی والا: کہاں جانا ہے 'صاحب' اسٹین جانا ہے؟ جان : می ہال ہور جارہ ہیں۔ گاڑی کس پلیٹ فارم سے چلتی ہے؟ آپ کو معلوم ہوگا؟ شکی والا: می ہال صاحب کوئی مشکل نہیں۔ میں آپ کے لئے قلی کو بلاؤل گا۔ اسٹین یہال سے زیادہ دور کمیس۔ صرف میس منٹ کاراستہ ہے۔ آپ لوگ آگریزیں نا۔ آپ کو اُردوکیے آئی ہے؟

```
جان : بس_ ميں أردو كي ربابول الكتان ميں بہت سے أردو بولنے والے رہتے ہيں۔
میسی والا : بی بال مجھ معلوم ہے۔ میرے بوے بعائی میجسٹر میں رہتے ہیں۔ میں مجی وہال
```

جان : الجيما- كب جائے كاار ادہ ہے؟ تكسى والا : ارادے تو بميشہ ہوتے ہيں 'صاحب۔ كين پيے چا بيس نا ميں نيسى چلانے والا بحول۔ ميں بہت زيادہ نيس كمانا۔ لين ايك دن ميں وہال ضرور جاؤں گا۔ و يكھيے' اشيشن يبال ہے۔

جان : اوہوا کتنی بری بھیڑ ہے۔ ہم پلیٹ فارم تک کیے پہنچیں گع؟ میسی والا : کوئی مشکل جین 'صاحب میں گلی کو بلاوں گا۔ وہ آپ کو گاڑی میں جھائے گا۔ آپ اس کو دس روپے دیجیے زیادہ جیس۔

بان : اور مجھے آپ کو کتنے میں ویٹے دیں۔ عمان : اس مجھی رو پیے دیتیے۔ اس آدی کود مجھیے۔ وہ آپ کا قلی ہے۔ جان : آپ کی ہیں مربی الی ضاداغہ۔

	plaiṭfārm	platform (m.)	سيخير	maincestar	Manches- ter (m.)
آپ کو معلوم ہو گا	āp ko ma'lūm	you probably	wr	calānevālā kamānā	driver (m.) to earn
	hogā	know	بمير	bhīŗ	crowd(f.)
آپ کوار دو کیے آئی ہے؟	āp ko urdū kaise ātī hai?	how do you know Urdu?	مانا بھیز کتی بدی بھیز	kitnī baŗī bhīŗ	what a huge crowd!
ئ	bas	well!, enough	بثحانا	biṭhānā	to seat, show to a
يكهنا	sīkhnā	to learn			seat
ردو پولنے والے	urdū bolnevāle	Urdu speakers			

#### हीं व्याप्त gavā'id Grammar

" ap ko ma'lūm hogā 'you probably know'

The future tense can, as in English, have the sense of 'probably', 'must':

UNIT 8

آپ کو معلوم ہوگا کہ اسٹیشن کہال ہے

You probably/must know where the station is ('you will know ...')

میری بین کراچی میں ہوگی

My sister must be in Karachi ('she will be ...')

### mujhe urdū ātī hai 'I know/speak Urdu'

ن 'Urdu comes to me', i.e. 'I know Urdu'. تأ in the sense of 'to know' is especially common in the context of languages:

حامد کو تین زبائیں آتی ہیں۔ اس کو اُردو' انگریزی اور عربی آتی ہیں

Hamid knows three languages. He knows Urdu, English and Arabic

#### ل bas! 'well! enough!'

راً. used as an exclamation means 'well!, you see!'.

Well, I'm learning Urdu

When asked المامال به people often simply reply المامال به meaning OK. المامال به can also mean 'enough':

Enough! Enough! Don't give me any more

יון -vālā

The suffix والى -vālā (fem. والى -vālī) denotes a person who does, sells or The suffix אין - vala (tem. יפין - vala) denotes a person who does, sens of possesses something. In the English of the Raj 'wallah' was often used: 'chaiwallah' a tea vendor = Urdu יש ביענע baksvālā. Compare יש ביענע a taxi driver, ביענע a fruit seller.

Added to the oblique infinitive, # means 'someone who does something':

kām karnevālā a worker

چلائے والا calānevālā a driver urdū bolnevālā أردو يولي والا

an Urdu speaker The feminine counterpart خوالى - would be used by or for a woman:

bilqīs urdū bolnevālī hai Bilqis is an Urdu speaker.

thể: (related to بیشها 'to sit') means 'to seat someone'. On Indian and Pakistani stations, the porter, as well as carrying your luggage, will also find your compartment for you, arrange your things, and deal with over-zealous guards and ticket inspectors. All these services are included in two.

### siqāfat Culture ثانت

In the westernised luxury hotels of large cities in India and Pakistan the system is much the same as anywhere else in the world. The less ostentatious hotels have much more of a 'family' atmosphere. When you speak Urdu, the staff will become extremely friendly and helpful, not to mention curious, and it is not uncommon to find a bowl of fruit placed in your room: بوش کی طرف ہے

According to the code of hospitality, you are the honoured guest, and there will always be porters present to carry your bags and give other services in return for a tip. Tipping bassis, from which we have the English words 'buckshee' and 'baksheesh', is customary and expected. In hotels and at stations, many people earn their living almost entirely from tips. If you insist on carrying your own baggage to the train, you will not only be regarded as mean, but definitely as odd!

### mašgen Exercises

#### 8.2 Dialogue

You are at the station. Take your part in the dialogue with the porter:

Porter : آپ الميش جار بي مين؟ كمال جار بي مين؟

Say yes; you are going to Lahore : You

Porter : آپ کے پاس کتا سامان ہے؟

Say you have only two suitcases : You

Porter : آپکاریزرویش ہے؟

Say you do, and ask at what time the train will depart : You

Porter فیک آٹھ بج چلتی ہے

Say thank you, and ask how much you have to give him : You

#### 8.3 Give the correct form of the infinitive

1 آپ کو سب چیزیں (کھانا) ہیں 2 ہمیں کل مجھ جھے بچے (اٹھنا) ہے 3 آپ کو گئی تمایش (پڑھنا) ہے 4 مجھے اس لڑی کو فرن (کرنا) ہے 5 رجم صاحب کو آج اسپتال (جانا) ہے

#### 8.4 Numbers and figures

UNIT 8

While staying in Karachi John has made the following accounts (حاب) of his expenditure. Look at his list and then answer the questions that follow.

### صاب كتاب

	State of the state	
ہو ٹل کا کرایہ (وس دن)	گیاره سو	1100
دوپېر کا کھانا	سات سو	۷۰۰
شام كا كھانا	نوسو تميں	98.
خريداري	ایک بزار دوسو	1700
میسی (پانچ بار)	تين سو بيس	rr.
لاہور جانے کا کراپیہ (دو ٹکٹ)	يجھے سواٹھارہ	AIF
تين كتابيں	تميں	۳٠
بخشش	باكيس	rr
كل		?

- 1 How many days has John stayed in his hotel?
- 2 How much has he spent altogether on food?
- 3 How many times has he travelled in a taxi?
- 4 What is the price of a single ticket to Lahore?
- 5 How much money has he given in tips?
- 6 What has been his total expenditure in Karachi.

(The Arabic word & kul means 'total')

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say where and how you were
  - make comparisons
  - identify more of the geography of Pakistan
  - say more directions
  - use higher numbers

mukālima ek Dialogue 1

Qasim meets the Smiths at the station and loses his wife in the crowd. قاسم : جان صاحب السلام عليم\_ آپ لوگ كهال تنه؟ آپ بليث فارم ير نيس تقريس بهت پریشان تھا۔ باب بین مال است. معاف بین بین فارم پر تنے لیکن اتن بری میرز ویلنگر السام، قاسم صاحب معاف بین آت می مشکل بانا ایمی میرزش کچھ نظر میں آتا۔ نیز کوئی بات میں ایم بات تو یہ کہ اب آپ اوگ بیاں ہیں۔ ڈباکائی آرامدہ ب نا؟ بهم مرف چار آد کی بول گ۔ اور کوئی میں بوگا۔ آپ کوپاکتان پند آرہاہ؟ جان : بہت پند آرہاہ۔ کرائی میں مارا ہوئل بہت اچھا تھا۔ کھانا چھا تھا اوگ ایھے تھے اور ہوئل کے میجر خاص طورے مہر بان تھے۔ کرائی میں اب مارے بہت سے دوست ہیں۔ قاسم : لا يور شي اور زياده دورت طيس كي و پنجاب ك لوگ بهت مهمان نواز جور ته بن الدي و سال ميان نواز جور ته بن ا ارب مين تيم كهال آيا، دوياره من مي سيل ميلون كه بن اتحد پايت قارم رضين أب ده کبين نظر کين آتن - آپ لوگ يهال تيفي شي ان كي علاش كرون كاسكان يا پاچ منت كي نفر دواز چوك .

جان : قائم صاحب' آپ پرشان مت ہوئے۔ دیکھیے دو آری ہیں۔ قائم : کوژ' آپ کہاں تھیں؟ کیا مہلیوں کے ساتھ تھیں؟ آئے ڈب میں پیٹھے۔ گاڑی اب

O		the parešān	were worried	اورزياده	aur ziyāda	even more,
		itnī baṛī bhīr	such a big			many
	نظر نہیں آتا	nazar nahin ātā	can't be	مهمان نواز	mihmān navāz	hospitable
	,-	xair	well!	پانچ منٹ پہلے	pānc minaț	
		ahm	important		pahle	minutes
	سے اہم	sab se ahm	the most important	سبيلي	sahelī	ago woman
	ţţ	ḍibbā	compartment	Z	thīń	friend (f.)

(m.) (she) was kahīṅ کبیں نبیں آپ کو پند آرما pasand ā nowhere are you enjoying? nahīn nazar نظر نہیں آتیں can't be rahā hai? nahīn ātīn ⊌ thā was un kī talāš ان کی طاش karūṅgā mirhrbān אתוש kind, I'll look

for her

### gavā'id Grammar قاعد

UNIT 9

#### Past tense of tn: 6 tha 'was'

The past tense refers to what was or happened in the past. First we look at tha past tense of ts 'I was, you were, they were', etc. In Urdu the past tense of ts shows gender (masculine and feminine) and number (singular and plural), but not does not indicate person ('I, you, he', etc.). It is formed as follows:

#### Masculinesingular

main thā عن تن I was توتقا tū thā you were he/it was yih, vuh thā ين ووقا Masculine plural

20 ham the we were 27 tum the you were āp the you were آپتے yih, vuh the they were

#### **Feminine singular**

main thī I was

لا تُنْ الله main thī I was

you were

tu thī you were

yih, vuh thī she, it was

#### Feminine plural

āp kal šām ko kahān the? main ghar par thā Where were you yesterday evening? I was at home

Notice that  $\sqrt[6]{kal}$ , as well as meaning 'tomorrow' also means 'yesterday':

merī beṭīāṅ kal iskūl meṅ nahīṅ thīṅ My daughters were not at school yesterday

### Ei itnā 'so much (as this)'; 'such'

Et means 'so much (as this)', and can sometimes be translated as 'such':

plaiṭfārm par itnī baṛī bhīṛ thī

There was such ('so much') a big crowd on the platform

mujhe itnā nahīn cāhīe

I don't want so much (as this)

દા is often followed by અંદ્રે meaning the same thing:

#### UNIT 9

میرے پاس اتنے زیادہ پیے نہیں ہیں شامط ختا مصر مصر مصر مصر مصر میں

mere pās itne ziyāda paise nahīn hain I don't have so much money

### تر nazarānā 'to come into view, be seen'

 $\vec{\beta}$  nazar means 'view, sight' (f.). The phrase verb  $\vec{\tau}$   $\vec{\beta}$  nazar  $\vec{a}$ n $\vec{a}$  means 'to come into view, be seen':

merī khirkī se pūrā landan nazar ātā hai

I can see the whole of London from my window ('London comes into view')

yahān se kuch nazar nahīn ātā

'from here nothing comes into view' i.e. you can't see anything.

In this sentence the subject is 4 'anything'.

#### Comparison of adjectives

When we make comparisons with adjectives: 'he is bigger than me; he is the biggest', the form 'bigger' is known as the comparative. and the form 'biggest' is known as the superlative. For some English adjectives we have to use 'more, most': 'more beautiful, most beautiful'.

In Urdu 'than' is expressed by the postposition  $\angle$ . Comparison is effected as follows:

vuh mujh se bara hai

He is bigger than me ('he than me is big')

vuh sab se barā hai

He is the biggest ('he than all is big')

rahīm sāhib aslam sāhib se amīr hain

Mr Rahim is richer than Mr Aslam

لندن انگلتان كاسب سے براشرب

landan inglistān kā sab se barā šahr hai London is the biggest city in ('of') England

Note that 'in' England is الكتان 'of' England in Urdu.

In the comparative, the word ji; ziyāda 'more' may be placed before the adjective:

میرے بڑے بھائی مجھے نیادہ مصروف ہیں My elder brother is busier ('more busy') than me

ko pasand ana 'to enjoy'

The phrase verb لَا لَكُونَا ko pasand ana 'to come (as) pleasing to' is best translated as 'to enjoy':

مجھےلا ہور پہندآ رہاہے

mujhe lāhaur pasand ā rahā hai

I am enjoying Lahore ('to me Lahore is coming pleasing')

Note the difference between:

I like Pakistani food I enjoy Pakistani food بجھے یاکتانی کھانا پندآ تاہے

pahle 'ago'

In expressions of time, pahle means 'ago':

ر المسلم و تعلق المسلم و cālīs minaṭ pahle forty minutes ago thirty-five years a thirty-five years ago

The adjective pahlā means 'first':

پہلادرجہ pahlā darjā پنل بر pahlī bār first class

The adverb  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  pahle or  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  means 'first (of all)':

پہلے میں لندن میں تھا۔اب میں مینجسٹر میں ہوں

First I was in London; now I am in Manchester

آپسبت پہلےکہاں تھ؟ Where were you first of all? لَّ اللَّهُ لَ kī talāš karnā 'to look for'

្វឹម talāš means 'seeking, looking for' (f.). The phrase verb ្វេវី ម្នាស់  $k\bar{l}$  talāš karnā 'to do the seeking of' means 'to look for':

میں آپ کی علاش کر رہا تھا لیکن آپ کہیں نہیں تھے

I was looking for you ('doing your seeking'), but you weren't anywhere

Note كين kahīn 'somewhere', كين أيس kahīn nahīn 'nowhere'.

### mašq Exercise مثق

9.1 Complete the sentences

1 آداب عرض اسلم صاحب كل آب كبال 2 قاسم صاحب اور ان کے دوست پلیٹ فارم پر 3 ده خانون بهت همربان \_\_\_\_\_ 4 بلقیس صاحبهٔ آپ دملی میں کب \_\_\_\_\_ 5 حامد کہاں ہے؟ پانچ منٹ پہلے دہ یہاں

mukālimado Dialogue2

While travelling in the train through Sindh, the Smiths hear about Qasim's life.

جان : كيول ، قاسم صاحب آپلامور كريخوال بين؟

قاسم جی نہیں ' میں اصل میں ملتان کارہے والا ہوں۔ ملتان بھی پنجاب میں ہوار لا ہور سے زیادہ دور مہیں۔ میں پہلے فوج میں تھا۔ لین دس سال کے لئے میں سیابی تھا۔ اس کے بعد ۔۔۔۔۔۔۔ سال میں جائے ہیں۔۔۔ون میں عد۔۔ون ویساں سے سے میں جائی تاہدا ہیں۔ شمایا فائم سال کے لئے حیدر آباد مندھ اور کرا ہی میں تھا۔ آن کیلی میں ابور شرکاروبار کرتا ہوں۔ آئی تماری رٹی گاڑی حیدر آباد اور ملتان سے گزرے کی۔ کل میج آٹھے تو ہیے ہم لا ہور پہنچیں گے۔

جان : لاہور کراچی سے چھوٹا ہا؟

قام : قرابال لا اور وخاب كاسب يراشم ب اكين كرايى يرب چونا ب يرب خيال كالبور وخاب كاسب يرك خيال كالم يواليس ال كله ب كرايى كاتبادى بوى بيرب

Į..O

پہلے کرا چی پاکستان کا دارالحکومت تھا۔ جیسا کہ آپ کو معلوم ہے اب ہمارا دارالحکومت اسلام آباد ہے۔ جان : کی اس مہت زیادہ دور نہیں ، ریل سے کوئی پاخی گھنے کا راستہ ہے۔ اسلام آباد کا ٹی نیا قام : تی تیس ۔ بہت زیادہ دور نہیں ، ریل سے کوئی پاخی گھنے کا راستہ ہے۔ اسلام آباد کا ٹی نیا شہر ہے اور لا بور سے بہت چھوٹا ہے۔ کرا چی پاکستان کا سب سے بڑا شہر ہے۔ کہت میر ہے خیال سے الا بور سے دلیے اور فوشگوار ہے۔ اب کتنے بیٹی بی ؟ دل بج ہیں ۔ تھوڑی دیر کے بعد ہم حیور آبادہ تیجیں گے۔ وہاں ہم چاہے بیٹیں گے۔

	2 2		
	ہے گزرے کی	se guzregī	will pass
1 Multan	•		through
(m.)	15117	ābādī	population
first (of	Oję		(f.)
-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11-11	الس	cālīs	forty
	0 2		
army (1.)	لاهر		100,000
soldier,	دارالحكومت	dārul	capital
'sepoy'		hukūmat	(city) (m.
(m.)	اسلام آیا د	islāmābād	Islamabad
ābād Hyderabad	• 1		(m.)
and the second of the second o	خوشگوار	yu vo avār	pleasant
			a little
	سوري وري	moți aer	
(m.)			while
	كفورا	thoṛā	a little/few
through			
	(m.) first (of all) army (f.) soldier, 'sepoy'	الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الله	الري المنافعة المناف

### وَاعر qavā'id Grammar

£ hijje Spelling

Note that when a verb has a stem with two syllables, for example t, guzarna ( guzarna) and t guzarna ( guzarna) and t guzarna guzarna

The Urdu word for 'capital' בונוללערים dārul hukūmat is composed of three Arabic words: או dāru 'home', וו al 'the' and ארבים hukūmat

'government'. After the u of dāru, the a of al is elided. Thus daru al hukūmat is pronounced dārul hukūmat.

The Urdu word for business  $\lambda_{\nu}^{l} b^{\nu} kar \circ bar$  consists of three Persian words:  $\lambda_{\nu}^{l} kar$  'work',  $\lambda_{\nu}^{l} \circ kar$  (written simply with the letter  $\nu au$ ) 'and', and  $\lambda_{\nu}^{l} bar$  'activity'. The Persian word  $\lambda_{\nu}^{l} \circ kar$  'is used frequently in Urdu to link two Persian words. One of the most common phrases is  $\lambda_{\nu}^{l} \circ kar \circ k$ 

kyon!! 'why!, well!'

UNIT 9

לב kyon? means 'why?' and like all question words immediately precedes the verb:

? Why are you going there آپ وہاں کوں جارے ہیں؟

As an exclamation at the beginning of the sentence it means 'well!'. In English 'why!' can be used in the same way:

كيول جان صاحب\_آپ اكيلے بيں؟

Well/why!, John! Are you alone?

thoṛā (sā) 'a little'; بتا bahut (sā) 'much'

thorā means 'a little'; its plural form تحوث thore means '(a) few'.

After  $|\vec{b_{e}}\vec{c}|$  and  $\vec{b_{e}}$  (in the sense of 'much, many') the word  $|\vec{c}|$   $s\bar{a}$  (m.),  $|\vec{c}|$   $s\bar{a}$  (f.),  $|\vec{c}|$  s=se (m. p. and oblique) may be inserted.

mujhe thoṛi sĩ cãe đijie Give me a little tea thoṛe se paise cãhien (I) need a little money yahân bahut sī laṛkiān hain There are many girls here

If  $\checkmark$  (in the sense of 'much', 'many') is followed by another adjective, e.g. 'many good films' then the addition of  $\checkmark$  ' $\checkmark$ ' is obligatory:

much tasty food بهت ما مزردار کھانا many good films

This is because برت عردار الكانا would mean 'very good food'.

The word 29 der means 'a short space of time', 'a while' (f.):

thori der ke ba'd after a little while

UNIT 9

It can also mean 'lateness'. Note the expression:

vuh hameša der se ātā hai

He always comes late ('with lateness')

### Higher numbers 100, 1000 and millions; 'lacs and crores'

We have already met ع sau '100' and المرة hazār '1000'. One hundred and a thousand are usually expressed ع المرة الله ek sau and المرة الله ek hazār.

In this school there are a hundred boys

Karachi is about five thousand miles from London

The next highest numeral is  $\delta U = k \, l \, \bar{a} k h$  (often spelt 'lac' in English) which is 100,000 (a hundred thousand) (m.). There is no word for 'million', which would, of course, be  $\delta U = \lambda \, d \, a \, l \, \bar{a} k h \, (10 \, x \, 100,000)$ . 100  $l \, \bar{a} k h \, s \, (100 \, x \, 100,000)$ . x 100,000) = ایک کروژ ek karor 10,000,000 (ten million). ایک کروژ is often spelt in English as 'crore'.

The system of lacs and crores operates throughout India and Pakistan, and was widely employed by the British during the time of the Raj. At first, this new concept of counting is rather confusing, and it is difficult for us, who are used to 'millions' to make instant conversions. Useful mnemonics are: On the lottery you can win من الكهاوية das lākh pāund 'a million pounds'

landan kī ābādī koī ek karor hai

The population of London is roughly 10,000,000

### mašq Exercise شن

#### 9.2 Karachi to Islamabad

Look at the scheme of the railway line from Karachi to Islamabad (approximate distances are in miles), then answer the questions.

اسلام آباد

1 کراچی سے لاہور تک ریل گاڑی کن شہروں سے گزرتی ہے؟ ا حدید میں مصابح التحدید کی مادی من سم وال سے حرار میں ہے؟
2 کرائی کے بعد مہلاا میٹین کیاہے؟
3 حیدر آباد ملتان کے تقی دور ہے؟
4 نو مبر کے مینیے میں لا بعور میں کرائی سے نیادہ سر دی ہوتی ہے؟
5 پاکستان کا دارا لکھومت کیا ہے۔ دولا بعور سے کئی دور ہے؟

# mukālimatīn Dialogue 3

Arrival in Lahore.

قائم : لن ا ترتم الا مور میں بین آن آپ اوگ بہت تھے ہوں گے 'لین آپ کامو ٹل بہال سے نیادہ دور کین ۔ م کیسی میں بیٹیس کے اور آپ کو ہو ٹل تک پہنچائی گے۔ جان : شکر میر قائم صاحب کین آپ تکلف نہ کچے آپ بھی تھے ہوں گے۔ آپ سید سے محرجائے۔ تم آسانی ہے ہو ٹل پر پہنچین گے۔  بان : بہت شکریہ قاسم صاحب کین آپ کو کل فرصت ہوگ؟

قاسم : جی بان کل روز مرصت ہوگی۔ کل ہفتہ ہے نا۔ یس بیٹنے کو کام نہیں کرتا۔ عام طور

نے پاکستان میں بیٹن کو چھٹی ہوئی ہے۔ دیکھیے، آپ کا ہوئی بیاباں ہے با کی ہا تھ پر۔

دائی ہا تھے پر بال روڈ ہے۔ یہ ایور کا سب سے بڑا ادر سب ہے شا ندار راستہ ہا ہے۔

آپ لوگ جائے اور آرام کیے۔ ہم انشاء اللہ کل صبح ملیں گے۔

عال : شکریہ، قاسم صاحب۔ خدا صافظ۔

27	āxir	at last	F-7 7	Sa les beset	
V2	thakā	tired	اپ ہے ہو ل	āp ke hotal	
ھھ تھے ہوں گے				jāenge	your hotel
مطع ہوں نے		you must			well, fine
to the second	honge	be tired	آرام کرنا	ārām karnā	to rest
تابيانا	pahuncānā	to take	دن مجر	din bhar	all day
		(someone			long
		some-	وايال	dāyān	right
		where)	ULL	bāyān	left
يدھ	sīdhe	straight	باتھ	hāth	hand(m.)
		(there)	دائس باتھ پر	dāen hāth	on the
انكريز	ańgrez	English		par	right
		person			(hand
		(m./f.)			side)
برنيل	jarnail	general (in	بائيں ہاتھ پر	bāen hāth	on the left
		the army)	, ,	par	(hand
		(m.)		pui	side)
13.3	faujī	soldier,	41.44	inšallāh	
O.	rauji		الاعالا	msanan	'if Allah
		military			wills'
		person			
		(m.)			

#### gavā'id Grammar قراعد

UNIT 9

#### ج hijje Spelling

. 'inšallāh 'if Allah wills', أشاءالله bismillāh 'in the name of Allah'.

The word ill i

Another very common Arabic expression is איל bismillāh 'in the name of Allah', which is used before embarking upon any enterprise, even eating. It is composed of three Arabic words: ש bi 'in', ר! ismi 'name' and ש 'Allah'. Note how the vowels coalesce: bi ismi allāh ש bismillāh ש bismillāh ש bismillāh aren 'let's do bismillāh'.

See if you can work out the reason for the spelling of the Arabic phrase:

لا الله الا الله

lā ilāhá illā allāh

'not god except the God' There is no god except Allah

This Islamic profession of faith is found written almost everywhere—over the door of a house, in buses, taxis and so on. It is composed of the following Arabic words:

 $\,^{\parallel}\,$   $l\bar{a}$  (also written א') no, not;  $l\bar{a}$   $l\bar{a}$   $l\bar{a}$  ( $l\bar{a}$ ) ייי  $l\bar{a}$   $l\bar{a}$   $l\bar{a}$   $l\bar{a}$ . With the Arabic form of  $l\bar{a}$  it would be: אני נאל נע ליי  $l\bar{a}$ 

### tថ្ល**ុំ pahuncānā** 'to take (someone) to'

ہم آپ کو اعمیشن تک پہنچائیں گے

ham āp ko istešan tak pahuncāenge We'll take you ('cause you to arrive') to the station

יוֵט, dāyān 'right'; יוֵנ bāyān 'left'

The adjectives الله dāyān 'right' and الله bāyān 'left' form their plural and oblique in the same way as 121 acchā, but have nasalised final vowels.

dāīṅ دائيل

Masculinesingular Masculine singular/oblique plural פואַט dāyān uu bāyān bāen باكي dāen واغي

Feminine

bāīn بائي

The word # hath 'hand' is often added to these adjectives:

dāyān hāth دایال با تھ the right (hand) dāen hāth par on the right

bāen hāth kī taraf towards the left بائي ہاتھ کی طرف

The compound postposition کی طرف kī taraf means 'towards', 'in the direc-

I'm going in the direction of Mall Road میں مال روؤ کی طرف جارہا ہوں I am coming to you سی آپ کی طرف آرماہوں

### Going to a place

We know now that when you go to a place, no postposition is required. In such sentences, however, the noun denoting the place is considered to be in the oblique. With a noun such as this does not show, but if the place name ends in 1 - ā or 3 - a, e.g. this does not show, but if the place name ends in 1 - ā or 3 - a, e.g. this kalkatta Calcutta, I of dhāka Dacca (the capital of Bangladesh) or 1 ft agrā Agra (the city of the Taj Mahal), then the endign must observe to ablity. then the ending must change to oblique:

میں کلکتے / ڈھاک / آگرے جا رہا ہوں

main kalkatte/dhāke/āgre jā rahā hūn

I am going to Calcutta/Dacca/Agra

If an adjective such as الميان عبرا baṛā or الميان عبرا merā, us kā, āp kā precedes the noun or place name, then it too must become oblique:

میں کل شام کو آپ کے گر آؤں گا

main kal šām ko āp ke ghar āūngā I shall come to your house tomorrow evening siqāfat Culture ڤانت

Travelling by train is an excellent way to see any country, and the rail system of India and Pakistan, originally constructed by the British, is among the most extensive in the world. The line from Karachi to Lahore follows the course of the River Indus (יען ביענם daryā-e sind); first crossing the desert via the medieval cities of Hyderabad and Multan and then emerging into the the two Persian words  $\mathcal{E}'$  panj 'five' and  $\mathcal{E}'$   $\bar{a}b$  'waters'. Refreshment is provided on the train or by the ubiquitous  $\bar{a}b$  'waters'. Refreshment is provided on the train or by the ubiquitous old hotels, which date from the time of the Raj, with their extensive accommodation and carefully tended gardens are always preferable to the bland 'Hiltons' and 'Intercontinentals', and offer a glimpse of how life used to be during the time of the British, who, however far they might have been from home, never neglected their own comfort!

darvā-e sind is the Persian term for the Indus, literally 'River of Sind' (the old name for India). [13] daryā 'river' (m.). Note that after 1 -ā, the izāfat -e is written with  $\angle$ .

### mašqen Exercises

#### 9.3 Match question and answer

The following questions relate to the three dialogues of this unit. Match them with the answers given:

والات 1 المیشن کے پلیٹ فارم پر بھیز تھی؟ 2 جان اور تبلین کو پاکستان پند آرہا ہے؟ 3 ہو کل کے منتج کیے آدی تھے۔ وہ مہریان تھے؟ 4 آج کل قام صاحب کیا کر رہے ہیں؟ 5 لاہور تنتیج کے بعد جان اور تبلین بہت تھے تھے؟ 6 عام طور سے پاکستان میں بٹنے کو چھٹی ہوتی ہے؟ 7 سامین کے میں سے دیا ہے اور شاندار رائے کا نام کا مام

7 لاہور کے سب سے بوے اور ثاندار رائے کا نام کیا ہے؟

TEACH YOURSELF URDU	
جواب 1 انبیں پاکتان بہت پیند آ رہا ہے۔ 2 کی بال' وہ کافی تھے تھے۔	الماثندار ہوئل ہے!  What a splendid hotel
2 کی بال وہ 60 ہے ہے۔ 3 لاہور کے سب سے بوئے رائے کا نام مال روڈ ہے۔ 4 کی بال بفتہ کو مچھٹی ہوتی ہے۔ 5 کی بال ، بہت بدی بحیثر تھی۔	a opicinala notei:
6 وہ بہت مہریان تھے۔ 7 لاہور میں کاروبار کر رہے ہیں۔	In this unit you will learn how to:  ask permission and make requests
9.4 Complete the sentences	say that you are able
Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verb indicated in brackets:	<ul> <li>express hunger and thirst</li> <li>talk about the city of Lahore and its history</li> </ul>
(am coming) میں ابھی 1	mukālima ek Dialogue 1
2 قاسم اور ان کے دوست پہلے فوج میں	Qasim and his wife take the Smiths to their hotel.
3 آج شام کو گھر آئے۔ میری بیگم قورمہ (will cook)	قاسم : السلام عليم م جان صاحب كيايل اقدر آسكا بول؟
(get up) 4	کام : احلام یم جان صاحب کیاں امرام معالی ایک ایک ایک ایک ایک ایک ایک ایک ایک ای
(bathe) 5	جائے منگواؤں؟ یہ جو مل کتناشاندارے! ایک کمرہ مبین بلکہ عین کمرے ہیں۔ یہال
(to read) المائح المائ	بیٹھنے کا کمرہ ہے اور وہاں سونے کا کمرہ۔ پیخیے ایک بہت بڑا عسل خانہ بھی ہے۔
7 اب بھائی۔ ادھر آئی۔ مینع 7	قاسم : اور بتائے 'کل آپ کادن کیساتھا؟ میرے خیال سے سفر کے بعد آپ لوگ بہت تھے تھے۔
ر النظم کو میں شیروزن (shall look at)	حان 📑 جی ماں۔ بس ہم دن بحر ہوئل میں تھے۔ سامنے ایک بہت خوبصورت باغیجہ ہے۔ ہرطرح
	كاآرام بـ اور موسم كتاا چهاب الاجوريس كرا في يم مقابله مين زياده مردى بنا؟
	قاسم : جي بال ينجاب مين نومبر ت ميني مين زياده سردي بوتي ب- لين دن بحر دهوب بوتي
9.5 Comparisons	ہے۔ توآپ تائے۔ ہم آج کیا کریں؟ کیا باہر جائیں؟
The following sentences suggest comparisons. Complete them by choosing an adjective from the following: پراتا مرے دارا تھویا کریا دارا تھویا کیا مرے دارا تھویا کیا ایس	جان : اگرائی کو فرمت ہو تو ہم لاہور کی سیر کر منتیں گے۔ کیا آپ ہمیں سب سے اہم سوکیں اور عمارتیں دکھا منتیں گے؟
1 کراچی لاہور سے ہے۔ لیکن لاہور زیادہ ہے۔	قاسم : بى بال بەزى خوقتى ھے۔ اگر آپ جھے بير جائيں كەر آپ خاص طور پر كياد كيننا چاھ جايں' تومين آپ كود كھاؤں گا۔
2 حامد اور اقبال اسلم تے بیٹے ہیں۔ اقبال حامد سے ہے۔	جان : میرے خیال ہے ہم بادشاہی مجدے شروع کریں۔ کہتے ہیں کہ بادشاہی مجدد نیا کی
3 میرے خیال سے بریانی بلاؤ سے نیادہ	سب ہوی مجد ہے تا؟
4 عربی زبان اُردو سے زیادہ ہے- 5 رحیم صاحب غریب نہیں میں لیکن قاسم صاحب ان سے ہیں-	ب سے بڑی موجہ نے نا؟ قاسم: مجھے یقین نہیں ہے، گین سب بڑی موجدوں میں سے ایک ہوگی۔ کم سے کم د ملی ک
5 رقیم صاحب غریب نہیں ہیں لکین قاسم صاحب ان سے ہیں-	جامع محدے بری ہے۔ میک ہے، جلدی جائے پیسی اور چلیں۔

	andar	inside, in	اگر۔ ہو	agar ho	if it is
آسلناہوں	ā saktā hūn	can I come?	کی سیر کرنا	kī sair karnā	to go around.
سكنا	saknā	to be able	as Velisi		visit
حإئے متكواؤل	cāe maṅgvāūṅ	shall I order tea?	سژک د کھا عکیں	saŗak dikhā	street (f.) can you
بكه	balki	but, even		saken	show?
بيضنے كاكمره	baiṭhne kā kamra	sitting room(m.)		baṛī xušī se	with great pleasure
	sonā sone kā	to sleep	اگر آپ بتائيں		if you
07029	kamra	bedroom (m.)	حابثا	batāen cāhnā	show to want.
<del>2</del>	pīche	behind			love
م حانه	ğusal-xāna	bathroom (m.)	وكجيناحا يجتهي	dekhnā cāhte hain	you want to see
دن مجر	din bhar	all day long	بادشاءی مسجد	bādšāhī masjid	The Badshahi
	sāmne	in front		gc	Mosque
باعجه	bāğīca	garden (m.)			(in Lahore)
کے مقابلہ میں	muqābile	compared to	40	masjid	mosque (f.)
	men dhūp	overskie -		šūrū' karnā	to begin
روپ	шир	sunshine (f.)	سر وح کریں جامع مسجد		let's begin The Jami'
كياكرين؟	kyā karen	what to	-, 0,	masjid	Mosque (in Delhi)
باہر جائیں؟	bāhar jāen	shall we go			(f.)

### وَاعر أَوْ qavā'id Grammar

#### saknā to be able

The verb L saknā 'to be able' is always used with the stem of another verb and can never stand by itself:

שיי אינע main kar saktā hūn I can/am able to do ham ā sakte hain We can come

ham jā sakenge We shall be able to go كيا آپ ميرے لئے ايك كام كر كتے ہيں؟ جي بال ميں كر سكتا موں kyā āp mere lie ek kām kar sakte hain? jī hān, main kar saktā hūn Can you do a job for me? Yes, I can

### Subjunctive mood

UNIT 10

As well as having tenses (present, past, future), a verb is also said to have 'moods'. For example, the imperative (the form of the verb which makes commands) – go!, be!, do! – is known as a mood. Possibility, probability and doubt – 'I may do, I might do, if I were to do', etc. – are expressed by what is called the subjunctive mood.

The Urdu subjunctive is formed by adding the following endings to the stem:

It is in fact the same as the future tense without the suffixes.: I ' $\mathcal{L}$ '  $\mathcal{L}$ The subjunctive indicates person and number but makes no distinction for

يس كرول	main karūn	I (m./f.) may do
ده کرے	vuh kare	he, she, it may do
تمكرو	tum karo	you (m./f.) may do
U.S.	vuh karen	they (m./f.) may d

The subjunctive of ts is as follows:

ميس كرون	main karūn	I may do
توكر ب	tū kare	you may do
ي دوكي	yih, vuh kare	he, she, it may do
يم كري	ham karen	we may do
تمكرو	tum karo	you may do
آپ کریں	āp karen	you may do
U 500' ~	yih, vuh karen	they may do

The subjunctive of ts is slightly irregular:

yih, vuh hoń

של main hūn I may be 47 tū ho you may be يے 'وہ ہو yih, vuh ho he, she, it may be بميول ham hoṅ we may be 37 tum ho you may be āp hoṅ you may be

#### Use of the subjunctive

The subjunctive has various uses. Here are some of the most important.

they may be

### Let us do! Shall/may we do?

چلیں' ہم چائے تھے۔ calen, ham cāe pīen

Come on, let's have tea ('let us go, let us drink tea')

كيا من اندر آسكول؟

kyā main andar ā sakūn?

May I come in(side)?

كيابيس آپ كى كتاب برمون؟

kyā main āp kī kitāb paṇhūn?

May I read your book?

آج شام کو ایک ظلم دیکھیں؟ 2 نید ادار اور ساتھ مار میں ا

āj šām ko ek film dekhen? Shall we see a film this evening?

#### In 'if' ('conditional') sentences

In the sentence 'if you come with me, I shall show you the city', the condition 'if' is said to be 'open', because it is not certain whether you will come or not. In Urdu, the verb 'come' is put into the subjunctive. The second part of the sentence is introduced by  $\vec{J}$  to 'then':

agar āp mere sāth āen, to main āp ko šahr dikhāūngā If you come with me (then) I shall show you the city اگر آپ کو فرصت ہو تو ہم لاہور کی بیر کریں مے

agar āp ko fursat ho, to ham lāhaur kī sair karenge
If you (should) have the time, (then) we'll walk around Lahore

sair means 'a stroll, a walk, going around, visit' (f.). The phrase verb

kī sair karnā can be translated as 'to stroll around, to visit':

ہم آج کل پاکستان کی سیر کر رہے ہیں

ham āj kal pākistān kī sair kar rahe hain

These days we're visiting/touring Pakistan

کل میج ہم بادشاہی مجد کی سر کریں کے

kal subh ham bādšāhī masjid kī sair karenge Tomorrow morning we'll visit/take a trip to the Badshahi Mosque

#### Negative of the subjunctive

UNIT 10

The subjunctive always forms its negative with a na:

اگر سردی نہ ہو تو ہم سمندر کے پاس جائی سے

agar sardī na ho, to ham samandar ke pās jāenge If it's not cold, then we'll go to the seaside

na sirf ... balki 'not only but also' ندمرف بلك ; balki 'but'; بلك

لم balki means 'but' in the sense of 'even', 'not only but also':

مارے ہوٹل میں ایک کرہ نہیں بلکہ تین کرے ہیں

hamāre, hotal men ek kamra nahīn balki tīn kamre hain In our hotel there is not just one (but) there are three rooms

#### \* bhar 'all through, all over'

bhar following the word to which it refers, means 'all through, all over':

all through the night

all day long دن مجر

all over the world

all over the city شرير

#### ke muqābile men 'in comparison with'

like = 'than' can also be used to make comparisons:

کراچی کے مقابلے میں وبلی میں زیادہ گری ہوتی ہے

karācī ke muqābile men dihlī men ziyāda garmī hotī hai In comparison with Karachi it is (usually) hotter in Delhi

ميرا كام نو بج شروع موتا ب

merā kām nau baje šurū' hotā hai My work begins (usually) at nine o'clock

جلدی کرو۔ قلم انجی شروع ہو رہی ہے

jaldī karo! film abhī šurū' ho rahī hai Hurry up! The film's starting

עניש sūraj 'the sun' (m.) ישניש dhūp 'sunshine' (f.). (ניש is the sun itself; (99) is 'sunshine'):

سورج پائی بج افتا ہے اور چھے بج ڈوبتا ہے

sūraj pāńc baje uțhtā hai aur che baje dūbtā hai The sun rises at five and sets at six

نومبر میں دن بھر دھوپ ہوتی ہے

navambar men din bhar dhūp hotī hai In November it's sunny (there's sunshine) all day long

'To sunbathe' is اوهوپ کمانا 'to eat (!) sun':

پاکتان میں عام طور پر لوگ ساحل سمندر پر دھوپ نہیں کھاتے

pākistān men 'ām taur par log sāhil-e samandar par dhūp nahīn khāte In Pakistan people do not usually sunbathe on the beach

េ្ស cāhnā 'to want, wish, love'

The verb  $\[ \[ \] \]_{\tau} \downarrow_{\nu}$ , to which  $\[ \] \downarrow_{\nu} \downarrow_{\nu}$  is related, means 'to want': " $\[ \] \[ \] \[ \] \[ \] \[ \] \downarrow_{\nu} \downarrow$ 

It may be used with the infinitive meaning 'to want/wish to do':

I want to go to Lahore

سے ری بٹی مواہتی ہے My daughter wishes to sleep

totegin' šurū' karnā, šurū' honā 'to begin'

رُوع مَا surū' is a noun meaning 'beginning' (m.). The phrase verb المروع ألم المراقبة šurū' karnā means 'to begin (something)'; with the infinitive it means 'to begin to do, start doing':

ہم اب کام شروع کریں کے

ham ab kām šurū' karenge

we'll begin work now

بادشای مجدے شروع کریں

bādšāhī masjid se šurū' karen

Let's start with the Badshahi Mosque

mukālima do Dialogue 2 Qasim shows John and Helen around the old city of Lahore.

جان : اچھا توبد بادشانی مجد ہے۔واقعی بہت وسیع مجد ہے۔ قاسم صاحب بتائے۔ یہ کس کی

9-15

قاسم : بد اورنگ زیب کی مجد ب آپ کویاد ہوگا کہ اورنگ زیب شاہ جہال کے صاحب زادے تھے۔ اور شاہ جہال کی سب سے مشہور عمارت تاج محل ہے۔ تاج محل آگرے میں ہے۔ دودونوں مثل بادشاہ تھے اور مفلول کے زمانے میں تمین شمر ' ایسٹی لا بور ' و ملی اور آگرہ' مب سے ایم پائے تخت تھے۔

جان : كيابم اندرجا كتي بير؟

قاسم : ضرور كوئي مشكل نهيل - أكر آپ كي بيكم سر پر جادر يا اسكارف پېنيل تواجيها بوگا-

جان : اس کامطلب یہ ہے کہ خواتین مجد میں داخل ہو سکتی ہیں؟

قاسم : كول نبير؟ إسلام ك اعتبار س انسان برابر بين و ولي وروازه وبال ب

جیلن : کتی شاندار مبدے اوبال آٹھ اونچے بینار ہیں اور ٹنن سفید گبد۔ دیواروں کارنگ لال ہے۔ اور کتناصاف شخر اے الیکن یہال بہت کم لوگ ہیں۔

قاسم : بى بال الكين نمازك وقت بهت بيزى بيميز موگ يهال ايك ادى آدى نماز پڑھ كتے ہيں۔

ا بن ایس ایس ایس می میری میرود و بیان اید او اوی مراز پڑھ سے ہیں۔ بیلن : کیاش ایک تھور کھنے میں میں میں ہوں؟ قاسم : ضرور کیان یہال ہے مت مینی سورج آپ کے سامنے ہے۔ اگر آپ اس طرف جائی تواجی تھور کے گ

## qavā'id Grammar قراعد

#### 🚑 hijje Spelling

Note the spelling of المالية المالية

### sāhibzāda 'son'; صاجزادي sāhibzādī 'daughter'

UNIT 10

The Persian suffix sij  $z\bar{a}da$  (f. U)  $z\bar{a}d\bar{a}$ ) means 'born of'.  $z\bar{a}d\bar{b}$  hence 'son'; its feminine counterpart is 'daughter'. These words are frequently used in polite conversation:

و کیا آپ کے صاجزادے بھی تشریف لائی مے؟

kyā āp ke sāhibzāde bhī tašrīf lāenge? Will your son (plural of respect) be coming as well?

### xavātīn 'ladies'; broken 'Arabic' plurals

We have already met the word المولى xātūn, a polite word for 'lady'. The plurāl is عَرَاتُي xavātīn, which is its normal Arabic plural form.

Arabic forms plurals by altering the internal structure of the word. These are known as 'broken plurals', many of which have been taken into Urdu from Arabic.

The main letters of the word  $x\bar{a}t\bar{u}n$  are  $\dot{C}$  x, = t,  $\upsilon$  n. The plural is formed by keeping the main letters in their original order, but by changing the vowels:

XāTūN; XavāTīN. Another common example is مطبون mazmūn 'subject'; مطباش mazmūn 'subjects' (main letters MZMN). Broken plurals are best learnt separately as they are encountered. Broken plurals do not take case endings:

\*xavātīn ko batāīe 'tell the ladies

### ts ಲೇ) ದೇ men dāxil honā 'to enter'

ניל dāxil means 'entering'. The phrase verb לי אני dāxil means 'to enter (into)' ('to be entering'):

خواتین مجد میں داخل ہو سکتی ہیں

xavātīn masjid men dāxil ho saktī hain Ladies can enter a mosque

### mukālimatīn Dialogue3

Qasim takes the Smiths to Anarkali Bazaar, and starts feeling hungry.
ہیلن : بادشانل معجد واقعی بہت خویصورت تھی اور اس علاقے کی سرم کیس کتنی ولیپ ہیں!
معلوم ہو تاہے کہ ہم الف لیلا کی کہانیال وکچہ رہے ہیں۔اگر میں آ تکھیں بند کروں تو پر اتا
بغداد نظر آتا ہے۔

	San I San Market	Samuel Control			
معلوم ہوتا ہے	hotā hai	Anarkali Bazaar (f. it seems	گانا گانے والاروالی ( ناچنا	gānevālā, -vālī	to sing singer (m./f.) to dance
الف ليلا	alf lailā	the Arab-	نا چنے والاروالی	nācnevālā, -vālī	dancer (m./f.)
کیانی	kahānī āṅkh	(m.) story (f.)	اداس قبر	udäs qabr	sad grave,
بندكرنا	band karnā	eye (f.) to close, shut		qil'a	tomb (f.) fort (m.)
بغداد	bağdād	Baghdad	پیدل کوپار کرنا	paidal ko pār	on foot to cross
کہنا مختلف آگے		(m.) to say different forward,	202220	karnā bhūk piyās	hunger (f.) thirst (f.)
	āge calen	on(wards) let's go on poor, miserable	ہے ندیم	bhūk/ piyās hai qadīm	I feel hungry/ thirsty ancient love (f.)

UNIT 10

167

se to be in عرجت بوئا muhabbat love with honā

šauq شوق

fondness, interest (m.)

### وَاعِد وَ qavā'id Grammar

(mujhe) ma'lūm hotā hai 'it seems (to me)'

mujhe ma'lūm hotā hai 'it seems to me' must not be confused with معرا mujhe ma'lūm hai 'I know':

مجھے معلوم ہوتا ہے کہ کل موسم اچھا ہوگا

mujhe ma'lūm hotā hai ki kal mausam acchā hogā It seems to me that the weather will be fine tomorrow

The phrase can be translated into English as 'I think that':

یجے معلوم ہوتا ہے کہ وہ ہما رے ہا نظیمی آئیں گے I think that he will not come to our place

### alf lailā The Arabian Nights

The Arabic word علم الله alf means 'one thousand'; الله laila means 'night(s)'.

The full Arabic title of the famous work, composed in Baghdad in the 14th and 15th centuries, is الفسلااوليا alf laila va laila 'One Thousand Nights and (one) Night'.

#### More uses of the suffix ", -vālā

Added to the oblique infinitive, the suffix  $^{IJ_9}$  vala (f.  $U_9$  valt) expresses someone who performs the action:

th năcnă 'to dance' by năcnevăli 'dancer/dancing girl'
th gănă 'to sing' by gănevălă 'singer'

It can also mean 'about to do, going to do' something:

میں لا ہور جانے والا ہوں

main lähaur jänevälä hün

I'm about to go Lahore

bilqīs sāhiba, āp kyā karnevālī hain? What are you going to do, Bilqis?

لاہور جانے والی گاڑی Iāhaur jānevālī gāṛī A train bound for Lahore

#### t / ko pār karnā 'to cross over'

The object of the phrase verb the pār karnā 'to cross' takes ho:

#### muhabbat 'love'

The word יאָבי muhabbat (more correctly pronounced mahabbat) means 'love' (f.). The phrase verb איב בי איב ער איב בי se muhabbat kamā ('to do love from') means 'to be in love with', 'to love'. The words יאר איב איב ער איב איב איב ער איב איב ער איב איב ער איב איב איב ער איב איב איב ער איב איב ער איב איב ער איב איב איב ער איב ער איב איב ער איב

may also be used with عبت

محے تھے ے محت ہے

mujhe tujh se muhabbat hai I love you ('to me from you is love')

نگھے اس فوبصورت شہر ہے مجت ہے mujhe is xūbsūrat šahr se muhabbat hai

I love this beautiful city

المِنْ bhūk 'hunger' (f.); المِنْ piyās 'thirst' (f.)

'I am hungry/thirsty' is expressed in Urdu as:

#### šauq 'fondness', 'great interest' څوق

يَّتُ šauq means 'fondness for', 'great interest in' (m.). The construction in which it is used is the same as that of جَرُّ dilcaspī.

آپ کو موسیقی سے شوق ہے؟

āp ko mūsīqī se šauq hai?

Are you fond of music? (to you is there fondness ...?)

mūsīqī 'music' (f.)

#### anārklī اناركلي

UNIT 10

Fig. (At anār 'pomegranate' (m.), F kalī 'bud' (f.) is the name of one of Lahore's most famous bazaars. It is called after Anarkali, who was a dancing girl in the Emperor Akbar's harem (\$\rho^2\$ haram 'private enclosure'). When Akbar's son, Jahangir fell in love with her, the poor girl was walled up alive in the Lahore Fort.

#### siqāfat Culture أثانت

Lahore, the favourite residence of Emperor Jahangir, is one of the most impressive cities of Pakistan. In the 17th century, along with Delhi and Agra, it had great political and cultural importance, a reputation which it still enjoys. Its finest building is undoubtedly the Badshahi Mosque, built by Aurangzeb in 1674, one of the largest and grandest mosques in the world. But its old bazaars and modern thoroughfares, like the British-built Mall, offer many attractions to visitors. In Pakistan, mosques may be visited by anyone. All that is required is a certain sobriety in dress, and ladies are asked to wear a headscarf. There is usually no restriction on photography, but it is always polite to ask. The language of Lahore is Panjabi, but, as almost everywhere in Pakistan, everyone speaks Urdu as well as their mother tongue.

The rulers of the Mughal ("" mugal) dynasty of India, whose presence you can hardly escape when visiting the subcontinent, ruled mainly from Delhi between 1525 and 1857. Lahore and Agra, the city of the Taj Mahal, also served as their capitals at various times, They claimed their descent from the Mongol dynasties of Genghis Khan ("" cingīz xān) and Tamberlane ("" taimur), and chose grand Persian titles for themselves.

The first six Mughals, whose names you will repeatedly hear, were 24 Bābur (1526-30), the founder of the dynasty; 04 Humāyūn (1530-56)

(tomb in Delhi); اکم Akbar 'Greatest' (1556–1605) (tomb near Agra); المجالي Jahangir 'World Conqueror' (1605–26) (tomb near Lahore); المنافري Shahjahan 'King of the World' (1626–66) (tomb in the Taj Mahal at Agra) and المنافري Aurangzeb 'Adorning the Crown' (1666–1707) (grave near Aurangabad, Central India).

## mašqeh Exercises

You go to a travel agency in Lahore. Take your part in the following

Say that you want to go by train to Islamabad next Thursday : You

اچھاآپ صحیادو پہر کے بعد جانا جائے ہیں؟

Ask at what time the train departs from Lahore and arrives in : You Islamabad

منے کی گاڑی لا ہورے 9 بجے روانہ ہوتی ہے اور اا بجے پینچی ہے Ask if you can easily get a hotel, and how much it will be for : You

جی ہاں۔ کوئی مشکل نہیں۔ ایک رات ٠٠ سارو یے ہوں گے

Ask what the most interesting things in Islamabad are : You

وہاں دنیا کی سب سے بری مجدے۔آپ وہاں سے کب واپس آئیں گے؟

Say that you have to come back to Lahore on Sunday, because : You next week you are going by air to Delhi

#### 10.2 Complete the sentences

Complete the sentences with one of the verbs or verbal phrases given in the

UNIT 10

4 عام طور سے نومبر میں دھوپ 

# 10.3 آپ کو پاکستان کے بارے ٹیں کیا معلوم ہے؟ What do you know about Pakistan?

During their stay in Pakistan, John and Helen have learnt a lot about the country. Read the questions out loud and say whether their anwers are true or false:

1 پاکستان کا دارالکومت کیا ہے؟ 2 پاکستان میں لوگوں کو ساحلِ سمندر پر دھوپ کھانا پہند ہے؟

3 لاہور کہاں ہے؟ 4 خواتین مجد میں داخل ہو سکتی ہیں؟

5 جہانگیر اکثر بخاب میں تھے 6 عام طور سے پاکستانی اردو بول کتے ہیں؟

7 لاہور کراچی سے بہت پرانا شہر ہے؟

1 پاکستان کا دارالحکومت لاہورہے

2 جي بال' ان کو دهوپ کھانا بہت پند ہے

2 لاہور ہنجاب میں ہے۔ 4 خواتمین معبد میں واطل نہیں ہو سمتی ہیں 5 کی ہاں وہ اکثر ہنجاب میں تھے

6 پاکتانی صرف بنجابی بول کتے ہیں 7 کی ہاں لاہور کراچی سے پرانا ہے

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say what you used to do and were doing
- talk about the weather
- say the points of the compass
- express dates in other ways

### mukalīma ek Dialogue 1 کالہ ایک

Qasim proposes a visit to his village in the Panjab countryside.

قاسم : كيول جان صاحب آپ يهال اكيلي بين ؟ بيلن صاحب نبيل بين كيا؟ ا یون این میں میں سوری براقع کہ میں واقع کے بیان ایس صاحبہ میں این کیا؟ جان : کی بال میں سوری براقع کہ میں دو تمین مخط کھوں گا۔ آن جی جیری پیگم النار کی شن گھوم رسی بیر رو وہ و کل کے میٹیم کے ساتھ کہ کرے تربیدر دی بیرا۔ یہ کروا تا آرامدہ ہے کہ میں سوجی رہا تھا کہ میں اپنی بیوی کی غیر موجود گی ہے پورا فائد واٹھا دک گا۔ میں بازارول سے بہت ڈر تا ہول۔

قاس : كى بال- بىلن صاحبه جھ سے كبدرى تھيں كد آپ كودكانوں بيل گھومنا پيند نہيں ہے۔

جان : يوجى ب-كيامين جائ منكواؤن؟

بان مند میں میں بیات کے میں اور باتیں کریں۔ جان صاحب میں سوج رہا تھا کہ چو کلہ آپ لوگ لا بور میں ہیں و ہیں آپ کو اپنا گاؤں دکھاؤں گا۔ میرا گاؤں شیخو پورہ کی طرف ہے۔ کئین میں وہاں بتاتھا۔ تھے کئین بیشیاد آتا ہے۔

جان : اچھا۔ آپ گاؤل کے رہنے والے ہیں؟

یاں قام : ٹی بال اُکٹر پاکستانی گاؤں میں رہتے ہیں اور ہمارا بھیپنی کتابا چھا تھا۔ ہم کمیتوں میں کھیلتے تنے 'اچھے ہے اچھا کھا کھاتے تھے۔ اُس زیانے میں سب پکھ اچھا ہو تا تھا۔ ممکن ہے کہ ہم پر سول چلیں۔ ہمارا گاؤں زیادہ دور نہیں ہے۔

جان : اچھا ، ہم جائے کا اتظام ضرور کریں گے۔ بتائے ، قاسم صاحب 'آپ لوگ کل شام کو کیا کررہ تھے ؟ آپ کا ٹیلیفوں نگر ہاتھا۔ معلوم ہو تا تقاکد آپ گھر ہمیں تھے۔

قام : جی باں۔ ہم ایک مختل میں تھے۔ میری بیگم دہاں گار دی تھیں۔ جان : انچیا۔ آپ کی تیم گائی ہیں؟ قام : جی بان محکم کھر ہاتھے ادر سنھے۔

					, ,
	apnā gāon	my own village	ربتاتها	rahtā thā	I used to live
	akelā soc rahā	(m.) alone I was	کھیت کھیلتے تھے	khet khelte the	field (m.) we used to play
فيط	thā xat ghūmnā	thinking letter (m.)		acche se achhā	the very best
1000		to stroll, go round		khāte the	we used to eat
	kapṛe	(m.p.)		mumkin hai ki	it's pos- sible that
ا پی بیوی	xarīdnā apnī bīvī	to buy my own wife	پرسول	parson	the day after tomorrow
غيرموجودگ	ğair maujūdagī	absence (f.)	کاا نظام کرنا	kā intizām karnā	to arrange
ۇر <b>ن</b> ا	darnā	to fear, be afraid of	كردب	kar rahe the	were you doing?
ے ڈرتے ہیں	hain	you are afraid of		bajnā baj rahā	to ring was
ہے ہاتیں کرنا ہ	se bāten karnā šaixūpūra	to chat to	معلوم ہوتاتھا	thā ma'lūm	ringing it seemed
مسيحو بإرا	šaixūpūra	Shaikhpu- ra (town	محفل محفل بند	hotā thā mahfil	party (f.)
		near Lahore)	گا ر ہی تھیں	gā rahī thīṅ	she was singing

### qavā'id Grammar قراعد

Past habitual and past continuous tenses: 'I used to do, I was

The past tense counterparts of the present habitual and present continuous are known as the past habitual 'I used to do (once upon a time)' and the past

UNIT 11

continuous 'I was doing'. They are formed by substituting the past tense of  $t_{\mathcal{F}}$  for the present:

يس كرتا يول	main kartā hūn	I (m.) do	
ميس كرنا تفا	main kartā thā	I (m.) used to do	
ميس كرربا مول	main kar rahā hūn	I (m.) am doing	
ميس كرربا تفا	main kar rahā thā	I (m.) was doing	

The past habitual and past continuous of  $t \mathcal{I}$  are, respectively, as follows:

	Masculine		Feminine	
ميس كر تاتفا	main kartā thā	کرتی تھی	kartī thī	I used to do
توكر تاتفا	tü kartā thā	کرتی تھی	kartī thī	you used to do
يه وه كرتاتها	yih, vuh kartā thā	کرتی تھی	kartī thī	he, she, it used to do
37/5	ham karte the	EZ5	karte the	we used to do
EZ57	tum karte the	کرتی تھیں	kartī thīṅ	you used to do
آپارتے	āp karte the	کرتی تھیں	kartī thīn	you used to do
يه 'ده کرتے تھے	yih, vuh karte the	الرتى تنحين	kartī thīṅ	they used to do

#### Masculine

میں کررہا تھا	main kar rahā thā	I was doing
تؤكردها تقا	tū kar rahā thā	you were doing
يي وه كرربا تفا	yih, vuh kar rahā thā	he, it was doing
بم كرد ہے تے	ham kar rahe the	we were doing
きょうちゃ	tum kar rahe the	you were doing
آپ کردے تھے	āp kar rahe the	you were doing
يه وه كررې تق	yih, vuh kar rahe the	they were doing

#### Feminine

main kar rahī thī I was doing شي كردي تحى tū kar rahī thī you were doing
tū kar rahī thī vou were doing
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
yih, vuh kar rahī thī she, it was doin
ham kar rahe the we were doing
tum kar rahī thīn you were doing
āp kar rahī thīn you were doing
yih, vuh kar rahī thīn they were doin

The negative is formed by placing 'nahīn before the verb:

English tends to be rather imprecise in the use of its tenses, and 'I didn't work' can mean either 'I did not work at one particular time' or 'I used not to work'. Urdu is very precise, and when English 'I did' implies I 'used to do', the past habitual must always be used.

The past habitual and past continuous are used in much the same way as their English counterparts:

يل سوچ رہا تھا كه يل دو تين خط لكھول گا

I thought ('was thinking') that I would write a couple of letters

In the last sentence note the use of the future tense in the second part of the sentence, where the words are reported in the form in which they were originally expressed. In Urdu you say: 'I was thinking that 'I will write a couple of letters''. In English, however 'will' changes to 'would' to match the past tense used in the first part of the sentence:

vuh kah rahe the ki vuh do baje āenge He was saying that he would ('will') come at two

#### ₩ kahnā 'to say, tell'

The verb t,  $kahn\bar{a}$  means 'to say'. In Urdu when you say something to someone, 'to' is expressed by  $\angle$ . Note 'to say to' is usually 'to tell' in English:

وہ مجھ سے کہ رہی تھیں کہ آپ کو بازار پند تہیں ہے

She was telling ('saying to') me that you don't like the bazaar

آپ جھ سے کہ رہے تھے کہ آپ لاہور جائیں گے You were telling me that you would ('will') go to Lahore

#### ६। apnā 'one's own'

In English 'he was going out with his wife' can mean with his own wife, or with someone else's wife. In Urdu, when the possessive adjective ('my, you, his, their', etc.) refers to the subject of the sentence: 'I read my book; she combs her hair' where I and my, she and her are the same person, the possessive adjective & apnā 'one's own' must be used for all persons:

مين افي كتاب يره ربا تفا

main apnī kitāb parh rahā thā

I was reading my (own) book

وہ اپنی بوی کے ساتھ پاکستان جا رہا تھا

He was going to Pakistan with his (own) wife

The sentence الله على المح المرابع would mean he was going with his (i.e.

# ب bāt 'matter'; الآرة ع se bāten karnā 'to chat to'

அ means 'thing' in the sense of 'matter, affair'. ஜ cīzis a tangible thing.

المادة والمادة والمادة المادة المادة

It's no matter/it doesn't matter

('it's good thing') Very well

میں ابھی چا ہوں۔ پانچ بج واپس آؤل گا۔ اچھی بات ہے

I'm going now. I'll be back at five. Very well

بچوں کی چزیں ہر جگہ بھری پڑی ہیں

The children's things are scattered everywhere

may also mean 'something said', 'a word':

أس آدى كى بات من تبيل معلوم موتى ہے

person doesn't seem to be telling the truth ('his word does not seem true')

The phrase verb t size means 'converse/chat with':

UNIT 11

He was chatting with me

Come and sit down; we'll have a chat

acche se acchā 'the very best'

The phrase ( 'better than good' means 'the very best':

گاؤں میں اچھے سے اچھا کھانا کھاتے تھے

In the village we used to get the very best of food

'mumkin hai ki'it is possible that مکن ہے کہ

ممکن ہے کہ کل موسم اچھا ہو

It is possible that the weather will ('may') be fine tomorrow

مكن بركه وه آج نه آئے

It is possible that he might not come today

kal and المر parson

means both 'yesterday' and 'tomorrow'. Similarly Ury can mean 'the day before yesterday' and 'the day after tomorrow'. The tense of the verb decides the meaning:

میں کل/ پرسوں آپ کے بال آؤل گا

I'll come to your place tomorrow/the day after tomorrow

میں کل/ پرسوں ان سے باتیں کر رہا تھا

I was chatting to him yesterday/the day before yesterday

イピー intizām 'arrangement'; いんぱー intizām karnā 'to arrange'

ार्माद्रवेता means 'arrangement' (m.) It has a special Arabic plural form intizāmāt'arrangements':

آپ قار نه كرين مين سب انظامات كرول گا

āp fikr no karen; main sab intizāmāt karūngā

Don't worry; I'll make all arrangements

بم سر کا انظام کریں کے

We shall arrange the journey

It may also be used with the oblique infinitive:

ہمیں آج پاکتان جانے کا انظام کرنا ہے

hamen āj pākistān jāne kā intizām karnā hai We have to arrange to go to Pakistan today

### mukālima do Dialogue 2

John and Helen drive with Qasim to his village.

قاسم : اللام عليم عليم على جان صاحب ميس بوقت تونهيل مول ،

جان : بی نہیں ، قاسم صاحب ، ہم لوگ تاریں۔ آن موسم بہت اچھا ہے۔ کل رات کو بارش ہوری تھی ' ہے نا؟

قاسم : بی بال مام طور نے نو مبر میں بارش نہیں ہوتی۔ نیر آج انچھی دھوپ کھل رہی ہے۔ آئے ؟ ہم چلیں۔ گاڑی میں تیضے۔

ای : شخو پوره یهاں سے در اس ہے۔
جان : شخو پوره یهاں سے زیادہ دور نمیں۔ ہے ؟؟
قاسم : کی نمیں۔ کوئی چونتیس (۳۳) میل دور ہے۔
مشرق کی طرف ہائیں' توہندوستان کی سرحد آئے گا۔ اگر شخو پورہ سے اے جاش ' تو
آپ اسلام آباد کیچیں گے۔ اس سے آگے پیٹادر اور شال مفرب کی سرحد ہے۔
وہ کائی دور ہے۔ اسلام آباد لاہور سے کوئی ایک سوساتھ میں دور ہے۔

جان : شخو پوره پراناشر ہے؟

قاسم : بن بال سر مویں صدی میں جہا تگیر وہال رہتے تھے۔ اور آس پاس کے جنگل میں شکار کھیلتے تھے۔ ان کا فلحہ اب تک وہال ہے۔

جاك : اورآپكاگاؤل براع؟

قاسم : كافى براكاول بـ مير دشية داراب تك دبال كيتى بازى كرت بين جياك آپكو کان رادوں ہے۔ بیر سے در کے وراب بعد اب سواری کا بدا ہو ہو معلوم ، بنجاب کا مطلب " پانگے دریان کا ملک" ہے۔ زمین مہت زر خیز ہے۔ میرا خاندان اٹھار ہویں صدی ہے دہاں مقیم ہے۔ تقیم ہے پہلے دہاں مسلمان مہدواور سکھ سب ساتھ رہتے تھے۔ لیکن اب صرف مسلمان ہیں۔ جبیماکہ میں آپ سے برسوں

UNIT 11

کہ رہاتھا' دنیا بہت تیزی ہے بدلتی ہے۔ انشاہ اللہ آنے والی صدی میں بہم زیادہ خوش رہ عکیں گے۔ دیکھیے۔ ہمارا گاول پیمال سے نظر آرہا ہے۔ چلیں۔ میں آپ کو اپنے گھروالول سے ملائ گااور ہم خوب کھانا کھائیں گے۔

بوقت	be vaqt	at the wrong	شكار كھيلنا	šikār khelnā	to hunt
		time	تلعه	qil'a	fort (m.)
بارش بارش ہور ہی تھی	bāriš	rain (f.) it was	ر شيخ وار	rište dār	relation (m.)
	rahī thī	raining	تحيتى بازى	khetī bāŗī	agriculture
شال	šimāl	north (m.)			(f.)
	mašriq	east (m.)	-	daryā	river (m.)
7 01	sarhad	border,		zarxez	fertile eighteenth
	-	frontier(f.)		aṭhāravāṅ mugīm	resident.
	āge	further on Peshawar	٠,	muqiiii	settled
بپيشاور	pešāvar	(town in North	تقيم	taqsīm	partition (f.)
		Pakistan)	ہندو	hindū	Hindu(m.)
سر حد شال مغرب	sarhad-e	North	a L	sikh	Sikh (m.)
<i>中</i> ) 0.2)	šimāl mağrib	West Frontier	ž	tez	quick, fast, strong
مغرب	mağrib	west (m.)	تيزى۔	tezī se	quickly
	sāth	sixty		badalnā	to change
	satravān	seven-	آنے والا	ānevālā	the
		teenth			coming,
صدی	sadī	century (f.)			future
الرياس	ās pās kā	surround- ing,	كحروالا	gharvālā	relation (m.)
		nearby	ے مانا	se milānā	to intro-
جگل	jangal	jungle, for-			duce to
	J	est (m.)	لهلتا	khulnā	to open,
Nº	šikār	hunting			come
		(m.)			open

179

#### qavā'id Grammar قواعد 👸

#### hijie **Spelling**

The word ارتحادا rište dār 'relation' is composed of two Persian words: على المناسبة المناسب nse our באבו msie our relation is composed of two reisian words. בא rište 'connections' (m.p.) and או dār 'having'. The two elements are written separately. The Hindi synonym של הוא gharvālā 'person of the house', and it means exactly the same thing: א בא א הוא ישר 'meet my relations'.

#### tאַר bārišhonā 'to rain'

ُكُمْ الْمُورِي bāriš means 'rain' (f.). جرى بالله bāriš ho rahī hai 'rain is being' means 'it is raining'.

The present and past continuous tenses of the china horahā hai and blush horahā thā 'is was/being' can usually be translated into Enlish as 'is/was happening, coming about, going on':

vahān kyā ho rahā hai/thā?

What is/was happening/going on there?

Note the following expressions with  $\dot{\psi}_{ij}$ :

dekhīe, bāriš ho rahī hai; jaldī ghar calen Look, it's raining; let's go home quickly

redīo par kahte hain ki bāriš honevālī hai

They say on the radio that it is likely to rain ('rain is about to be')

barr-e sagīr men jūn se agast tak xūb bāriš hotī hai

In the subcontinent from June until August it rains heavily ('well'): لم فير barr-e sagīr 'continent (izāfat) small' is 'the subcontinent' (m.).

### be vaqt 'out of time', 'at the wrong time'

is a Persian suffix, widely used in Urdu, meaning 'un-, dis-', 'without'. be vaqt means 'untimely, at the wrong time, at an inconvenient moment':

#### میں بے وقت تو نہیں ہوں؟

main be vaqt to nahīn hūn?

Have I come at an inconvenient moment? ('I'm not then at the wrong

### The points of the compass

UNIT 11

The most common words in Urdu for the points of the compass are:

'North east', 'south west' are expressed as in English: جنوب مغرب , ثمال شرق etc. 'Northern, southern, eastern, western' are الله šimālī, المنظمة janūbī, أشرقي mašriqī, مغربي mağribī:

The 'Hindi' equivalents, which are commonly used in Urdu, especially in villages and rural areas, are:

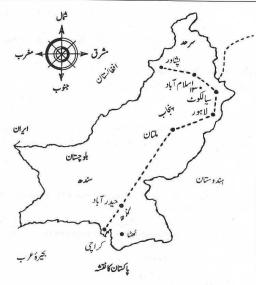
The North West Frontier Province of Pakistan (NWFP), the capital of which is مويه مر مد شل مغرب pešāvar Peshawar, is known as مويه مر مد شل مغرب sūba- e sarhad-e šimāl-maǧrib 'Province of (izāfat) frontier of (izāfat) North West. منبه means 'province', especially one of the four provinces of Pakistan. (Note that after \* the izāfat is written with \* hamza):

Sindh Province

sūba-e balocistān

Balochistan Province Panjab Province

sūba-e panjāb sūba-e sarhad-e šimāl mağrib NWFP



#### Ordinal numerals; more on dates

The simple numerals 'one, two, three', etc. are known as the cardinal numerals. 'First, second, third', etc. are known as ordinal numerals. The Urdu ordinal numerals: 'first, second', etc. are as follows:

پېلا	pahlā	first
100	dūsrā	second
تيرا	tīsrā	third
پوتھا	cauthā	fourth
مانچوال	pāńcvāń	fifth

وجعثا	chaţţā	sixth
ساتوال	sātvān	seventh

UNIT 11

Thereafter the suffix  $\bigcup_{ij}$   $-v\bar{a}n$  (f.  $\bigcup_{ij}$   $-v\bar{n}$ ; m. oblique  $\bigcup_{ij}$  -ven, which can be compared with  $\bigcup_{ij}$   $\bigcup_{ij}$  'right, left') are added to the cardinal numeral. In numbers such as  $s_i \not i$  ' $s_i \not \sim$  which end in  $s_i$  choff he, either  $s_i$  choff he or  $s_i$  do-caš $m\bar{n}$  he is written before the suffix  $\bigcup_{ij}$ :

آ تحوال	āṭhvāṅ	eighth
نؤال	navvān	ninth
وسوال	dasvān	tenth
میار ہوال / گیار حوال	giyāravān	eleventh
سولبوال/سولهوال	solavāń	sixteenth
پچيسوال	paccīsvān	twenty-fifth
طاليسوال	cālīsvāri	fortieth

The feminine and masculine oblique forms  $U_2^*U_2^* - v\bar{n}h/ve\bar{n}$  are spelt in the same way, but, of course, pronounced differently:

The ordinal numerals are frequently used to express the date of the month. We have already seen that '(on) the third of October' can be expressed simply as  $\int z^{\frac{1}{2}} y$ , do aktūbar (ko). A more 'official' (and some would say more correct) version would be:

navambar kī pandravīn tārīx ko on the 15th of November

וֹט יְט i ās pās kā 'nearby', 'surrounding'

ชับ ู้ บ้ is an adjectival phrase meaning 'surrounding, nearby'

اُردو دیلی اور دیلی کے آس پاس کے علاقوں کی زبان ہے

Urdu is the language of Delhi and the nearby areas of Delhi

### جہالگیر آس پاس کے جگل میں شکار کھیلتے تھے

Jahangir used to hunt in the surrounding jungle ﷺ šikār khelnā 'to play hunting' means 'to hunt'.

#### אָלט khetībāṛī 'agriculture'

אלי) איל khetī bāṇī (literally 'field and garden work') means 'agriculture' (f.). The phrase verb איל אַל אַר ' means 'to practise agriculture'.

#### ين daryā 'river' and words for relations

forms its plural and oblique cases as follows:

Masculine singular direct

ريا daryā

Masculine plural direct

ريا daryā

Masculine singular oblique

وريا daryā

Masculine plural oblique

edaryāon درياد

The word  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$   $r\bar{a}j\bar{a}$  'king, Raja' and the relationship terms  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  'uncle' (father's brother),  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$   $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$   $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  'grandfather' (father's father), and the  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$  'grandfather' (mother's father), follow the same pattern:

the king's palace

my uncles' houses

my (paternal) grandfather's name

his (maternal) grandfather's land

the land of five rivers پانچ دریاوں کا ملک

#### ヹ tez 'quick', びヹ tezī 'quickness, speed'

The adjective  $\not\equiv$  can mean fast, quick (speed or intelligence), smart (in a good or bad sense), strong (of tea), hot or spicy (of food):

a fast train

a smart/devious man

غزمات strong tea

hot/spicy food

The noun  $\mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{Z}}$  means 'quickness' and  $\mathcal{G}_{\mathcal{G}}$  means 'quickly, speedily, fast':

The train moves fast

نند تیزی عبد تا ہے Time(s) change quickly

#### " anevālā 'the coming, future'

'about to come' means 'the coming, the next':

آئے والی صدی میں کیا ہوگا؟

What will happen ('be') in the next/coming century?

#### បេ se milānā 'to introduce to'

the (related to the 'to meet') means 'to introduce to':

میں آپ کو اپنے رشتے داروں سے ملاؤل گا

I shall introduce you to my (own) relations

مجھے اپنی بیم سے ملایئے

Please introduce me to your wife

#### Numbers

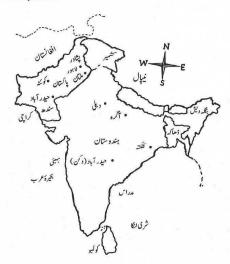
At this stage the numerals 41-60 should be learnt (Appendix 1).

#### siqāfat Culture ڤاٽ

Although India and Pakistan have some of the largest cities in the world, the majority of the population lives in villages, and most people spend their life engaged in agriculture. Indeed, many people who have settled in towns still maintain close links with their native village. Indian and Pakistani villages bear little resemblance to those in England or America, and are often quite remote. Villagers are noted for their hospitality, and one rarely escapes without being plied with local delicacies. Many Muslim families proudly claim descent from Afghan and Central Asian forebears who migrated to the subcontinent during the Middle Ages. Such origins are reflected in names and titles such as Khan (a Mongol title), Bukhari (from Bukhara in Uzbekistan), Chishti (from Chisht in Afghanistan) and Tabrizi (from Tabriz

# 11.1 The subcontinent

Look at the map of the subcontinent. The names of the major cities are written in Urdu. On the basis of what you have learnt in the last two units,



1 پاکستان کے شال مفرب میں کون ساملک ہے؟ 2 پاکستان میں کتنے صوب میں؟ ان کے دارا لکو مت کیا ہیں؟ 3 اگر آپ ریل گاڑی میں کراچی ہے لاہور جائیں توکون سے شہروں ہے گزریں گے۔ 4 دیلی شابی ہندوستان یا جوئی ہندوستان میں ہے؟

UNIT 11

5 مدراس كهال بـ جنوب يا شال ميس؟

6 ہندوستان کاسب سے برداشہر کیاہے؟

### 11.2 Subjunctive mood

All the following sentences require the verb to be in the subjunctive. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb given in brackets:

1 ممكن ب كه مارك دوست آج نه ( پنجنا)-

1 سمن ہے کہ ہمارے دوست آئی نہ (کرعا)۔
2 اگر آپ ای طرح کی یا تیس (کرعا) تو لوگ خوش ہوں گے۔
3 آئی رحیم صاحب نہیں آئیں گے۔ کیا بیس ان کو فون (کرنا)؟
4 آپ قکر نہ (کرنا)۔ بارش نہیں ہوگ۔
5 اگر آئی پاکستان (جانا) تو گاؤل ضرور دیکھیے۔
6 اگر آئم کر پی (پڑھنا) تو بہت اچھا ہوگا۔
7 کیا میں آپ کے لئے چانے (شکوانا؟)

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say what you did
- say you are going to do something
- excuse yourself

# mukālima ek Dialogue 1

John phones Aslam in Karachi and reports on his time in Lahore.

جان : بيلو ، بلقيس صاحبه فرماية - آپ كيسي مين ؟ بلقس: اچھا، جان صاحب ہیں؟ آپ لوگ کیے ہیں؟ لا مور خیریت سے پیچے؟ جان : بی بال شکرید یمال سب خیریت ہے۔ لا مور واقعی بہت شاندار جگہ ہے۔ کیا اسلم صاحب تفریف رکھتے ہیں؟ بلقس: بهال من الجي أميس بالى بول ليحدو آرب إلى الما : على الما ين الما ين الما ين الما ين الما ين الما ين الما الما ين الما ي جان : ہم بہت مصروف ہیں۔ پر سول ہم قاسم صاحب کا گاؤں دیکھنے شیخو پورہ گئے۔ وہ واقعی بہت دلیب تفا۔ کل ہم جہا گلیر کے مقبرے کی میر کرنے گئے۔ سا اسلم: اورموسم كيسام؟ جان : کراچی سے پہل نیادہ سردی ہے۔ کہتے ہیں کہ جاڑول میں بنجاب میں کافی سردی ہوتی ہے۔ پرسول تھوڑی دیر کے لئے پارش ہوئی۔ اس کے بعد سوری لکلا اور دن مجر وهوپ ربی۔ اسلم : اوراب آپ كاكيااراده ب؟ جان : تمن دن كر بعد اليخي مثل كوا بهم لوگ د بلي جارب بين بهم بوائي جهازے جائيں گے

كيونكه مارے پاس زياده وقت نہيں ہے۔

اسلم: اچھا' میں دبلی بھی خیبس گیا۔ آپ کو مطوم ہے کہ دبلی بلتیس کا وطن ہے۔ کیا آپ میرے لئے ایک کام کر ششن کے؟ جارے ایک پرانے دوست جا بھی پوک کے پاک رحج ہیں۔ آپ ان سے طبح جائے۔ اور جاری کام فیسے سلام کیجہ ان کانام شریف احمد ہے اور دو کو پیر کرش میں رحج ہیں۔ کھر کا تجرا کیکہ بڑار پیٹنا کیس (۱۰۳۵) ہے۔ کوئی بھی رضے والا آپ کو وارت دکھائے گا۔

اسلم : اجھا عان صاحب خوب سر مجھے اور جس د بل سے لکھے۔ سفر مبارک ہو۔

۰		farmāīe pahuńce	tell (me) (you)	جاڑے	jāŗe	winter (m.p.)
		xairīat	arrived safety (f.)	جاڙول ٿيل	jāŗoṅ meṅ	in the winter
		xairīat se	safely	旭	niklä	came out
		sab xairīat hai	all's well	وهوپرنگ	dhūp rahī	
1		lījīe	here you are			('sunshine remained')
	ہوئی	hūī	has come about,	مجمعی نہیں گیا	kabhī nahīn	I have never
			happened		gayā	gone
	بزی خوشی ہوئی	baṛī xušī	I'm very	حاندنی چوک	cāndanī	Chandni
		hūī	glad	le de day	cauk	Chowk (a
			('happiness			street in
			has come about')			Delhi) (m.)
	گاؤل ويکھنے	gāon dekh-	(in order)	ملندها سئ	milne jāīe	go to meet
		ne	to see	ماری طرف <u>ہے</u>		from us
	2	gae	(we) went		taraf se	nomus
		maqbara	tomb, shrine	الما	salām	greeting,
1			(m.)			(m.)
	ک بیر کرنے گئے	kī sair karne gae	went to visit	سلام کینا		to greet
_		gac	AISIL		kahnā	

شريف احمد	šarīf ahmad	Sharif Ahmad	ے ملا قات ہو کی	se mulāqāt hūī	we met
کوچہ	kūca	lane, small street (m.)			happened with')
كوچة رحن	kūca-e rahmān	Rahman	راوي	rāvī	RiverRavi
کوئی بھی	koī bhī	Lane any (at all)			(Lahore) (m.)
ر يتے والا	rikševālā	rickshaw driver	كناره	kināra	river bank (m.)
2150	progrām	(m.) progra-	کے کنارے	ke kināre	to the
پروس کھانا کھانے جائیں		mme(m.)		le gae	banks of will take
المانا المالے جایں کے	khana khāne	we'll go for a meal	مبارک	mubārak	congratula- tions (m.)
ملاقات	jāeṅge mulāgāt	ameeting	سخ مبادک	safar mubārak	have a good
× 1 27	qui	(f.)		muoatak	iournev

### gavā'id Grammar قراعر

### 🚑 hijje Spelling

ريّن للقريم 'Rahman Lane' – notice in the word  $\dot{\psi}^{r}$ , rahmān 'Merciful' (one of the names of Allah), the alif is written over the last syllable of the word.

ફુર્/ is a narrow lane, many of which can be found in old Delhi, known as માં અફ્રાઇ Shajahanabad (since it was built by Shahjahan). The main thoroughfare of the old city is called  $\sqrt{2}$  પુરં  $\frac{1}{2}$  cāndanī cauk' Moonlight Square'.

### tt j farmānā 'to do, say'

The Urdu  $\* t.$  j farmānā literally means 'to order', but in polite speech it can mean 'to say' or 'to tell', i.e.  $\* t.$  f, or 'to do', i.e.  $\* t.$  Since it is employed for respect, you can never use it for yourself:

اَبَ كِي فَرَا رَبِّ عَلَى الْمَالِ مَا مَهُ قَلِمَ اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللّ

I loude take a lo

### The past participle

UNIT 12

We have already seen that the present participle of the Urdu verb (roughly corresponding to the English 'coming', 'seeing', 'going', etc.) is formed by adding to the stem the suffixes  $\mathfrak{r}$  -tā (m.s.),  $\tilde{\mathcal{J}}$  -tī (f.s.),  $\mathcal{L}$  -te (m.p.),  $\mathcal{L}$  -tū (f.p.)

The past participle, which roughly corresponds to the English '(having) come', '(having) seen', '(having) gone', etc. is formed by adding to stems that end in a consonant the suffixes:  $-\bar{a}$  (m.s.),  $\mathcal{C}$  - $\bar{1}$  (f.s.),  $\sim -e$  (m.p.),  $\mathcal{C}$  - $\bar{1}$  (f.p.)

	Sing	gular			Pl	ural	
M	asculine	F	eminine	M	asculine	F	eminine
ويكصا	dekhā	وتيمحى	dekhī	وتجھے	dekhe	ويكصي	dekhīṅ
ا پانچ	pahuṅcā	چ <u>ن</u> چی	pahuṅcī	24	pahuńce	سنچي <u>ن</u>	'seen'  pahuncīn  'arrived'

Verbs whose stem ends in either the vowel  $\cdot$  - $\bar{a}$  or  $\cdot$  -o take the suffixes  $\cdot$  - $y\bar{a}$  (m.s.),  $\cdot$  - $\bar{i}$  (f.s.),  $\cdot$  -e (m.p.),  $\cdot$  - $\bar{i}$  (f.p.):

	Singular							ral
Mas	culine	Fem	inine	Mas	culine	Fem	inine	
آيا	āyā	آئی	āī	آئے	āe	آعيں	āī'n	'(having) come'
سويا	soyā	سوئی	soī	24	soe	سوغي	soīn	'(having)slept'
ty son	nā mea	ns 'to	sleep'					

Note that the vowel junctions  $\mathring{\mathcal{G}}^{7}$   $\overset{}{\succeq}^{1}$   $\mathring{\mathcal{L}}^{1}$  are marked with + hamza. Here are a few examples of past participles of verbs with which you are familiar:

# Consonantstem

	پېني	م ينجى	2	پېنچىس	arrived
	يزحا	پڑھی	2%	يزعيس	read
	لكحا	ككسى	لكيم	لكهيس	written
Vowe	elstem				
	كعايا	كھائى	کھاتے	كعاتيل	eaten
	uta	يتائى	يتاك	بتاكي	told

الله stem consists of two syllables, e.g. الله nikalnā (stem الله nikal-) 'to go out', الله guzarnā (stem الله guzarnā (stem الله guzarnā (stem الله guzarnā) 'to pass by', the vowel of the second syllable (-a) is dropped when the past participle suffixes are added:

The following five verbs have slightly irregular forms:

جانا	حميا	gayā	حمتى	gaī	2	gae	محتنين	gaīn	gone
وينا	ديا	diyā	دی	dī	دیے	dīe	ويں	dīń	given
لينا	Ų	liyā	لى	lī	لے	līe	لیں	līń	taken
ينا	k	piyā	بي	pī	چ	pīe	پي	pīń	drunk
:5	5	kivā	5	kī	کے	kīe	کیں	kīń	done

### Transitive and intransitive verbs

Urdu verbs, like those of English, fall into two major groups: transitive and intransitive.

Transitive verbs are those which take a direct object, e.g. to see him; to love the girl; to eat food (him, girl, food are the objects of the verb).

Intransitive verbs are those which do not take an object, e.g. 'to go, to come, to arrive, to sleep'.

The distinction between transitive and intransitive is very important in Urdu in the formation of the past tenses: simple past 'I went'; perfect 'I have gone' and pluperfect 'I had gone', all three of which we shall meet in this unit.

# Simple past tense of intransitive verbs

The Urdu simple past tense is the equivalent of English 'I went, I arrived,

UNIT 12

I slept' etc. The simple past of intransitive verbs consists merely of the past participle:

المنتوا	main pahuncā	I (m.) arrived
ي آئي		I (f.) came
ن گئی	larkī gaī	the girl went
242	mere bete soe	my sons slept
تين پنچيں	xavātīn pahuṅcīṅ	the ladies arrived

The negative is usually formed by placing  $\mathcal{L}^2$  nahīn directly before the verb:

sense, e.g. ジャッ vuh na āyā 'he did not come'.

The simple past tense of t pahuncnā 'to arrive' and げ ānā 'to come' is as

IO W.D.				
Masculine		Femi	nine	
ينجنا	pahuncnā			to arrive
میں پہنچا میں پہنچا	main pahuncā	مينجي	pahuncī	I arrived
نو پہنچا	tū pahuṅcā	يېچى	pahuncī	you arrived
په' وه پېنچا	yih, vuh pahuṅcā	ميلانيله ويخار ويخار ويخا	pahuńcī	he, she, it arrived
* <u>* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * </u>	ham pahunce	<u> </u>	pahunce	we arrived
تم ينج	tum pahuńce	سينجيس	pahuńcīń	you arrived
آپپانچ -	āp pahuṅce	چنچیں	pahuńciń	you arrived
به 'وه <u>بننج</u> به 'وه <u>بننج</u>	yih, vuh pahunce	پېچىن	pahuńcīń	they arrived
tī	ānā			to come
مِن آیا	maiń āyā	7 ئى	āi	I came
توآیا	tū āyā	7 کی	āi	you came
بيه' وه آيا	yih, vuh äyä	7 کی	āi	he, she, it came
بم آئے	ham āe	27	āe	we came
تم آئے	tum āe	آ ي	āīń	you came
آپ آئے	āp āe	7 يکن	āī'n	you came
ب 'وه آئے	yih, vuh āe	آعي	āīń	they came

As always  $\wedge$  is registered as masculine plural for both sexes.

### ்சு hūā 'became, came about, happened'

 $h\bar{u}\bar{a}$  is the simple past tense of  $\epsilon_{N}$ , but has the sense of 'became, came about, happened'. The past tense  $\vec{\omega}$   $th\bar{a}$ , however, means 'was'. Compare the following sentences:

كارون vuh bīmār hūī She became/fell ill المائية vuh bīmār thī She was ill

dūkān band hūī The shop closed ('became closed')

dūkān band thī The shop was closed

ンパララグso vuh log xuš hūe They became happy vuh log xuš the They were happy

The phrase  $\partial_{\mathcal{F}}\partial$ 

### ين xairīat 'well-being, safety'

The noun =  $\dot{z}$  xairīat means 'safety, well-being'. It is used in two common phrases:

یہاں سب فیریت ہے yahān sab xairīat hai

All is well here ('all well-being is')

آپ فریت ہے پنج؟

āp xairīat se pahunce?

Did you arrive safely? ('with safety')

### dekhne jānā 'to go to see'

The masculine oblique infinitive  $\not \succeq_3$  '  $\not \succeq_4$ '  $\not \succeq_7$  etc. used with verbs expressing motion, 'to go, come' has the sense of 'in order to do':

ہم قاسم صاحب کا گاؤل دیکھنے گئے

ham qāsim sāhib kā gāon dekhne gae

We went to see Qasim's village

میں اب کھائے جا رہا ہوں

UNIT 12

main ab khānā khāne jā rahā hūn I'm going to have dinner

tiç purānā 🚧 būrhā 'old'

tiz is usually only used for things:

ہم پرانے شرک سرکرنے گے

We went to visit the old city

When used with people it has the sense of 'long-standing':

احد میرے ایک پرانے دوست ہیں

Ahmad is an old friend of mine ('my one old friend')

refers only to the age of people:

مير ، ييا بهت بوڙھ بي

My uncle is very old

### 🗗 milnā as an intransitive verb

In English 'to meet' is transitive and takes a direct object; & milnā (because it is used with ) is regarded as intransitive:

وہ مجھ سے کراچی میں طے

vuh mujh se karācī men mile

He met me (from me) in Karachi

آپ کو کتے ہے لے؟

āp ko kitne paise mile?

How much money did you get? ('were acquired to you?')

لَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّلِمُ اللللِّلِمُ اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّلِمُ الللِّلِي اللللْمُولِمُ اللللْمُلِمُ اللللِّلْمُ الللِّلْمُ اللللْمُ اللَّلِمُ اللللِّلْمُ اللللْمُ الللْمُلِمُ الللِمُ الللِمُ الللِمُلِمُ اللللِّلْمُ الللِمُ اللللْمُلِمُ اللللِّلْمُ الللِمُ الللْم

## שין salām 'greetings', 'regards'

שיך 'peace' is, as we have seen, the universal Muslim greeting. לישוף 'to say to someone salām' means to greet someone/to give one's regards to':

رجم صاحب کو میرا سلام کیے۔

Give Rahim Sahib my regards ('from my side')

'koī bhī 'any ... at all'

In this phrase of 'bhī has the sense of 'at all':

كوئى بهى ركشے والا آپ كو راسته و كھائے گا

Any rickshaw driver (at all) will show you the way ('road')

le jānā 'to take'

The verbal phrase  $t \downarrow \bot$  'to take (away)' is formed with the root of  $t \downarrow$  'to take' and the 'to go' ('to take-go'):

وہ ہمیں راوی کے کنارے لے جائیں مے

They will take us to the bank(s) of the Ravi (the river on which Lahore stands)

หป่า mubārakho 'congratulations'

ilterally means 'lucky, auspicious', and can often be translated as 'congratulations'. Note the following phrases:

Have a good journey! Bon voyage! Here the subjunctive s ho means 'may it be!':

سالگره' نیا سال' عید مبارک ہو

sālgirah/nayā sāl/īd mubārak ho

Happy birthday, New Year, Eid (an important Muslim festival)

# mašq Exercise شق

12.1 Answer in Urdu

Read the following statements then answer the questions:

1 اسلم صاحب كل شام كويا في بيح مير ع كمرآئ-2 برسول ہم بادشاہی معجد کی سیر کرنے گئے۔

3 جارے دوست ہمیں راوی کے کنارے لے گئے۔

4 جہالگیر شخو پورے کے آس پاس کے جنگل میں شکار کھیلتے تھے۔

5 رقيم صاحب آگرے جانے كانظام كريں گے۔

UNIT 12

6 ریل گاڑی دیرہے پنچے گی۔ چاریج آئے گی۔ 7 بجين مين قاسم صاحب كاول مين رہتے تھے۔

سوالات

a اسلم صاحب كتن بح آئع؟

b يرسول وه كياكر في كنا؟

c ان کے دوست انہیں کہال لے گئے؟

d جها تگير شكار كهال كھيلتے تھ؟

e رحيم صاحب كهال جاني كانظام كريس مع؟

f ریل گاڑی کتے بچے آئے گی؟

g قاسم صاحب كا بحيين كبال كزرا؟

mukālima do Dialogue 2 مكالم دو

Qasim calls at the hotel and finds no one at home.

قاسم : السلام عليم \_ آخر آپ لوگ موجود ہیں۔ میں کوئی پاغی بجے یہاں سے گزرا کیمن آپ سمرے میں کیمیں تھے۔

اب ن شر معانی عابتا ہول اقاسم صاحب ہم لوگ باہر کے تھے۔ یس انھی آیا ہول۔ یا گا من پہلے میان نیجر کی بیوک ہے ہاتمیں کر رہی تھیں۔ معلوم ہو تا ہے کہ وہ کلیں گئ ہیں۔ تھوڑی دیرے بعد آئیں گی۔

قاسم: آج آپ کہاں گئے تھ؟

قام: ان اپ بہال ہے ہے:

جان : کل شام کو ہم ایک چائے خانے میں پیٹھے تھے اور وہال ایک شخص سے طاقات ہو کی تھی۔

وہ یہال کی عدالت میں و کیل ہیں۔ وہ فورا ہو چیخے گئے کہ بہیں آرود کیے آئی ہے۔ اس

وہ یہال کی عدالت میں و کیل ہیں۔ وہ فورا ہو چیخے گئے کہ بہیں آرود کیے آئی ہے۔ اس

ری تھیں تو ہم بھی کھانے میں شال ہوئے۔ ہم کوئی ہادہ بچر ان کہ بھر ہو کی پیچے۔

جیسا کہ آپ فرمارے تھے ، جنائی اوگ بہت مہمان نواز ہوئے ہیں۔ آئ دو بھر کے بعد

ہم لے اور رادی کے کنارے میر کرنے گئے۔ میں معائی چاہتا ہوں کہ شی

قائم : او ہو! نے دوست 'ئی عاد تیں۔ ہمیں آپ فون نہیں کر کتے تھے! میں سوچے لگا کہ آپ اوگ بیری اجازت کے بغیر ہندوستان گئے۔

جان : معاف کچیے "قاسم صاحب یہ ہماری غلطی تھی۔ 

	maujūd	present	يوجهنے لگے	püchne	began to
كزرا	guzrā	(I) passed		lage	ask
		by	شامل		included
معانی جاہتاہوں	cāhtā hūn	I'm sorry	شامل ہوئے	šāmil hūe	we joined in
ē £	gae the	had gone, went	مو پنے لگا	socne lagā	I began to think
	āyā hūn	have come	احازت	ijāzat	permission
	gaī hain	has gone	4		(f.)
بينهي	baithe the	were	کے بغیر	ke bağair	without
		sitting	غلطي	ğalatī	fault, mis-
ہوئی تھی	hūī thī	had come		100	take (f.)
		about,	يذاق	mazāq	joke(m.)
		came	للمل	mukammal	completed
		about	ممل ہوئے	mukammal	have been
	'adālat	court(f.)		hūe	completed
و کیل	vakīl	lawyer	تقريبا	taqrīban	approxi-
		(m.)	•		mately,
فورآ	fauran	at once			nearly

# وَاعر أَوْمَ qavā'id Grammar

### hijje spelling

1-an, tanvīn - Urdu has many adverbs, taken from Arabic, ending with the sign l, which is pronounced -an. This sign is known as  $\mathscr{AF}$  tanvin 'adding a  $n\bar{u}n'$ . In the dialogue we had l fauran 'immediately, at once' and ltaqrīban 'almost, about, nearly'.

### UNIT 12

**Excusing oneself** 

We have already met the word سننه mu'āf (often pronounced māf) in the phrase خانه 'please excuse me'. This may also be expressed with the subjunctive 'mu'āf karen' 'may you excuse me'. Here, as often, the subjunctive is used in place of the imperative خار , being considered more polite. The noun بان ساق mu'āfi means 'forgiveness' (f.):

I'm sorry ('I want your forgiveness')

### Perfect and pluperfect tenses

The perfect tense means roughly the same as English 'I have gone'. It is formed with the past participle followed by  $O_{R'} \leftarrow R' \cup C$  hūn, hai, ho, hain:

अर्द्ध र tum pahunce ho

ing verb 'to be'. The feminine singular form is used instead:

The perfect tense of 14 ('I have arrived, you have arrived', etc.) is as

Masculine		Feminine	
يس پهنچامول	main pahuncā hūn	مپنجی ہوں	pahuńcī hūń
تو پہنچاہے	tū pahuncā hai	پنجی ہے	pahuṅcī hai
بيه 'وه 🖟 نچاہے	yih/vuh pahuṅcā hai	چنی ہے	pahuncī hai.
يم پنج ين	ham pahuńce haiń	ينج بي	pahuńce hair
تم بنج ہو	tum pahunce ho	مینجی ہو	pahuncī ho
آپ پنچ ين	āp pahunce hain	لینجی ہیں	pahuncī hain
يه 'ده پنج ين	yih/vuh pahunce hain	کینی ہیں	pahuṅcī haiṅ
Some examples:	are:		

آپ فریت ے پنچ یں؟ Have you arrived safely?

میں ابھی گھر آیا ہوں

I have just come home

آپ محمد ملغ آئے ہیں؟ Have you come to meet me?

The pluperfect tense means roughly the same as the English 'I had gone'. It is formed with the past participle followed by تقين ، تح ، متى ، تق ، تقي ، تق ، الله thā, thī, the,

main āyā thā مين آياتها

I had come

gārī pahuncī thī

The train had arrived

ham soe the

We had slept

As was the case with the perfect, the plural feminine past participle cannot be used before - the singular form is used instead:

laṛkīān niklī thīn الأكيال فكالتحييل

The girls had gone out

merī begam āī thīn My wife had come ميرى بيَّم آئي تقين

The pluperfect of المُؤَوِّدُ ('I had arrived, you had arrived', etc.) is as follows:

Masculine		Feminine	
میں پہنچاتھا	main pahuncā thā	پينچي تقي پينچي تقي	pahuṅcī thī
تو پہنچا تھا	tũ pahuṅcā thã	پینچی کتھی	pahuṅcī thī
ىيە، وە پېنچاتھا	yih/vuh pahuncā thā	کپینچی تھی	pahuncī thī
ہم پہنچے تھے	ham pahunce the	ह दूर	pahunce the
تم پنج تھ	tum pahunce the	تنبغي تقيس	pahuncī thīn
آپ پنچ تھے	āp pahunce the	لينجي تقيس	pahuncī thīn
به ده مخفی تنے	yih/vuh pahunce the	پنچی تھیں	pahuncī thīn

The pluperfect has two major functions. It corresponds to English 'had gone', etc.:

ہم اشیشن گئے اور گاڑی آئی تھی

We went to the station and the train had arrived

لؤكيال كاؤل سے آئى تھيں

The girls had come from the village

It can also be used in place of the simple past, especially when the time of the action is stated:

UNIT 12

ميں يانچ بج آياتھا main pănc baje ăyă thă

I came ('had come') at five o'clock

كل شام كوبارش مونى تقى

kal šām ko bāriš hūī thī

Yesterday evening it rained ('rain had come about')

بچھلےسال ہم یا کتان گئے تھے

pichle sāl ham pākistān gae the

Last year we went ('had gone') to Pakistan

pichle sāl 'last year'; يجيل بغ pichle hafte 'last week'.

In the last three sentences, the simple past could also have been used. When time is stated, however, it is more common for the pluperfect to be used.

### The perfect and pluperfect in the negative

The perfect and pluperfect tenses cannot be used in negative sentences. When  $\sigma$  or  $\dot{\sigma}$  is used before the verb, the tense reverts to the simple past:

كيا آپ لا ہور پنچ بيں؟ جي نبيں ،اب تک ميں نبيل پينچا

kyā āp lāhaur pahuṅce haiṅ? jī nahīṅ. ab tak maiṅ nahīṅ pahuṅcā

Have you arrived at Lahore? No, I have not arrived yet

میں و ہلی مجھی نہیں گیا

I have never been to Delhi ('gone to')

آپ چھلے ہفتے آئے تھے؟ جی نہیں، میں نہیں آیا

Did you come last week? No, I did not come

### cuknā 'to finish doing' ﴿

The intransitive verb المجمَّة 'to finish' doing something, like المجمَّة 'ito finish doing', ن أَجْلَ اللهُ اللهُولِيَّا اللهُ الل

main kām kar cukā يْن كام كريكا vuh khānā khā cukī hai ووكمانا كها جكل rahīm sāhib xat likh رقيم صاحب خطاكمه

cuke the کے تھے

I finished working

She has finished eating dinner

Rahim had finished

writing the letter

rel gāṛī ā cukī hai

The train has already come ('has finished coming')

main ghar pahuncă aur bilqīs khānā pakā cukī thīn I arrived home and Bilqis had already cooked dinner

### baithnā 'to sit'; المنا لله baithnā 'to sit'; المناه المن

The present habitual tense of يلي بيشتا مول: بيشتا مول means 'I (usually) sit', while the perfect tense المائية الم

main hameša is kursī par baiṭhtā hūn

I always sit on this chair

ham ek căe xăne men baițhe the

We were sitting in a tea shop

The same applies to the verb thaknā 'to be/get tired':

merī begam rāt ko thaktī hain

My wife gets tired at night

آج ہم بہت تھے ہیں

āj ham bahut thake hain

Today we are very tired

# بالم يَعْنِي بُونِ vuh pūchne lage 'they began to ask'

The intransitive verb 🌡 lagnā has a wide range of meanings and uses. With the masculine oblique infinitive it has the sense of 'to begin to do', and it is used most frequently in the future and past tenses:

UNIT 12

رجم صاحب کہنے گئے کہ وہ پاکتان جائیں مے

rahīm sāhib kahne lage ki vuh pākistān jāenge Rahim began to say that he would ('will') go to Pakistan

وہ پوچھنے گئے کہ ہمیں أردو كبال سے آتى ب

vuh püchne lage ki hamen urdü kahān se ātī hai

They began to ask (that) how we knew Urdu ('from where does Urdu come to us')

In novels, the formula Life, 'he began to say' is often used in the sense of 'he said':

بارش ہونے گی / لگے گ

bāriš hone lagī/lagegī

It started/will start to rain ('began/will begin')

### siqāfat Culture

In India and Pakistan hospitality is almost an article of faith. It is not uncommon for perfect strangers to entertain you to tea, to spend a whole afternoon accompanying you around the town, and even invite you to their home after a brief chance meeting. The entertaining of guests also adds to the honour of the host, and sometimes people can become a bit too possessive. In the second dialogue of this unit, Qasim is not too pleased when the Smiths find another friend. If you are staying with someone, you might find it difficult to go about as you please, or to accept invitations from others. The usual formula would be: 'Well, of course, you are my guest, and if you feel you must go to have dinner with somone else, it is your right.' This often puts you in an awkward situation, from which, unfortunately, there is no escape.

# mašqen Exercises

# 2.2 Answer in Urdu

Listen to the passage on the tape, then answer the questions in Urdu:

1 اقبال احمد كمال كر بخوالي بي؟ 2 پھلے ہفتے دہ کہاں گئے تھے؟ 3 لاہور میں سر دی تھی یاگر کی تھی؟

4 جعرات كواقبال كن كے بال كئے تھے؟ 5 وہال کن سے ملاقات ہوئی؟

6 وكيل كياكن كيد كلد؟

### 12.3 Telephone conversation

Take your part in the telephone conversation, using the appropriate gender for yourself:

قاسم كيابية نو دو پانچ چھے صفر ہے؟ (٩٢٥١٠)

Say it is and ask who is speaking. You

قام آپ آج كبال تھ/تھى ؟ مِن آپ كے پاس پائى بِ آياتھا۔

Say you are sorry, but you were shopping in the bazaar. You

قاسم اور آپ کتنے بج آئے تھے / آئی تھیں؟

Say that you arrived at about six. You

اچھا' توآپ میرے ہاں شام کو کھانے پر آسکتے / آسکتی ہیں؟

Ask at what time you have to come. You

قاسم آٹھ بج تک آئے۔ میرے بھائی محد آئے ہیں۔

Say that you will certainly come, and will be very pleased. You

### 12.4 Use the correct tense

You have now learnt a wide range of Urdu tenses. Complete the sentences using the tense indicated:

1 اسلم کے بیٹے کون سے مضامین (بڑھنا)؟ (Present habitual) 2 ہم اس وقت وہلی جانے کی تیاری (کرنا)؟ (Present continuous)

3 وه لؤكا بر روز سمندر مي (نهانا)؟ (Past habitual)

(Pastcontinuous) (المعارض المجاهد) (المعارض المعارض ا

7 کیول ' جان صاحب آپ میرے دوست سے (ملنا)؟ (Perfect)

8 ہم اسٹیشن در سے پنچے اور گاڑی جا (چکنا)؟ (Pluperfect)

# آپ نے خودسا مان باندھا؟ Did you pack the luggage yourself?

In this unit you will learn how to:

- check in at the airport
- express more in the past
- tell the time in more detail
- take leave formally

# سال الله mukālima ek Dialogue 1

John and Helen check in at Lahore airport on their way to Delhi.

جان : معاف بيج - بيرقطارولل كركئے ؟ افسر : بى بال - آپ تظار بى انظار كيج - آپ كى برداز گيارون كر كيچيى من پر ب - بير

ا پ ۱۰ ماہاں ہے: جان : گیال۔ دوسوٹ میں اورایک بیگ۔ افسر : آپ نے خودسامان بائدھا؟ اور کی کے لئے چزیں لےجارہے ہیں؟ جان : گئیں،ہم نے خود ہائدھا۔ سب چیزیں ہماری ہی چیزیں ہیں۔

جان : بی تیں بہم نے حود بائدھا۔ سب چیزیں ہماری بھی چیزیں ہیں۔
افسر : انجھا۔ آئے۔ کلٹ اور پاسپورٹ دکھا ہے۔ اس کے بعد آپ سیدھے لاؤٹ میں
عاملیں گے۔ بیتا ہے ، آپ نے اردو کہاں ہے بھی ۔؟
جان : میں نے سب سے پہلے لندان میں دوستوں کے ساتھ اردو بیگھی ۔ ہم آج کل برصغیر
کی سرکررہے ہیں۔ آب رائی اور لا ہور میں اردو پولے کی کافی مثنی ہوئی ۔
افسر : انجھاء اسم تھ صاحب بچھے آپ سے ل کریزی خوثی ہوئی۔ بہت ہم غیر ملکی اتحا انجھی

اردوبول سکتے ہیں۔ آپ جائے۔ آپ کے پاس کانی وقت ہے۔ جان : اب کتنے بچے ہیں؟ میری گھڑی رک گئی ہے۔ افسر : اب گیارہ بحقہ ٹیل میں مضاباتی ہے۔ بی میں معاف کیجئے۔ پوئے گیارہ بحے ہیں۔ جان : اور تم وہ کل کتنے بچے مینچے ہیں؟

افر : زیادہ کمی پرداز نمیں ہے۔آپ کوئی سواہارہ 'ساڑھے ہارہ بیچ پینچیں گے۔ کیا،آپ کوا ہور پسندآیا۔ جان : بہت پسندآیا۔ بیرے خیال ہے ہم نے تقریبا بھی کچود یکھا۔ ہمیں پاکستان ہمیشہ یاد رہےگا۔ کس بیداماری پرداز کا اعلان ہے۔ خدا حافظ۔ انشاء اللہ ہم گھر کیس گے۔

قطار	qatār	queue (f.)	6	kam	few
انظاركرنا	intizār karnā	to wait	غيرمككي	ğair mulkī	foreigner (m.)
يرواز	parvāz	flight (f.)	گھڑی	ghaṛī	watch (f.)
بَجُ كُرِيكِينِ من پر	bajkar paccīs	at twenty- five past	رک گئی	ruk gaī	has stopped
	minat par		بجنے میں ہیں	bajne men	twenty to
بیک	baig	bag (m.)	مندباقي	bīs minaț	
آپنے باندھ	āp ne	did you	•	bāqī	
	bāndhā	pack?	یونے گیارہ بج	paune	quarter to
باندها	bāndhnā	to pack		giyāra	eleven
خود	xud	(one)self, vourself	سواہارہ کے	baje	quarter
10,610	hamārī hī	just ours	20119	baje	past
S	hī	just, only		buje	twelve
	päsport	passport (m.)	ساڑھے بارہ بج	sāṛhe bāra baje	
لاؤخج	lāūnj	lounge (m.)	سبهى بجه	sabhī kuch	absolutely every-
آب نے تیجی	āp ne	did you			thing
, — <del>,</del>	sīkhī	learn?	ہم نےویکھا	ham ne	we saw
مل زنگھی	main ne	I learnt		dekhā	
0 -0-	sīkhī		1+1161	i'lān	announce-
مشق	maša	practice (f.)	Oldi		ment (m.)
آپ سے <i>ل</i> کر	āp se milkar	having met you			ment (m.)

# وَاسِ qavā'id Grammar

## र्राष्ट्रं kā intizār karnā 'to wait for'

The phrase verb  $\fint{1.5cm} \fi k \fi intiz \fi k \fi$  to do the waiting of means 'to wait for':

بم آپ کا تظار کردے تھے

ham āp kā intizār kar rahe the We were waiting for you

### Past tenses of transitive verbs

UNIT 13

The simple past tense of transitive verbs 'I saw (someone)', 'I did (some thing)', is formed with the past participle, but in Urdu you say: 'by me someone seen', 'by me something done'. The object of the English sentence 'someone', 'something' becomes the subject in Urdu.

In this construction the word for 'by' is the postposition  $\stackrel{.}{\stackrel{.}{\smile}}$  ne, which takes the oblique case of nouns in the usual way:  $\stackrel{.}{\stackrel{.}{\smile}}\stackrel{.}{\smile}\stackrel{.}{\smile}$  larke ne 'by the boy',  $\stackrel{.}{\stackrel{.}{\smile}}\stackrel{.}{\smile}\stackrel{.}{\smile}\stackrel{.}{\smile}$  larkion ne 'by the girls', etc. The personal pronouns and interrogative pronoun before  $\stackrel{.}{\stackrel{.}{\smile}}$  ne, however, have special forms:

یں نے	main ne	by me
تؤنے	tū ne	by you
اسے	is ne	by him, her, it
أس	us ne	by him, her, it
200	ham ne	by us
5	tum ne	by you
آپنے	ãp ne	by you
إنہوں نے	inhon ne	by them
أنهول	unhon ne	by them
کس نے	kis ne?	by whom? (singular)
کنہوں نے	kinhon ne?	by whom? (plural)
کی نے	kisī ne	by someone

# The simple past of transitive verbs

When the object in the English sentence 'I read a book' is expressed this is rendered in Urdu as: 'by me book read'. Since 'V' is feminine, the participle changes its gender to feminine in order to match V. Thus: 'V' \( \times V' \) main ne kitâb (f.s.) parht (f.s.) ('by me book read') 'I read a book'. Similarly:

ہم نے اچھا گھر دیکھا

ham ne acchā ghar (m.s.) dekhā (m.s.)

('by us house seen') We saw a good house

میں نے دو اچھے گھر دیکھے

āp ne do acche ghar (m.p.) dekhe (m.p.)

('by you houses seen') You saw two good houses

انہوں نے کتا ہیں دیکھیں

unhon ne kitāben (f.p.) dekhīn (f.p.)

('by them books seen') They saw the books

Here are some more examples of the past tense of transitive verbs. Read them aloud noting the way in which the participles agree with the noun they follow:

I saw your house (m.s.)

Rahim wrote two letters (m.p.)

اسلم نے جائے منگوائی Aslam ordered tea (f.s.) آپٰنے وہ نئی فلم دیکھی

Did you see that new film? (f.s.)

اللي تي كما؟ Who said (so)? (m.s.)

ہم نے مجد کی سیر کی We walked around the mosque (f.s.) ی نے پیکتاب کھی

Someone wrote this book (f.s.)

ا کیا کیا کیا کیا کیا What did the children do? (m.s.) لڑ کیوں نے روٹی بنائی

The girls made the bread (f.s.)

# The simple past with a person or pronoun as its object

We have seen that if the object of a transitive verb is a noun referring to a person, or is a pronoun, the object is followed by the postposition  $\int ko$ :

UNIT 13

سیر جم کودیکتا ہوں main rahīm ko dekhtā hūn I see Rahim اس کوبلاتے ہیں ham us ko bulāte hain

We call him

When this happens in the simple past construction, the past participle after ko is always masculine singular, regardless of the gender or number of its logical object. In other words, you say: 'by me to Rahim seen', 'by us to him called':

میں نے رحیم کو دیکھا

I saw Rahim

maiń ne rahīm ko dekhā

We called him

ہم نے اس کو (اے) بلایا ham ne us ko (use) bulāyā

### The perfect and pluperfect tenses of transitive verbs

The perfect and pluperfect tenses of transitive verbs ('I have seen', 'I had seen') are formed with the past participle followed by  $\leftarrow$  (perfect), and  $\vec{\wp}$  (pluperfect). The 'logical' subject of the sentence takes  $\succeq ne$ :

Perfect

میں نے دیکھاہے

I have seen ('by me seen is')

main ne dekhā hai

انبول نے بتلاہے

they have told ('by them told is')

unhon ne batāyā hai

When an object is expressed, the participle agrees with the 'object' in gender and number, and the verb 'to be' in number:

میں نے گھر دیکھاہے

main ne ghar dekhā hai

I have seen the house

'by me house (m.s.) seen (m.s.) is (s.)'

بم نے کتاب پڑھی ہے

ham ne kitāb paṛhī hai

I have read the book

'by us book (f.s.) read (f.s.) is (s.)'

آپ نے یہ کرے دیکھے ہیں؟

āp ne yih kamre dekhe hain? Have you seen these rooms?

'by you these rooms (m.p.) seen (m.p.) are (p.)?'

The feminine plural past participle cannot be used before  $\omega_t$ : the feminine singular form is used instead:

unhon ne vuh 'imāraten dekhī hain They have seen those buildings 'by them those buildings (f.p.) seen (f.s.) are (p.)'

The construction is the same as that of the perfect, except that 🗸 follows the participle, agreeing with the 'object' in both number and gender:

main ne dekhā thā

I had seen

'by me seen was'

رجيم نے كام كيا تھا

rahīm ne kām kiyā thā

Rahim had worked

'by Rahim work (m.s.) done (m.s.) was (m.s.)'

fahmīda ne chuṭṭī lī thī

Fahmida had taken a holiday

'by Fahmida holiday (f.s.) taken (f.s.) was (f.s.)'

āp ke dost ne xat likhe the Your friend had written the letters 'by your friend letters (m.p.) written (m.p.) were (m.p.)'

jān ne masjiden dekhī thīn John had seen the mosques

'by John mosques (f.p.) seen (f.s.) were (f.p.)'

With the perfect and the pluperfect, as with the simple past, if \( \int \) ko stands between the object and the participle, the participle 'reverts' to masculine singular, and the verb 'to be' also remains singular, i.e.  $\leftarrow$  hai (perfect) if tha (pluperfect):

meri begam ne rahīm ko dekhā hai My wife has seen Rahim

'by my wife Rahim seen (m.s.) is (s.)'

عور تول نے آپ کو بلایا تھا

'auraton ne āp ko bulāyā thā

The women called you

'by women you called (m.s.) was (m.s.)'

The perfect and pluperfect tenses may not be used with mahīn or a na. As with intransitive verbs, only the simple past is used in negative sen-

āp ne vuh naī film dekhī hai? jī, nahīn, main ne us ko nahīn dekhā Have you seen that new film? No, I haven't seen (it)

Finally, the verbs the saknā and the cuknā are always intransitive, regardless of the verb with which they are used:

میں وہ کتاب نہ پڑھ سکا میری بیگم بریانی نہیں یکا عیس

I could not read that book My wife could not cook biryani

وہ اپناکام کر چکاہے جیلہ روٹی پکا چکی تھی

He has already done his work

Jamila had already cooked the bread

### Fractions and minutes to the hour

وْھائى dhāī

It was once remarked that 'Arabic numerals are the nightmare of a bankrupt financier' and you may be forgiven for thinking that the Urdu numerical system is equally troublesome. You will now find that it also possesses separate words for fractions as well. All you can do is learn them.

The most important fractions (half, three-quarters, one and a quarter, etc.) are as follows:

> آدها ādhā

three-quarters پون paun

savā one and a quarter

one and a half 073 derh two and a half

These are used like adjectives, آوها ādhā behaving like الراء acchā:

half an hour آدها گھنٹہ ādhā ghanța

آدهی ونیا half the world ādhī dunyā

one and a quarter rupees (singular) savā rūpīa سواروپيي

derh ghanța one and a half hours وُرِّه مُعَنْهُ

ظام روي dhāī rūpīe two and a half rupees (plural)

You can count up to three using fractions:

تمِن وْحَالَى وو وْيِرْه وا ايك آوها 1/2 1 11/4 11/2 2 21/2 3

 $1\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $2\frac{1}{4}$  and fractions after  $2\frac{1}{4}$  are expressed with the following words, which come before the numeral:

paune minus a quarter
リア savā plus a quarter
ニンド sāṛḥe plus a half

Thus:

paune do پيان 2 minus a quarter = 13/4 2 plus a quarter = 21/4 سوادو savā do پونے تین paune tin 3 minus a quarter =  $2\frac{3}{4}$ تنين tīn سوا تنين 3 plus a quarter = 31/4 savā tīn ساڑھے تین sāṛhe tīn 3 plus a half = 31/2 4 minus a quarter = 33/4 paune cār پُ نے چار جار cār

Thereafter: الله المارة على 41/4, الله على 41/4, الله على 5, etc.

### Telling time: divisions of the hour

### Quarter to, quarter past, half past

The fractions we have just seen are used with  $\xi$  to express divisions of the hour:

UNIT 13

الْعِنْ dhāī baje half past two (2½ o'clock) جُونَ عُنِ paune tīn baje quarter to three (3 minus ¼ o'clock)

Thereafter: الله تاتيك savā tīn baje 3.15, لله عنا تان الله sārhe tīn baje 3.30, الله paune cār baje 3.45, الله دُوْلِية وَالله وَالله وَالله عَلَى الله وَالله الله وَالله وَلِي وَالله وَلّه وَالله وَالله

### Minutes to, minutes past

We have met the verb b bajnā used in the sense of 'to ring', but it can also mean 'to strike (of a clock)', and b bajnamen 'in striking' and bajkar, the conjunctive participle 'having' struck' are used to express minutes to and past the hour.

Minutes to the hour are expressed with the phrases:

X بجير Y سنې

X bajne men Y minat par

At Y (minutes) to X ('X in striking on Y minutes')

X بج ين Y سناقي

X bajne men Y minat bāqī hain

It is Y (minutes) to X ('X in striking Y minutes are remaining')

لَّهِ bāqī means 'remaining, left over'.



پتھے بیجے میں وس منے پر At ten to six



نو بجنے میں پانچ منے باتی ہیں It is five to nine



بارہ بیجے میں میں من پر At twenty to twelve



سات بحتے میں تیکیس من باتی ہیں It is twenty three to seven

X bajkar Y minat par

At Y (minutes) past X ('X having struck on Y minutes')

X bajkar Y minat hain

It is Y (minutes) past X ('X having struck Y minutes are')



آڻھ بڳر پچيں من پ At twenty–five past eight



وس بجر پانچ منٹ پر At five past ten



It is seven minutes past elveen



تين بجكر وس منٺ ہيں It is ten past three

An easier way of expressing minutes to and past the hour is, as often in English:

> سات دس پانچ چالیس

'seventen' 'five forty'

This shorthand method is much less common in Urdu than in English, and is largely restricted to westernised, English-speaking circles.

UNIT 13

لَّ مَثْنَ كَرُ اللهُ kī mašq karnā 'to practise'

As well as meaning 'exercise', مثل also means 'practice'. The phrase verb U مثن U means 'to practise':

ميں ہر روز اردو بولنے كى مثق كر تا ہول

I practise speaking Urdu every day

('do the practice of speaking')

پاکستان میں ار دو بولنے کی بہت مشق ہوئی

In Pakistan we had a lot of practice in talking Urdu

('practice came about')

mašq Exercise مثق

13.1 Correct form of the past participle

All the verbs in this exercise are transitive. Give the correct form of the past participle of the verb in brackets, making it agree with its 'logical' object. Remember that if the object is followed by f the participle remains masculine singular.

1 ا کل شام کویس نے رجیم صاحب ہے باتیں (کرنا)

۲ 2 پرسول انہوں نے پرانے شہر کی بیر (کرنا)

3 ٣ عاد كمال ب- كياآب ناسكو (ويكنا) ب؟

4 م بلقیس نے اپنی سیملی کے ساتھ آئس کریم (کھانا)

5 م چھلے سال ہم نے بہت زیادہ کام (کرنا) تھا

6 ٢ يس اب تكل نبيل سكاريس في نماز نبيل (يوهنا)

7 کے آپ نے خود اپناسامان (باندھنا)

215

## mukālima do Dialogue 2

John and Helen find themselves in conversation with an unhappy fellow passenger.

ایر پوش : اللام علیم۔ مہر پائی کرکے اپنا بور ڈنگ پاس د کھائے۔ آپ کی تشتیں وہاں ہیں دائیں ہاتھ پر۔

جان : شکریہ میں سمجا۔ اشارہ اور انیس کھڑ کی کے پائ۔ لیکن دیکھیے ہماری نششتوں میں دو آدی میشھے ہیں۔ کیا ہوا؟ میں جائے ان سے بات کروں گا۔ معاف کیجے۔ لگتا ہے کہ آپ ہماری نشتوں میں میشھے ہیں۔ اشارہ اور انیس۔

ایک آدی : اچھاا معاف کریں۔ آپ کا کہنا بالکل درست ہے۔ ایک من ہم یہال سے بیش کے۔ کیا آپ دبلی جارہ ہیں؟

ے۔ کیا آپ دبی جارہ ہیں؟ جان : کی ہاں۔ میرے خیال ہے ہم سب لوگ دبلی جارہ ہیں' ورند ہم غلط ہوائی جہاز میں پیٹھے ہیں۔

میں بیسے ہیں۔

: یہ تو تی ہے۔ آن میر ادماغ نمیک ہے کام خیس کر دہا ہے۔ میں دات مجر خیس

مویا۔ کل شام کو میں دوستوں ہے لئے گیااور ہم چار ہیے تھے تک کار خیس

تقیہ گر جا کر میں نے جلدی سان باعرحاور میں چار ہیے تھے تک کیا بات

فیس اور بیل وہ بھی بھے آرام کرنے فیس دیے۔ آرام حرام ہے گھر پر! مجھے بہت

بوک گی ہے۔ کل شام کو میں نے بچھ فیس کھایا۔ آن تھے چاہے بھی فیس پی ہا۔

آپ کو معلوم ہے، زیز کی بھی بھی خیسی کھیا۔ آن تھے چاہے بھی فیس پی ہے۔

آپ کو معلوم ہے، زیز کی بھی بھی میں مسلم کی ایس کھا جا چاہ بول کھا بال ہے؟ بھی فیس کی بیت

المحکم کام پر جاتا ہوں۔ شام کو کھر بھی کر میں کھا چاہتا ہوں۔ کھا تا تا ہے؟ بھی فیس کی فیس کی بیت

"میں تھی ہوں آپ بی کھا تا بیا ہے"۔ میں بھی تھا ہوں ہے۔ گر اگر کہی ہے

"میں تھی ہوں آپ بی کھا تا بیا ہے"۔ میں بھی تھا ہوں بھی بیان بھی گئی

ہم سوچا ہوں کہ میں انگلتان جا کہ کام کروں گا۔ آپ پار میں نے جانے کی کے لیے کورن بھی آپ کے لیے کو سش کی کئین اموں نے لئی ویزا میں رہے۔ بھائی میں آپ ہے کیا کہوں؟

د مجھے۔ وولاکی چاہے لاری ہے۔ انڈ کا شکر ہے! کین وہ واپس جاری جاری جس کھی جس کے گاہ ہوں؟

	مہریانی کرکے	mihrbānī karke	please	جاكر	jākar	having gone
	بور ڈنگ پاس	bording pās	boarding pass (m.)	ہوائی اڈا	havāī aḍḍā	
		nišist samajhnā	seat (f.) to under-	500	pahuńckar	having arrived
	میں سمجا	-	stand I under-	کرنے نہیں دیتے	karne nahīn dete	don't let
	0.5 - 40	samjhā	stand	وام .	harām mujhe	
	کھڑگی	khiṛkī	window (f.)	جھے بھوک للی ہے	mujhe bhūk lagī	
	جاک	jāke	having gone	S	hai uthkar	having got
	باتكرنا	bāt karnā	to have a	طريقه		up way,
	لگآہے	lagtā hai āp kā	it seems	ريد	tariya	method
ĺ	آپ کا کہنا		what you	*		(m.)
	درست	kahnā durust	say	بياس كل ب	piyās lagī hai	I feel thirsty
	時	haṭnā	to shift, move off	جانے کی کوشش کی	jāne kī košiš kī	I tried to

### gavā'id Grammar

varna وريه

ğalat فلا دلغ dimāğ

UNIT 13

,.O

### The conjunctive participle 'having done'

otherwise,

the wrong

brain (m.)

if not

The conjunctive participle of the verb, which can be literally translated into English as 'having done' (in the sense of 'when I did'), is used in Urdu to join together ('conjunct') two or more separate ideas.

vīzā

šukr اعلان hāe hāe!

allāh kā الشركاشر

visa (m.)

thank

God!

alas!

In English we might say: 'I went home and had dinner'; Urdu prefers 'Having gone home, I had dinner'-' subordinating' the first idea to the second. This is effected with the conjunctive participle.

The conjunctive participle is formed by adding either  $\int$  -kar or  $\angle$  -ke to the stem of the verb:

'having eaten'

جاك jāke jākar 'having gone' LT äke ākar 'having come' 26 khāke كعاكر khākar

Both forms are equally common.  $t \int$  has only the form  $\int \int karke$  'having done'. Compare the following sentences with the English translation:

محرجاكر كمانا كمعاؤل كا

I shall go home and have dinner ('having gone')

مہریانی کرے اپنا بورڈنگ پاس و کھائے

Please show your boarding pass ('having done kindness')

صح المحكروه نماز يزحة بي

He gets up in the morning and says prayers ('having got up')

آپ سے ملکریوی خوشی ہوئی

I'm very pleased to meet you ('having met you')

# ಚ್. samajhnā 'to understand'

באל can be both transitive or intransitive. איל ביא main ne samjhā and main samjhā are both correct.

The present habitual tense Use Is means 'I usually understand'. The past tense ((i) means either 'I understood' or 'I understand now'.

ا الاردو مجمتا الاردو الاردو مجمتا الاردو I'm sorry, I don't understand

### More uses of a lagna

We have seen wused with the oblique infinitive in the sense of 'to begin to do', but it may best be understood if it is translated very literally into English as 'to be applied to'. A more appropriate English rendering is often: 'to seem, feel, be felt', etc. Compare the following:

mujhe lagtā hai ki āp hamārī nišiston men hain

It seems to me that you are in our seats ('it is applied to me')

UNIT 13

لكتاب كه بارش موكى

lagtā hai ki bāriš hogī

It looks as if it will rain ('it is applied that')

مجھے بارہ بج بمیشہ مجوک لگتی ہے

mujhe bāra baje hameša bhūk lagtī hai

I always get/feel hungry at twelve ('hunger is applied to me always')

مجھے اب بھوک گلی ہے

mujhe ab bhūk lagī hai

I feel hungry now ('hunger has been applied')

In such expressions the present habitual tense expresses what is usually the case; the perfect tense expresses what is the actual case now.

garmīon men 'ām taur par piyās lagtī hai (One) usually gets thirsty in the hot season

كياآپ كوپياس كى ہے؟

kyā āp ko piyās lagī hai?

Do you feel thirsty (now)?

Note the feminine plural word ريال garmīān 'the hot season'. Compare jāre 'the cold season' (m.p.).

### 'ap kā kahnā 'what you say'

We have seen that the infinitive can often be used as a noun: بولانا الجماع to talk/talking is good.

ty as a noun can be translated into English as 'what (one) says'

آپ کا کہنا درست ہے

āp kā kahnā durust hai

What you say is right ('your saying')

میرے دوست کا کہنا غلط ہے

mere dost kā kahnā ğalat hai

What my friend says is wrong

219

### ויס harām 'forbidden'; אוש halāl 'approved'

In Islam anything which is approved of or pure is termed  $\ell$  halāl.  $\ell$  is meat from an animal which has been slaughtered according to the method prescribed in the Holy Quran.

יוֹץ is anything which is forbidden by the precepts of Islam. The rhyming phrase האין arām harām hai 'rest is forbidden' jokingly means 'I get no peacel'.

### ل كوشش كرنا kī košiš karnā 'to try'

لَوْشُ لِللَّهِ košiš (f.) means 'a try, a attempt'. The phrase verb لَوْشُ لُو košiš (f.) means 'a try, a attempt' (of doing)' means 'to try to do':  $(karne) k\bar{\imath} košiš karn\bar{a}$  'to do an attempt (of doing)' means 'to try to do':

### とうころ karne denā 'to allow to do, to let do'

With the oblique infinitive by denā 'to give' has the sense of 'to allow':

us ne ham ko vahān jāne nahīn diyā

He did not allow us to go there ('did not give us to go')

bacce mujhe ārām karne nahīn dete

The children don't allow me to rest

### غر xud 'oneself'

 $i\dot{r}$  xud (note the u is pronounced short after  $\dot{c}$  xe) coming after a noun or pronoun means (one) self:

يش خود	mainxud	Imyself
آپ خود	āp xud	you yourself
آپ نے خود سامان بائدھ	āp ne xud sāmān bāndhā	Did you pack the luggage yourself?

UNIT 13

& hī 'only, just'

 $\mathcal{G}^{\!\scriptscriptstyle \text{I}}$  coming after the word it refers to, often has the sense of 'only, just':

These are only our things یہ ماہری ہی چزیں ہیں۔ تا کا پی کی جادری گا

Sometimes it can be rendered in English merely by stress: I was saying/it was I who was saying.

### Numbers

At this stage the numerals 61-80 (Appendix 1) should be learnt.

### siqāfat Culture ڤانت

In the subcontinent ritual purity is regarded as extremely important. What is الله halāl and الحرام harām for Muslims is carefully defined in the Holy Quran (مَرَانَ مُرِيف) qurān šarīf). Meat may only be taken from an animal which has been slaughtered by a Muslim butcher, who will drain off all the blood and pronounce a prayer over the carcass. In the west, Muslim butchers' shops usually bear a sign with the Urdu words ما الله halāl gošt, followed by the Arabic equivalent لمعم حلال lahm halāl 'Halal Meat'.

### mašqen Exercises

### 13.2 Using the conjunctive participle

The following sentences consist of two separate statements. Link them by using the conjunctive participle:

1 میں اب گھر جادل گا۔ کھاتا کھادل گا 2 فہیدہ کراتی گئی۔ سب رشتے داروں سے ملی 3 حامد نے کتاب پڑھی۔ آرام کیا 4 ہم نے سمان ہائد حلہ ہوائی اؤے گئے 5 دہ فیکسی میں پیٹھے۔ ڈرائیور سے ہاتیں کرنے گئے

# 13.3 Match question and answer

The following questions relate to the two dialogues in this unit. Can you match the answers to the questions?

سوالات 1 ہوائی اڈے میں جان کے پاس کتناسامان تھا؟ 2 جان اور بیلن چھٹی پر کیا کررے تھ؟ 3 وه د بلی کتنے بح پہنچیں گے؟ 4 ان كى نشتول ميل كون بيشے تھ؟ 5 كياأس آدمى نے ناشتہ كيا تھا؟ 6 دیلی پینچروه آدمی آرام کرےگا؟ 7 اس كوولايت جانے كاويزاملا؟ جواب 1 وہ کوئی سوابارہ 'ساڑھے بارہ بجے پینچیں گے۔ 2 . جى نېيى \_ اس كو بېت بيوك لگرى تقى \_ 3 بی نیں۔ اس کے لئے آرام حرام ہے۔ 4 ان كے پاس دوسوف كيس اور ايك يك تھا۔ 5 جي نييں۔ اس کو ويزانيس ملا۔ 6 وہ یوصغیری سیر کررہے تھے۔ 7 دوآدي بينم تھے۔

### 13.4 Translate into Urdu

Yesterday we got up ('having got up') early and arrived at the airport at Yesterday we got up ('naving got up') early and arrived at the airpoint at half past eight in the morning. The aeroplane was due to go ('about to go') at twenty to ten. 'Come on', I said to my wife. 'We have lots of time. Let's first go and have ('go to drink') a cup of tea.' We went ('having gone') straight to the restaurant and ordered tea. Since we had not had breakfast, I said to my wife: 'I feel hungry. Shall I order some food as well?' 'What's the time?', she asked. 'It's quarter to nine', I said. 'We can sit here for half an hour. After that we can take our luggage and go towards the lounge'. The queue was not very long. We showed our passports and went into the lounge. It was half past nine. 'Our flight will depart after fifty minutes', I said. 'This evening we shall be in Delhi. Bon voyage!'

# Let's talk only in Urdu أردوبي ميس باتيس كريس

In this unit you will learn how to:

- express action performed on your own behalf
- express action performed for others
- give your date of birth
- talk to a doctor

## mukālima ek Dialogue 1 مكاله ايك

John and Helen arrive in India and talk to a Sikh taxi driver about Delhi.

جان : آخر تام دبلی بختیج گئے ہیں۔ چلین ، تم نیسی ڈھوٹر لیں اور سیدھے ہو مل جائیں۔ ہو کل کا بید میرے پائی ہے۔ وہ رائ چقر پر ہے۔ وہاں تھوڑا سا کھانا کھالیں۔ اس کے بعد لال قلعے اور جائع سمجد کی سیر کریں گئے۔ میلن : جان صاحب! آپ بھی سے اردو میں باتی کیوں کررہ میں؟ آپ اگریزی بھول سے بین کیا؟ جان : جی میں میں سوچ رہا تھا کہ چونکہ ہم اردو کے وطن آگئے ہیں تو اردو بی میں باتیں کرنی چاہیں۔ اردو دہلی کی گلوں اور کوچوں میں پیدا ہوئی تھی۔ ہے تا؟

سکن : آپ واقعی پانگی مورکوروروں جمکن : آپ واقعی پانگی ہوگئے ہیں۔ نیز 'کولی بات نہیں۔ اردودی میں یا تین کریں۔ جھے کوئی اعتراض نہیں ہے۔ میری کاردو آپ کی اردو ہے ذیادہ انتجی ہے۔ جان : وہ نیک کھڑی ہے۔ اے سردار تی۔ نیکسی خال ہے؟

جان : وه ینی هزن ہے۔الے مردار سال یہ مان کے ؟ مردار : تی ہال صاحب بیٹھے۔ کہال جاتا ہے؟ جان دراج چقہ جاتا ہے۔ آپ کو معلوم ہے کہ امپریِّل ہو ٹُل کہال ہے؟ سردار : بی ہال معاحب بیٹھے۔ آپ کہال ہے آرہ ہیں؟

جان لاہورے آرے ہیں۔ سردار: اچھا لاہور میرا وطن ہے۔ تقیم کے بعد من سیتالیس میں (١٩٥٤ء) میرا خاندان

یباں خفل ہولہ میرا کین وہاں گذرا۔

ہان : وہلی میں بہت کھ رہج ہیں نا؟

مرداد : تی ہاں صاحب وہلی میں ہر طرح کے لوگ رہج ہیں۔ ہندو مجی ہیں اور مسلمان

زیادہ تر رائے ہی ہی بین ہیں ہی ہی ہی گئی ہو گئی ہے کہ اوگ رہج ہیں۔ آپ آپی اردو بول

لیے ہیں۔ آپ ہائی اتاق کی ہیں ہیں۔

ہان : بی نمین ہم انگلتان کے ہیں۔ وہال ہمارے بہت ہندوستانی اور پاکستانی دوست ہیں۔

مرداد : خوب آپ کا ہوئی آئی ہیا ہے۔

ہان میں آپ کو کتنے ہے دوں؟

مرداد : بن ساتھ روچے دے دوں؟

مرداد : بن ساتھ روچے دے دوی؟

ہان : اتھا کیجے۔

ہان : اتھا کیجے۔

الله کے ہیں	pahuńc gae haīń	have arrived	پيدا ہو گی تھی	paidā hūī thī	was born
وهو عثرنا	dhūndnā	to look for	باكل	pāgal	mad
ڈھو تڈ لی <u>ں</u>	dhūndl len	let's look for	او کے بیں	ho gae haiń	have become
25	pata	address (m.)		i'tirāz	objection (m.)
راج پھ	rāj path	Raj Path (street in Delhi)	مجھے اعتراض نہیں	i'tirāz nahīń	I have no objection
1 1 5 1 10 1		(m.)	كمزا	khaṛā	standing
	khã len	let us eat	سر وار جی	sardār jī	a term of
لال قلعه	lāl qil'a	the Red Fort			address for a Sikl
	bhūl gae hain	have you forgotten?	امپيريل هو نل	impīrīal hotal	Imperial Hotel
آگئے ہیں	ā gae hain	have come			(m.)
آگھ ہیں باتیں کرنی چاہئیں	bāten karnī	we should chat	تقتيم	taqsīm	Partition (f.)
	cāhīen		U	san	in the year
کلی ا	galī	alley (f.)			(m.)
29	kūca	lane (m.)			PH

	ختقل	muntaqil	shifted,	آگیا ہے	ā gayā hai	has come
- 1			trans-	رول	dūń	shall/may
			ferred			I give?
	all	sikh	Sikh(m.)	سائھ	sāṭh	sixty
	سيكه كي	sīkh lī	learnt	15:00	de dījīe	give!

### gavā'id Grammar قراعد

### & hijje Spelling

UNIT 14

Since the Urdu alphabet has no capital letters, it is not always easy to spot a proper name in the text. For this reason the sign is often written over the name in order to identify it:

The word of san 'in the year of' comes before the numerals expressing the year:

san unnīs sau paintālīs (year) nineteen hundred (and) forty-seven. When the year is written in figures, the numerals are written over the sign which is pronounced san:

You may have noticed that it is sometimes difficult to read certain numerals when they are written only with letters. For example, the words for 23 and 33 when they are written only with letters. For example, the words for 23 and 33 when they are confusable. For this reason the figures are often written over the words in order to avoid confusion:

# Compound verbs with the jānā

In colloquial English, we often use the verb 'to go' in conjunction with another verb: 'I've gone and eaten my dinner'; 'you've really gone and done it'. The addition of 'gone' makes hardly any difference to the sense. Urdu has a similar construction (in the case of Urdu, however, it is not considered colloquial or slang), and such combinations are known as compound verbs.

Many compound verbs consist of the stem of the main verb followed by  $t_{\parallel}$   $j\bar{a}n\bar{a}$  'to go'. Most intransitive verbs, e.g. t' 'to come',  $t_{\#}$  'to arrive',  $t_{\#}$  'to sit',  $t_{\#}$  'to sleep', etc. may form such componds:

Simple form		Co			
	tī	ānā	آجانا	ā jānā	to come
	134	pahuncnā	الله الله	pahunc jānā	to arrive

UNIT 14

baiṭh jānā بين جانا

to sit (down)

سونا sonā

so jānā سوجانا

to sleep

The verb the jānā 'to go' cannot form a compound with itself. For fairly obvious reasons, you cannot say بَاجِنا jā jānā.

With verbs expressing motion 'to come, arrive, go out', etc. there is little difference, if any, between the simple and compound forms:

وه وس بج آجاتا ہے

vuh das baje ā jātā hai

وه وس بج آتام vuh das baje ātā hai

He comes at ten o'clock

ہم دیلی بھٹھ گئے ہیں

ہم وہلی پنچے ہیں

ham dihlī pahunc gae hain

We have arrived at Delhi

ham dihlī pahunce hain

وہ گھرے نکل جائے گا

وہ گھرے نکے گا

vuh ghar se nikal jäegä

vuh ghar se niklegā

He will go out of the house

Note that the present and past continuous tenses cannot be used in a compound with, nor can a compound verb be used with,  $\frac{1}{2}$   $nah\bar{n}$ :

main āṭh baje ā gaya

I came at eight

main āṭh baje nahīn āyā

I did not come at eight

### the it baith jana, the so jana, the is uth jana

Some intransitive verbs express the transition of one state to another, e.g. big baithnā 'to sit (from standing)'; be sonā 'to sleep (from being awake)'; big uthnā 'to get up (from lying down)', etc. With such verbs the compound with the expresses that transition. This is especially the case in the past tenses. Compare the following:

وہ بیشہ اس کری پر بیٹھتا ہے

vuh hameša is kursī par baiṭhtā hai

He always sits on this chair

وہ آجاتاہے اور فور أبيثه جاتاہے

vuh ā jātā hai aur fauran baiṭh jātā hai

He comes and immediately sits down

احمد عام طورے سورے اٹھتاہے

ahmad 'ām taur se savere uṭhtā hai

Ahmad usually gets up early

كيا حداثه كياب؟

kyā ahmad uṭh gayā hai?

Has Ahmad got up?

وہ رات بھر سوتی ہے

vuh rāt bhar sotī hai She sleeps all night long

وہ اب سو گئی ہے

vuh ab so gaī hai

She has now gone to sleep

### The verbs & lenā 'to take' and & denā 'to give'

The verbs  $\[ \mathcal{Q} \]$  and  $\[ \xi_2 \]$  have slightly irregular forms in some of their tenses. The present and past habitual and the present and past continuous tenses are completely regular but the subjunctive and future tenses are irregular:

### Subjunctive

		June		
لين	lenã	دينا	denā	
ميس لوب	main lūn	دول	dūn	'I may take/give'
23	tū le	وے	de	
يه 'وه کے	yih/vuh le	وے	de	
ہم لیں	ham leñ	دين	den	
تم لو	tum lo	99	do	
آپ ليس	āp len	دين	den	
، مولي	vih/vuh len	110	den	

The future is formed by adding the suffixes & & L -gā, -gī, -ge, to the subjunctive in the normal way:

main lūngā, lūngī شي لون گا 'لون كی

main dūngā, dūngī

I (m./f.) shall take

يس دول کا وول کی vuh legā, legī عائكى

vuh degā. degī درےگا

I (m./f.) shall give he, she, it will take

he, she, it will give

āp leṅge, leṅgī āp deṅge, deṅgī آپدي گ'دي گ you (m./f.) wll take you will give

### Compound verbs with & and &

Many transitive verbs form compounds which consist of the stem of the main verb + W or b. For example:

Simp	le verb	Com	pound + 댇	
كحانا	khānā	كعالينا	khā lenā	to eat
ڈھونڈ نا	dhūṅḍnã	وْھونڈ لینا	dhūnd lenā	to look for
سيكصنا	sīkhnā	يكھ لينا	sīkh lenā	to learn
55	karnā	كرلين	kar lenā	to do
Simp	le verb	Com	ريا + pound	
وينا	denā	دے دینا	de denā	to give
تائجاتا	pahuṅcānā	بهنجيا وينا	pahuncā denā	to take to
يعجنا	bhejnā	بهيج وينا	bhej denā	to send
1.5	karnā	1.15	kardenā	to do

The main function of the compound with  $\bowtie$  is to express action performed on behalf of oneself or towards oneself. For example, when you eat something, you naturally eat 'for yourself', taking the food 'into yourself':

main khānā khā letā hūn

I eat dinner (for myself)

مِيں نيکسي ڙھونڈ لول گا

main taiksī dhūnd lūngā

I shall look for a taxi (on my own behalf)

اس نے بہت کام کرلیاہے

us ne bahut kām kar liyā hai

He has done a lot of work (for himself)

The compound with by expresses action performed on someone else's behalf or away from oneself:

main āp ko paise de detā hūn

I give you money (for yourself)

UNIT 14

ہم آپ کو اسٹیشن تک پہنچادیں کے

ham āp ko istešan tak pahuncā denge We'll take you as far as the station (doing you the favour)

میں نے آپ کے لئے بیکام کردیاتھا

main ne āp ke lie yih kām kar diyā thā

I had done/did this work for you

In the examples the compound underlines the direction of the action. The simple verb could also be used without making a vast difference to the

Note that these compounds cannot be used with the continuous tenses, nor in the negative:

میں آپ کو چے دے دول گا

main āp ko paise de dūngā

میں آپ کو پیے نہیں دول گا

main āp ko paise nahīn dūngā

### Further observations on compound verbs

The rules hold true in the vast majority of cases, but as you proceed, you will find that certain verbs 'prefer' one or other of the compound forms, while some 'prefer' to remain simple. There are no hard and fast rules which determine correct usage, which is best learnt as and when encoun-

can take an object:

میں بھول گیار بھول گیا ہوں ربھول گیا تھا

main bhūl gayā/bhūl gayā hūn/bhūl gayā thā

I forgot/have/had forgotten

معاف کھے میں آپ کانام بھول گیا ہوں

I'm sorry, I have forgotten your name

With some verbs, the & compound has the sense of 'managing to do, doing something reasonably well':

vuh kāfī acchī urdū bol letā hai

He speaks Urdu quite well

میں نے انگریزی فوج میں سیھ لی

main ne angrezī fauj men sīkh lī

I managed to learn English in the army

Sometimes &, gives the verb a sense of completion:

میں نے سیکام کردیا

main ne yih kām kar diyā

I've done (and completed) the work

### the le jānā 'to take away'; tile ānā 'to bring'

The compound اباع + ليا) means 'to take (away)' ('to take and go'). The compound til (ty + ti) means 'to bring' ('to take and come'). The verb til 'to bring' is a contracted one-word form of til.

Since the 'operative' parts of these verbs are  $t \models and t \uparrow \uparrow they$  are regarded as intransitive (even though 'to take away' and 'to bring' are transitive in English).

میں آپ کو یا کستان لے جاؤں گا

main āp ko pākistān le jāūngā

I shall take you (away) to Pakistan

بھائی بدوفی بہاں سے لےجائے۔ بای ہ

bhāī, yih rotī yahān se le jāīe. bāsī hai

Waiter! Take this bread away from here. It's stale

ميرے لئے جائے اور بسكوٹ لےآئے رلائے

mere lie căe aur biskūt le āīe/lāīe

Bring tea and biscuits for me

بمآپ كے لئے اس كن كاتب لے آئے بيں الائے بيں

ham āp ke lie us kī naī kitāb le āe hain/lāe hain

We have brought (for) you his new book

UNIT 14

Both الله عام and الم may be used with عام :

یہاں سے تشریف لے جائے

yahān se tašrīf le jāīe

Go away ('take your honour away') from here (a polite dismissal)

آئے 'تشریف لے آئے الائے

āīe, tašrīf le āīe/ lāīe

Please come in

پ نا karnā cāhīe 'ought to do'

Used with the infinitive  $\Leftarrow \psi$  cāhīe expresses 'moral' obligation:  $\Leftarrow \psi \tau f$  ought to do'. The past form  $\overrightarrow{\nu} \Leftarrow \psi \tau f$  karnā cāhīe thā means 'ought to have done'. Compare the following sentences:

mujhe ab jānā hai مجے اب جاتا ہے

I have to go now

mujhe ab jānā cāhīe عُجِي اب مِامَاعِ اِسِ

I ought to go now I had to go

مجھے جانا تھا mujhe jānā thā mujhe jānā cāhīe thā کے جاتا جا ہے تھا

I ought to have gone

If there is an object, the infinitive must 'agree' with the object in gender and number, and  $\underset{\leftarrow}{} = \underset{\leftarrow}{} + \underset{\leftarrow}{} \text{must agree in number having its plural form } \mathcal{L}_{\downarrow}^{c}$  cahien.  $\overset{\leftarrow}{} = \underset{\leftarrow}{} + \underset{\leftarrow}{} \text{cahie tha}$  has the masculine plural form  $\overset{\leftarrow}{} = \underset{\leftarrow}{} + \underset{\leftarrow}{} \text{cahie the}$ ; the feminine singular is  $\overset{\leftarrow}{} = \underset{\leftarrow}{} + \underset{\leftarrow}{} \text{cahie thi}$  and the feminine plural is  $\overset{\leftarrow}{} = \underset{\leftarrow}{} + \underset{\leftarrow}{} \text{cahie thi}$ . cāhīe thīn. For this agreement compare the rules given in Unit 8. Thus:

mujhe xat likhnā hai ججے خط لکمنا ہے

I must write a letter

مجھے خط لکھنا جا ہے mujhe xat likhnā cāhīe

I ought to write a letter مجھے دو کتابیں پڑھنی جاہیں mujhe do kitāben parhnī cāhien

I ought to read two books مجهر كتاب يزحني تقي mujhe kitāb paṛhnī thī

I had to read a book

مجے دو خط لکھنے جا ہے تنے mujhe do xat likhne cāhīe the

I ought to have written two letters

Note that the plural form of cannot be used before of and E.

231

If the object is followed by  $\mathscr{I}$  only the singular forms  $\underset{\leftarrow}{\smile}$  and  $\overset{\rightarrow}{\smile}$  are

مجھے رحیم صاحب کواشیشن پہنچانا جاہے

mujhe rahīm sāhib ko istešan pahuncānā cāhīe

I ought to take Rahim to the station

مجھے اپنی بیٹیوں کو کلکتے بھیجنا جا ہے تھا

mujhe apnī betīon ko kalkatte bhejnā cāhīe thā I ought to have sent my daughters to Calcutta

# tļя hojānā 'to become'

The compound verb ten ('go and be') means 'to become', and may often be rendered into English as 'to get, go, happen, be', etc.

مغرب میں لوگ جلدی امیر ہو جاتے ہیں

mağrib men log jaldı amır ho jate hain

In the West people quickly become/get rich

ين ناراض مو جاؤل گا

main nārāz ho jāūngā

I shall become/get angry

In the past tenses (اب توا) recoincide with (اب توا) became, has become, had become':

آب ياكل موكة بين / موئ بين

ãp pāgal ho gae hain/hūe hain

You've gone mad

كيا موكياتها / مواقعا؟

kyā ho gayā thā/kyā hūā thā?

What (had) happened?

Like other compounds the st cannot be used in negative sentences. In the habitual and future tenses it is replaced by ern brn and bn; in the past tenses it is replaced by in:

he often gets angry وواكثر تاراض مو جاتا ب

he doesn't often get angry

we shall become rich

UNIT 14

ہم مجھی امیر نہیں ہوں گے we shall never become/be rich وہ بالکل پاگل ہو گیا ہے he's gone completely mad

وه بالكل يأكل نبيس موا he hasn't gone completely mad

### เหเน paidā honā 'to be born'

means 'to be born'

يج برايك من پدابوتے بيل

bacce har ek minat paidā hote hain

Children are born every minute

main paidā hūā (f. على يداهول main paidā hūī) means 'I was ('became')born':

مِن وواع مِن بيدا موا تفا / مولى متى

main san unnīs sau paccās men paidā hūā thā/hūī thī

I was born in nineteen hundred (and) fifty

Here the pluperfect is used because the date is stated.

### tक्रा र्के khaṛā honā 'to stand'

kharā is an adjective meaning 'standing'. The name for the medieval language from which Urdu and Hindi came was אלט אַל khaṛī bolī 'the standing (i.e. 'established') speech'.

### Sardarjī yell.

In medieval times the Sikhs were given the honorific title by sardār 'headman, leader'. Sikhs are still addressed as 3.b/ sardār jī.

# mukālima do Dialogue 2 کالہ دو Helen feels unwell and John calls the doctor.

جان : آخر ہم ہو کل آگئے ہیں۔ میں بہت تھا ہوں' آج ہم نے بہت زیادہ کیا۔ می لاہور سے دہلی آگئے وہ پہر کے بعد ہم نے لال قلعہ اور جامع مجد کی سیر کی۔ اب ساڑھے سات ہج ہیں۔ چیس کھانا وانا کھائیں۔

میلن : معاف کیچه ٔ جان یس در ایبار مول بیس تعور کادیر کے لئے لینول گا۔ جان : میں موج رہا تھا کہ تم بہت خاموش تھیں۔ تھی کی نظر آتی ہو۔ تم کو کیا ہوا؟

233

جیلن : میں کچھ نہیں جھتی ہول۔ سر میں درو ہے۔ تھوڑا سابخار ہے اور پیش بھی ہونے جان : میرے خیال سے میں ڈاکٹر کو بلانے کی کوشش کروں گا۔ تم لیٹو میں ریسیشن میں جاکر کی سے پوچھ لوں گا۔ (تھوڑی در کے بعد جان واپس آتے ہیں)

جان السب ہو گیا۔ ڈاکٹر فرا آئیل گے۔ انھوں نے یہاں سے فون کیا۔ سنو۔ دروازے پر کوئی ہے۔ میرے خیال سے ڈاکٹر ہول گے۔

پ وول ب عرا مام ذاكر المول مد المول المود و المدل المود و المحتال المود و المحتال المود و المحتال المواد المحتال المود و المحتال المح بنائے۔ کیابات ہے؟

ہیلن : ضحن ڈاکٹر صاحب میں بیاری ہو گئی ہول۔ پیٹ میں گڑیز ہے۔ بیٹی ہے اور سر میں خت درد ہے۔ معلوم ہوتا ہے کہ بغار بھی ہے۔

ال حدود کے سوم اور ایک اور میں دیکے اور شاں دیکے اول گا۔ بال آپ کا در چہ ترارت ایک دو پہ ترارت ایک دو پہر اپنے اور شاں دیکے اول گا۔ بال آپ کا در چہ ترارت ایک دو پار (۱۹۴۳) ہے۔ آپ تھی معلوم ہوتی ہیں۔ حمکن ہے کہ یہ آپ و وہ ای تبدیلی کی دجہ ہے۔ جو۔ ش آپ کو پکھ ایش بالوکک دول گا۔ اور کھانے ہے۔ میں آپ کو پکھ ایش بالوکک دول گا۔ اور کھانے ہے۔ میں ایک ایک دول گا۔ اور کھانے ہے۔ میں ایک ایک دول گا۔ اور کھانے ہے۔ کہانے میں میں میں کا میں میں کا میں میں کہانے میں کہانے میں کہانے میں کہانے میں کا میں کہانے کہ

ميلن : دهنياداد' ذاكر صاحب بمين آپ كو كتنادينا چاہي؟ ڈاکٹر : لبن میک ہے۔ آپ تارے مہان ہیں۔ ایک دن آرام فرانے اور جب آپ کی محت میں بوج واج کی وجب آپ کی است

\$1.00	كھانا وانا	khānā vānā	food and stuff	<i>چ</i> ڙڻ	peciš	diarrhoea, dysentery
	يكار	bīmār	ill			(f.)
	ليننا	lețnā	to lie down	ريسيشن	rīsepšan	reception (m.)
100	خاموش	xāmoš	quiet, silent	ہو گیا	ho gayā	it's OK ('it's
	حمی ی	thakī sī	a bit tired			become')
	نظر آتی ہو	thakī sī nazar ātī	youlook	وروازه	darvāza	door(m.)
	- /	ho		وروازے	darvāze	at the door
	3/1	dard	pain (m.)		par	
رې	سر جل در	sar men dard hai	I have a headache	نمخ	namaste	hello (Hindu
	بخار	buxār	fever (m.)			greeting)

شر ها بمار می	šarmā bīmār sī	Sharma a bit ill	احتياط	ihtīāt	caution (f.)
نخت	saxt	hard, harsh,	. € ∠	baratnā	to use,
		terrible	احتياط برتنا	ihtīāt	to take
بر	bistar	bed (m.)	20	baratnā	care
ورچ ارت	darja-e harārat	temperature (m.)	وهنياواو	dhanyāvād	thank you (to
زيان	zabān	tongue (f.)			Hindus)
آب و ہوا	āb o havā	climate	مبمان	mihmān	guest (m.
		(f.)	بب	jab	when
تبديلي	tabdīlī	change		sihat	health (f.
کی وجہ ہے	kī vajah se	because of			
اينثى بايونك	aintī	antibiotic			
	bāvotik	(m.)			

### gavā'id Grammar قراعر

### hijje Spelling

בארב darja-e harārat 'temperature' is formed from two Persian words class, degree' and -nT harārat 'heat'. Notice that the  $iz\bar{a}fat$  is written over final + (choff he) with + hamza.

### khānā vānā 'food and stuff'

A word is often followed by its rhyme beginning with  $v\bar{a}\bar{u}$ , giving the sense 'X and stuff, X and things'. Compare  $\angle i \leqslant paise$  vaise 'money and things'  $\angle p \wr e$  cae vae 'tea and stuff'.

We have met the word  $\nu$  'ڻ'  $= s\bar{a}$ ,  $s\bar{i}$ , se used after the adjectives and عبد : بحث المحالة 'many people', المحال 'a lot of food'.

Used after adjectives it has the sense of '-ish', 'sort of', 'a bit':

ادى ب He's a good sort of man You look a bit ill آپيارے نظر آٽے بي She's a bit tired a reddish colour لال سارعك

### Illness

Unfortunately, the subcontinent is not without its perils for the intrepid

common. The usua	l way of saying you 'have'	something is: $4 \sqrt{n} / 4 \times 2$ X (to me is/has become)':
م زکام ہے	mujhe zukām hai	I have a cold
مجھے بخارے	mujhe buxār hai	I have a fever
4 0 2.	mujhe peciš hai	I have diarrhoea
ميرے مر عل وروب	mere sar men dard hai	I have a headache

### The most common ailments you are likely to suffer are:

زكام	zukām	head cold (m.)		pīlīā	jaundice (m.)
بخار	buxār	fever (m.)	فتحجلى	khujlī	itching, rash (f.)
چين پېر	peciš	diarrhoea(f.)	تفكادث	thakāvaţ	tiredness (f.)

ארשיבים אל mere pet men garbar hai I have an upset (stomach) mere gale men xarrāš hai I have a sore throat

### ulţī vomiting(f.)

ious III	11103303 0	iic.			
بيضه	haizā	cholera(m.)	لميريا	malerīā	malaria (m.)
چک	cecak	smallpox (m.)	سوزاک	sozāk	venereal disease (m.)

### The word for 'broken' is to tūtā:

ميرا بازونوناب	merā bāzū ţūţā hai	My arm is broken
ميرى ٹانگ نونى ہے	merī ṭāṅg ṭūṭī hai	My leg is broken

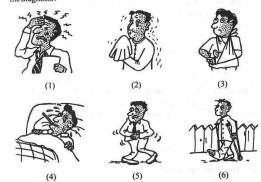
### The principal parts of the body are:

/	sar	head (m.)	حِماتی	chātī	breast, chest (f.)
بال	bāl	hair (m.p.)	ول	dil	heart (m.)
257	āṅkh	eye (f.)	كلجى	kalejī	liver (f.)
كاك	kān	ear (m.)	پيت	peţ	stomach (m.)
تاک	nāk	nose (f.)	1	kamar	waist (f.)
15	galā	throat(m.)	£t	ţāṅg	leg (f.)
گرون	gardan	neck (f.)	ياول	paon	foot(m.)
1 .1	l.z. dbz	aboulder(m)	- 11	bāzū	arm (m)

# UNIT 14 mašq Exercise مثق

### 14.1 Diagnose the illnesses

Look at the illustrations of a man with various ailments. Can you provide the diagnosis?



# namaste 'hello'; dhanyāvād 'thank you'

ze' is the usual greeting for Hindus, and is used in the sense of both 'hello' and 'goodbye'. The usual word for 'thank you' to Hindus is رضياد is just as common.

### Numbers

At this stage you should learn the numerals 81-100 (Appendix 1).

### ಪರ್ sigāfat Culture

When travelling in Pakistan and India, so long as you have had all the required injections and take sensible precautions, you stand little risk of becoming seriously ill. Minor stomach ailments are, however, very common. In both countries there is no shortage of well-trained doctors who can be called out on a fee-paying basis. Hotels can usually make such

arrangements. Surgeries and hospitals are run very much as in Britain, and a pharmacy ( $2\bar{\nu}_{17}$ )  $dav\bar{a}$   $xan\bar{a}$  m.) will usually be able to provide you with what you need. Traditional homoeopathic medicine can be very effective for common upsets. The Muslim system is known as  $\dot{b}_{\xi Z}$   $y\bar{u}n\bar{a}n\bar{\imath}$  'Greek', transmitted by the Arabs from Ancient Greek sources. The Hindu  $J_{\xi J_1 Z_1}$   $\bar{a}yurvedik$  system depends upon Sanskrit medical texts.

The word for 'injection' is & fikā (m.) 'To have an injection done' the fikā lagvānā:

mujhe haize/pīlīe/ṭī bī/meninjāiṭis kā ṭīkā lagvāna hai I have to have an injection for cholera/hepatitis/T.B./meningitis

In India and Pakistan you should always insist on having boiled water ปุ๋ยูงเท่ ublā hūā pānī (ปฺย ubalnā 'to come to the boil)' if bottled water is not available.

# mašqen Exercises

### 14.2 Answer the questions

 $\ensuremath{\mathsf{Mr}}$  Khan is not feeling well and calls a doctor. Listen to the dialogue and answer the questions:

- 1 What are Mr Khan's two main symptoms?
- 2 What two further questions does the doctor ask?
- 3 How high is Mr Khan's temperature?
- 4 What seems to be the main cause of the indisposition?
- 5 What does the doctor prescribe?
- 6 What should Mr Khan do if things do not improve?

## 14.3 Write using both words and figures

1 I was born in 1960. 2 It is quarter past ten. 3 The plane leaves at about half past twelve. 4 We ought to arrive there at quarter to five. 5 What's the time? It's sixteen minutes to five. 6 It is now eighteen minutes past eleven.

### 14.4 Compound verbs

Replace the verbs underlined in the following sentences with their corresponding compound:

### 14.5 Compounds with lenā and denā

Replace the verbs underlined in the following sentences with their corresponding & or & compound, as indicated:

- In this unit you will learn how to:

  say 'while doing' and 'as soon as I do'
  - say how long you have been somewhere
  - announce yourself to total strangers
  - start to use the postal system

# mukālima ek Dialogue 1 على ايك

John finds Aslam's friend, Sharif Ahmad, and introduces himself.

جان : آداب عض ہے۔آپ شریف احمد صاحب ہیں؟ فریف اج : کی ہاں اورآپ کا اسم شریف ہے۔ من من ن المراقع المرا مصروفیات ہیں؟ جان : آپ شاید اندازه الا کے بین کہ میں اگریز ہوں۔ انگلتان میں میرے بہت ہندوستانی اور پاکتانی دوست بیں۔ ان کے ساتھ رہتے رہتے میں نے تحور کی 

..O

کرا چی پنچتے ہی بیں ان سے ملا۔ شہر میں چلتے چلتے میں نے ان کوروک لیا اور ان سے دریافت کیا کید کٹور میدروڈ کہاں ہے، انہوں نے فوراً گھر پرآنے کی دعوت 

					- 0
آئے ہوئے کت دن ہوگئے		how long have you	10-000,000	andāza lagānā	to guess
	ho gae	been here?	رجرج	rahte rahte	while staying
اسم شريف	ism šarīf	name (formal)	تھوڑا بہت	thoṛā bahut	a little
جھامیدے	mujhe	(m.) I hope	ماشاءالله	māsāllāh	praise be to God
	ummīd hai	100	يهنجي بى	pahuncte hī	as soon as
	ummīd bāt yih hai		حلة حلة	nı calte calte	I arrived while
Z 91	mujhe	is that while I	 روکتا،روک لینا	roknā, rok	walking to stop
	hote hūe se vāqif	was acquainted		lenä	(some- one)
تقصيل	tafsīl	with detail (f.)	ے دریافت کرنا	se daryāft karnā	to enquire from
سنانا	sunānā	to tell, relate	دموت	da'vat	invitation (f.)
مصروفيات	masrūfiāt	activities (f.p.)	شريف	šarīf	honourable, kind
اندازه	andāza	guess, estimate	ព្រំ	pilānā	to give to drink
		(m.)	گزارش	guzāriš	request (f.)

کے ور میان	ke darmiyān	between	BUN	mamnūn	grateful to
تعلقات		relations, connecti-	بے مد مجھے بیتہ نہیں	hūṅgā be had mujhe pata	you extremely I don't
عموماً کانجیتے ہی	'umūman pahuncte	ons (m.p.) generally as soon as	逐声	nahīń xarc	know expense
ۋاك	hī ḍāk	you arrive post, mail	171	utarnā	(m.) to come down,
	havāī ḍāk	(f.) air mail (f.)	اترتے ہی	utarte hī	land as soon as I land
ممنون	mamnün	indebted,	ۋالنا ۋالنا		to put in
آپ کا ممنون	āp kā	grateful I shall be	ۋاك ميں ۋالنا	ḍāk men ḍālnā	to post

# gavā'id Grammar قواعد

### hijje **Spelling**

māsāllāh 'Praise be to Allah!' is composed of three Arabic words: الماءات  $m\bar{a}$  'which, as';  $r = \bar{s}\bar{a} - a$  'wished';  $m\bar{a} = a$  (wished'). Note the way in which the final -a of r = a and the initial -a of  $m\bar{m} = a$  are elided. The phrase is often used to express praise, and may be rendered in English as 'Praise be to God!'.

is 'umūman 'usually' is another example of an Arabic adverb ending in I' tanvīn. Compare the examples given in Unit 11.

# 'ism šarīf'your good name اسم شريف

This formal phrase, used when politely enquiring someone's name (some-Inis tormal phrase, used when politely enquiring someone's name (something like the rather old-fashioned English: 'What is your good name, sir?'), is composed of two Arabic words: רו ism 'name' and שُلِّهُ مَعْمَالُهُ أَنَّهُ اللهُ ا rendered in English as 'a decent fellow'. In the dialogue Sharif Ahmad makes a weak pun on his name.

## ummīd 'hope'

UNIT 15

The phrase verb  $\int \varphi \, \omega' \, dk = mujhe \, umm\bar{u} \, dhai \, (ki)$  'to me there is hope (that) means 'I hope that ...':

We hope that it will not rain tomorrow

# Some uses of the present and past participles

We have seen that the present participle ('doing, going') is formed by adding the suffixes:  $t \in \mathcal{G}$  '\( \text{\$\tex{\$\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{

The Urdu participles are in fact adjectives and to some extent function like any other adjectives, as they do in English, e.g. 'a loving mother; a burning house; a desired child; a dead man'. It should be noted that in both Urdu and English not every participle can be used in this way. For example we cannot say 'an arrived bus' or 'a doing person'.

We may illustrate the adjectival use of the participles in Urdu by using the two verbs in jalnā 'to burn/to be burnt' and to marnā 'to die'

The participles form their feminine, masculine plural and oblique like  $\psi^{\prime\prime}_{i}$ acchā:

### Present participle

The state of the s						
	جل	jaltā	'burning'	50	martā	'dying'
Masculine singular direct	جاثا	jaltā		51	martā	
Masculine singular oblique	جلت	jalte		21	marte	
Masculine plural	جلت	jalte		2,	marte	
Feminine	جلتي	jaltī		مرتی	martī	
Past participle						
	جلا	jalā	'burnt'	1/	marã	'dead'
Masculine singular direct	جلا	jalā		10	marā	
Masculine singular oblique	جلے	jale		4	mare	
Masculine plural	طے	jale		4	mare	
Feminine	جلي	ialī		150	marī	

ری marī

These participles may be used simply as adjectives:

على مان مين 'a burning house' جلتامكان

'in a burning house' م تے لوگ مرتی عورت 'dying people' 'a dying woman' جلامكان جلے مکان میں 'a burnt house' 'in a burnt house'

مرى عورت 'a dead woman'

These phrases may be compared to: التصحيلات المجيم كان مين المجيم مكان مين المجيم المكان على المجيم المكان على المجيم المكان على المجيم المكان على المجيم المكان المحيم المكان المجيم المكان المكان

The past participle of tn: 1n. 2n. in hūā, hūā, hūē, is often placed directly after the present and past participles of the main verb:

> jalā hūā عِلا بوا jaltā hūā שלו martă hūā marā hūā

Both elements change for gender, number and case:

'burning bread' جلتی ہوئی روئی مرتے ہوئے لوگ 'dying people' 'in a burnt house' جلتے ہوئے مکان میں مرى ہوئى عورت 'a dead woman'

This is by far the most common form of the participles, especially when used as adjectives.

When the participle is used as an adjective, it can often be translated into English by a clause beginning with 'who' or 'which':

yih āp kī likhī hūī kitāb hai?

Is this the book which you wrote ('your written book')?

### The masculine oblique participle in adverbial phrases

In English typical adverbial phrases are: 'while going', 'since coming', 'as soon as arriving'. In Urdu such phrases are expressed by the masculine oblique participle:

دیلی میں ہوتے ہوئے میں ان سے ملا

dihlī men hote hūe main un se milā

While (being) in Delhi, I met him

دوستوں کے ساتھ رہتے ہوئے میں نے اردوسکھ لی

doston ke sāth rahte hūe main ne urdū sīkh lī While staying with friends, I learnt Urdu

UNIT 15

آپ کو کراچی آئے ہوئے گتنے دن ہو گئے؟

āp ko karācī āe hūe kitne din ho gae hain?

How long have you been in Karachi ('to you having come to Karachi how many days have come about')?

When it is implied that the action took place gradually, the oblique present participle, without the addition of  $\angle n$ , is repeated:

ان کے ساتھ رہے رہتے میں نے اردو کی کی

un ke sāth rahte rahte main ne urdū sīkh lī

While staying with them I gradually learnt Urdu

رائے پر چلتے چلے میں گر گیا rāste par calte calte main gir gayā

While walking (gradually) along the road, I fell down

t / girnā/gir jānā means 'to fall down'

Followed by  $\, \mathcal{G} \,$  the masculine oblique present participle has the sense of 'as soon as':

لندن پنجتے ہی میں آپ کو فون کروں گا

landan pahuncte hī main āp ko fon karūngā

As soon as I arrive in London, I'll phone you ('as soon as arriving')

ہیتھرو اڑتے ہی میری چھٹی بھیج دیکیے

hīthro utarte hī merī ciṭṭhi bhej dījīe

Send my letter as soon as you land at Heathrow ('as soon as landing')

means 'to go away':

main abhī calā jātā hūn

I'm going away now

laṛkī calī gaī hai لاک بلی گئے

The girl's gone away

ham yahān se cale jāenge We'll go away from here

cale jāo پلے جاؤ

Go away

When you ask how long a person has been/will be somewhere, in Urdu you have to specify what you mean by 'long' - 'a little while', 'so many days/months/years'?

āp kitnī der ke lie yahān rahenge?

For how long will you stay here?

Here  $\,_{\mathcal{L}^2}$  means 'short space of time'. Its use in the last question implies that the person is not expected to stay very long.

āp ko yahān āe hūe kitne din ho gae?

How long ('for how many days') have you been here?  $\omega$   $\mathbb Z$  could be substituted by  $\mathbf Z$  'how many months?'  $\mathcal U$   $\mathcal Z$  'how many years?', etc.

### thoṛā bahut 'a little'

The rather curious combination  $\ensuremath{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \ensuremath{\boldsymbol{\omega}} \ensuremath{\boldsymbol{\beta}}$  'little much' means 'a little (bit of)'

Do you know Urdu? Yes I know a little Urdu

### Pairs of verbs

In past units we have had a number of examples of pairs of related verbs. The second of the pair is often distinguished from the first by having  $\cdot -\bar{a}$  added to the stem. The addition of  $\cdot \cdot$  usually has the literal sense of 'to cause to', 'to make', although in English we often employ a completely different verb to convey this 'causal' meaning. Examples are:

ينجنا	to arrive	٢٠٠٤	'to cause to arrive' = to take to
ير هنا	to read	يزهانا	'to cause to read' = to teach
لكنا	to be applied	16	'to cause to be applied' = to app

ن to hear النائع 'to cause to hear' = to relate, tell In this unit we met the phrase verb النائع andāza lagānā 'to apply a guess' = 'to guess'.

The verb الله  $sun\bar{a}n\bar{a}$  'to tell' means more or less the same as الله : محمد الله ('tell me everything in detail') and is frequently used in the context of story telling:

UNIT 15

There are also some slightly irregular formations such as:

Come and sit down and I'll give you some tea (to drink)

In the village they will feed you well

No hard and fast rules can be given for the formation of one of the pairs from the other, and individual verbs are best learnt as separate items of vocabulary.

### ين عبي على mujhe pata nahīń 'I don't know'

The word = literally means 'trace', and is also used in the sense of 'address'

I didn't have your address

The phrase معلوم نیس 'to me is/not a trace' is the exact equivalent of معلوم نیس  $rac{2}{2}$ 

I don't know how much the cost will be

### াঃ ḍāk 'the post', 'mail'

The word  $\int 6 \, d\bar{a}k$  is used throughout the subcontinent for 'post', 'mail'. Common words and expressions in which it occurs are:

ڈاک خانہ	ḍāk xāna	post office (m.)
ہوائی ڈاک سے	havāī ḍāk se	by air mail
ڈاک سے بھیجنا	dāk se bhejnā	to send by post
ۋاك بىس ۋالنا	dāk men dālnā	to post' ('to put into the post')

# mašq Exercise مثق

### 15.1 Complete the sentences

Complete the verb in brackets:

(burnt bread)	_ تہیں جاہئے۔ اُس کو یہاں سے لے جاؤ	
(as soon as arriving)	میں آپ کو فون کروں گا۔ (	ہوائی اڑے

UNIT 15

(while staying)	بچاره احمد بیار ہو گیا۔	يا كستان ميس	3
(while walking gradually)	وه گانا گار با تھا۔	ن رائے پر	
(while being)	میں شریف سے ملوں گا۔		
		لندن میں	5

# mukālima do Dialogue 2

Sharif Ahmad invites John to give a talk on the Indians and Pakistanis of

: شریف صاحب آپ جھے اپنے بارے میں اور اپنی زندگی کے بارے میں کچھ بتائیے۔ کیا آپ دہلی کے رہنے اوالے ہیں۔ شریف احد : بی مبین بین مراد آبادیش پیدا ہوا تھا۔ وہ جگہ عمو مااردو کی جائے پیدائش کہلاتی ے جب میں سب سے پہلے دہلی آیا تھا۔ تو میں ایک کانے میں داخل ہوا اور وہال ایٹرائی تعلیم عاصل کی۔ لیدا سے کرنے کے بعد میں دہلی یونیورٹی کے شعبہ اردو میں داخل ہوااور وہال میں نے ایم اے حاصل کی۔ مے 19 (ایس سوستر) میں جھے شعبۂ اردو میں ملازمت ملی اور تب سے میں اس شجیمی اردو ادب پڑھارہا ہول میں وہال اردو پڑھاتے ہوئے تیں (۳۰) سال ہوگئے ہیں۔ بون : خابر بر که اردو کے بہت طالب علم بول ک۔ شریف احمد : تی بال یہ نہ صرف بندوستانی بلکہ کائی غیر مکی طلبی جمی ہیں۔ علیاتی ہیں امریکن ہیں' روی ہیں و قیرہ جب آپ کو فرصت ہوگی تو آپ شیم میں تشریف لائے۔ کیا کل شام کو آپ کو فرصت ہوگی؟ : بی بال \_ کیا میں اپنی تیم کو بھی نے آسکتا ہوں؟ جان .. ن بال - با س ا بی م مو می سے اسلاموں؟
شریف اجمد ضرور غیر ملکی طلبہ شل ہے ایک امریکن میں جواتی انچی اردو بولئے ہیں جتنی
شریف اجمد آپ بولئے ہیں۔ ایک جاپائی طالب علم ہیں جن سے ملک آپ کوبری خوشی
ہوگی - جس وقت آپ آنا جاہیں آئے۔ کل شام کو پائی بچے تارکین وطن کے
بارے میں جمنے ہوگی۔ مینی جو جو جدو ستانی اور پاکستانی تارکین وطن بورپ اور
امریکہ میں آباد ہیں' ان کے سائل پر گفتگو ہوگی۔ کیا آپ ایک چھوٹی می تقریر

: احمد صاحب میں نے مجھی اردو میں تقریر نہیں کی الیکن میں کو شش کرول گا۔

•···O	ہے بارے میں	apne bāre meń	about yourself	tālib 'ilm طاب علم	student (m.)
	راد آباد	· murādābād	Muradabad (town	talaba طلب	students
			near	jāpānī جيانى	(m.p.)
			Delhi)	rūsī دوی	Japanese Russian
	جائے پیدائش	iā-e	birthplace	iusi رون jab جب	when
		paidāiš	(f.)	ب. jab ۶. jo	who,
- 1	كبلانا	kahlānā	to be	3. JO	which
			called	itnī jitn	which
	کا کج	kālij	college	jin se جن سے ملکے	as as meeting
		3	(m.)	milke	whom
	داخل ہو تا	dāxil hūā	I entered,	jis vaqt جي دقت	at the time
			was	- 70 Jis vaqt	when
			enrolled	ānā cāheṅ تايايل	
1	ايتدائى	ibtidāī	initial	oz ș	wish to
- 1	تعليم	ta'līm	education		come
			(f.)	tārikīn-e تاركين وطن	emigrants
	حاصل کرنا	hāsil karnā	to acquire,	vatan	(m.p.)
- 1			receive	غة. bahs	discussion
	تعلیم حاصل کی	ta'līm	I was		(f.)
		hāsil kī	educated	jo جو ہندوستانی	the Indian
		bī e	BA (f.)	hindustānī تاركين وطن	emigrants
	يو نيور ستى	yūnīvarsiţī	university	tārikīn-e	who
			(f.)	vatan	50.5
	شعب	šu'ba	department	yūrap يورپ	Europe
1			(m.)		(m.)
	شعبة اردو	šu'ba-e	Department	ābād آباد	settled,
		urdū	of Urdu		living
			(m.)	masāil سائل	problems
		sattar	seventy		(m.p.)
-	ملازمت	mulāzimat	employ-	guftagū مختگو	conversa-
		4 - 7	ment (f.)		tion (f.)
	بے	tab se	from then	guftagū گفتگو کرنا	to
		12.00	on	karnā	converse
	ادب	adab	literature	taqrīr يَقري	speech (f.)
			(m.)	taqrīr تقرير كرنا	to make a
	بإحانا	paṛhānā	to teach	karnā	speech

### قواعد 6 qavā'id Grammar

hijje **Spelling** 

### More on the izafat

After (alif), the izāfat is written ::

jā-e paidāiš place of birth, birthplace

Note the expression v tarikīn-e vatan 'emigrants' (literally 'abandoners of the native land'). The Arabic word v tārik means 'one who abandons/gives up'. Its special Arabic plural is v tārikīn.

### Abbreviations

Many English abbreviations are Employed in Urdu. These are written by spelling out the English sounds in the Urdu script:

bī e BA ايماك em e MA ڻي وي țī vī TV

### "apne bāre men 'about oneself'

کی طرف کے ساتھ ' We have seen that when a compound postposition such as ' محانت کے ساتھ ' نے برے ٹی is used in conjunction with one of the personal pronouns then the corresponding possessive adjective must be used as the equivalent of the اس کی طرف ہے , 'with me' مدے بدے اس 'with me' مرے ساتھ : ک or ک : 'on his/ her behalf'.

In sentences like 'tell me about yourself'; 'I'll take it with me'; 'she'll give the money on her own behalf', where both pronouns refer to the same person, the second pronoun in the English sentence is expressed by 🛫 or : این

> Teli me about yourself I'll take it with me

She'll give the money on her own behalf

## 'to be called' كبانا ; دام 'to be called'

The English sentence 'what is this called?' can be expressed with the personal phrase of ko kahnā 'to say for':

UNIT 15

اس كو (اے) اردو ميں كياكتے بيں؟ اے كتاب كتے بيں

us ko/use urdū men kyā kahte hain? use kitāb kahte hain

What do they call ('say for') this in Urdu? They call ('say for') it kitāb. ہم ویلی کوار دو کی جائے پیدائش کہتے ہیں

We call Delhi the birthplace of Urdu

It can also be expressed with the verb the kahlānā (related to 4) 'to be called':

اردومیں یہ کتاب کہلاتی ہے

urdū men yih kitāb kahlātī hai In Urdu this is called kitāb

د بلی اردو کی جائے پیدائش کہلاتی ہے

Delhi is called the birthplace of Urdu

# mašq Exercise مثق

اردویں اے کیا کتے ہیں؟ 15.2







(b)

(c)





(e)

### ب jab 'when', ت tab 'then'

In sentences such as 'When I was in Karachi, the weather was fine'; 'When you go to Bombay, meet my friends', the word 'when', is expressed in Urdu by , jab which is used in much the same way as its English counterpart. There are, however, two important points to remember:

- if the 'when' half of the sentence refers to a future event, then the verb must be in the future tense:
- the second half of the sentence is introduced by ? to 'then'.

Note the following examples carefully:

جب میں اردو بول ہول تو مجھے خوشی ہوتی ہے

When I speak Urdu (then) I am happy

جب آپ بمبئ جائيں كے تو ميرے دوست سے مليے

When you (will) go to Bombay (then) meet my friends

جب ميس كراجي عيا تو موسم الجها تفا

When I went to Karachi (then) the weather was fine

The phrase \_\_\_ jab se(literally) 'from when' means 'since' in the sense of 'from the time when'. If we say: 'Since I have been working here I have been very happy', the second half of the sentence usually begins with 💛 = tab se 'since then'. The verb in the first half of the sentence 'have been working' is present continuous in Urdu, logically enough since you are still working; similarly the verb in the second half of the sentence is also in the present:

Since I have been working ('am working') here, (since then)

I have been ('am') very happy

### لامل لا hāsil karnā 'to acquire', 'to receive'

גיל היי is a phrase verb meaning 'to acquire, receive, get'. It is often used in the context of education  $^{"}$  ליב,  $^{"}$   $^{"}$   $^{"}$   $^{"}$   $^{"}$   $^{"}$   $^{"}$ 

Where did you acquire (your) education? I acquired (my) education from Delhi University

### ? jo 'who', 'which'

In sentences such as 'The man who came ...' 'The film which is running ...' 'who' and 'which' are both expressed in Urdu by the so-called relative pronoun & jo:

> آدى جو آيا The man who came

The film which is running/showing

Note the use of the calna in the last sentence.

£ frequently precedes the noun to which it refers. In other words you can also say: 'which man came...'; 'which film is running....'. The second half of the sentence begins with \_ or ... For 'who was the man who came yesterday', in Urdu you have to say: 'the man who came' or 'which man came yesterday, who was he?':

In such sentences either construction may be used, but the second pattern with & preceding the noun to which it refers is rather more common.

Like the pronouns and so, & also has plural and oblique forms, but makes no change for gender:

Singular direct

Singular oblique jis

Plural direct 3. jo Plural oblique جن jin

As always, the oblique forms are mainly used with postpositions. Compare the following sentences, paying attention to the English translation:

### Singular direct

Is the lady who was here a Pakistani?

### Singular oblique

The man to whom you were speaking is English

### Plural direct

The problems of emigrants who are settled in Europe are very great

### Plural oblique

People who have money always remain happy

Note the oblique phrase  $\neg j_0 \not= j_0 vaqt$  'at which time' i.e. 'when(ever)':  $\neg j_1 \not= j_0 \not= j_0$ 

### ಜ ೯ itnā ... jitnā 'as ... as'

We have seen that & means 'so much'. The corresponding & means 'as much'. They 'echo' each other in sentences like the following and may be translated into English as, 'so much as', 'as ... as':

It's not as warm in London as it is in Karachi ('in London there is not so much heat as much as there is in Karachi')

He speaks Urdu as well as you ('he speaks so much good Urdu as much as you speak')

### More Arabic plurals

Regarded as a masculine Urdu noun طالب علم can also bé used as a plural:

There are many foreign students in my college

# UNIT 15 siqāfat Culture

Even during the 19th century, Indians began to migrate to other parts of the world, especially to East Africa, to take up employment. After Independence and the Partition of India and Pakistan in 1947, many people from both countries sought opportunities in Britain, and to a certain extent in the USA. The presence of these communities, especially in Britain, can hardly be ignored, and their culture has always made a significant impact upon the societies in which they have come to dwell. Language and the preservation of its traditions have always been burning issues. The younger generation, born outside the subcontinent, however, unfortunately shows increasingly less interest in the 'mother tongue'. For this reason, much effort is spent in fostering its study in schools and elsewhere. Time will tell how successful these efforts will be.

# mašq Exercises

### 15.3 يانلط True or false?

The following statements relate to the two dialogues in this unit. Say whether they are true or false:

### 15.4 At the post office

John is at the post office. Listen to his conversation with the clerk, then answer the questions:

- 1 How many letters does John want to post?
- 2 To which countries are they to be sent?
- 3 How much does it cost to send a letter by air to America?
- 4 What has John done with his parcel?

- 5 Where is the parcel being sent to?
- 6 Has he filled in the form? (المركبة bhar lenā to fill in)
- 7 What other services does John require? ( ) tar telegram (m.)

### 15.5 Complete the sentences

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the pronouns g. vyf:

1 وہلی میں آپ (کون) کے پاس ٹھم میں گے؟ 2 (جو) کوگ ٹل شام کوآئے تھے، دو کون تھ؟ 3 میں لاہور گیا کین کوئی نے ٹیس طا۔ 4 (جو) لوگ کل شام کو تائے تھے، دو وکون تھے؟

4 ( و آدی ( جو ) سے آپ باتش کرہے تھے وہ اگریز تھے؟ 5 وہ ( کون ) کاسوٹ کیس ہے؟ میرا ہے۔ 7 ہم یمیاں ( کوئی ) ہے واقت تیس بیں۔

8 (جو) لوگوں کے پاس آپرہتے ہیں، وہ بہت مہر مان ہیں۔

# 15.6 Dialogue

Take your part in the dialogue:

فان صاحب: آپ بزی اچھی اردو بولتے ہیں رائتی ہیں۔ آپ نے اردو کہال میمی ؟ Say that you learnt it while staying with friends in You London

خان صاحب : کیالندن میں بہت اردو بو لنے والے رہتے ہے؟ Say that there are many Indian and Pakistani emigrants in England

خان صاحب: وولوگ عام طورے کیا کام کرتے ہیں؟ Say that many of them work in offices and factories

میرے ایک دوست وہاں رہتے ہیں۔ کیا آپ آئیس پیچٹی دیے کیس گر عمیں گی؟ خان صاحب Ask for his address and say you will gladly give it to

# Urdu - English Vocabulary

### 7 alif madd

قِيلَ عَلَىٰ الْحَكُمُّ عَلَيْهُا الْحَكُمُّ عَلَيْهُا الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُّةُ الْحَكُمُ الْحَلَيْمُ الْحَكُمُ الْحَلَيْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلَيْمُ الْحَلَيْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلَيْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلِمُ الْحَلِيمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَلِمُ الْحَلْمُ الْحَ today nowadays at last 'my respects', hello, how do you do? man, person (m.) half rest, ease (m.) to rest זון מ ārāmo āsān آטاט āsānī آטائی ārāmdih comfortable easy āsānī se easily ās pās kā nearby, surrounding āge āge calnā forward, before, in front to go forward, advance ke āg

Tām

Tānā

Tānkh

Tānevi in front of mango (m.) to come eye (f.) the coming, next ānevālā

### ice cream (m.) / alif

slowly, quietly

meanwhile

āhista

āis krīm

ab اب ab tak ابتك abhī ابتخى ubalnā ابلنا now, from now on still, till now now, right now to come to the boil เล่าแบบ ublă hūā
ปฏิ aprail
ปฏิ apnā
ปฏิ utarnā
ปฏิ itnā boiled April (m.) one's own to come down, land so much itnā ziyāda اعازياده itne men so much, all this much

```
اتوار
اٹھنا
                                                            itvār
                                                                                                                                                                  Sunday(m.)
                                                                                                                                                               leave, may I take my leave? (f.) to give leave good; well; really newspaper(m.) to here, here
                                                            uṭhnā
                           اجازت
                                                            ijāzat
                                                           ijāzat denā
ابها الموادت و نا المهاد المواد المو
                                                          acchā
                                                          axbār
                                                          idhar
                                                          urdū
                                                                                                                                                                 Urdu (f.)
hospital (m.)
                                                          aspatāl
                                                          ustād
                                                                                                                                                                 teacher(m.)
                                                          isțešan
                                                                                                                                                               station (m.)
school (m.)
                                                          iskūl
                                                       izāfat
i'tirāz
                                                                                                                                                                 the izāfat (f.)
                                                                                                                                                             objection(m.)
to object
sorrow(m.)
                                                        i'tirāz karnā
                                                       afsos
mujhe afsos hai
                                                                                                                                                             I'm sorry
October (m.)
most, mostly, often
                                                        aktūbar
                                                       aksar
akelā
                                                                                                                                                             alone, lonely
                                                       agar
                                                                                                                                                              although
                                                       agarce
                                                    agast
aglā
                                                                                                                                                              August(m.)
                                                                                                                                                             next
next year
                                                       agle sāl
                                                      agle hafte
assalāmu 'alaikum
                                                                                                                                                              next week
                                                                                                                                                             Muslim greeting 'peace be upon you'
Allah, God (m.)
                                                      allāh
                                                      ummīd
                                                                                                                                                              hope (f.)
                                                                                                                                                           (I) hope that
                                                    ummīd hai ki
                                                    amīr
                                                    intizār
                                                                                                                                                             waiting (m.)
                                                    (kā) intizār karnā
intizām
                                                                                                                                                             to wait for
                                                                                                                                                             arrangement(m.)
                                                    (kā) intizām karnā
                                                                                                                                                           to arrange
                                                                                                                                                          engineer(m.)
God willing
                                                  injinīr
inšāllāh
                      انتاس
                                                    ananās
                                                                                                                                                          pineapple (m.)
above, upstairs
                                                    ūpar
```

اور_	aur	and; more; else
اور پچچ	aurkuch	something else
اور کوئی		someone else
اور نیمی	aur bhī	even more
اونث	ūńţ	camel(m.)
اونچا	ūńcā	high, tall
انم	ahm	important
ايا	aisā	such
ایک ایکبار	ek	one, a
ایکبار	ek bār	one time, once
ایک بی	ek hī	the same
		→ be
بات	bāt	thing, matter, word (f.)
ہے ہاتیں کرنا	se bāten karnā	to converse with
كونى بات مهين	koī bāt nahīn	it doesn't matter
N.	bār	time, occasion (f.)
ایک بار	ek bār	once
ایک بار پھرے	ek bär phir se	once again
بارش	bāriš	rain (f.)
بارش ہونا	bāriš honā	to rain
کے بارے میں	ke bāre men	about, concerning
بازار	bāzār	bazaar, market (m.)
باغجي	bāğīca	garden(m.)
ياتى	bāqī	remaining, leftover
بال	bāl	hair(m.p)
بالكل	bilkul	quite, absolutely
باندحنا	bāṅdhnā	to tie, tie up, pack
ساری باندهنا	sāŗī bāṅdhnā	to put on a saree
باور چی خانه	bāvarcīxānā	kitchen(m.)
باير	bāhar	out, outside
بايان	bāyān	left
باعي ہاتھ پر	bāyen hāth par	on the left
tta	batānā	to tell
بٹھا تا	biṭhānā	to seat, show to a seat
iķ	bajnā	to ring, strike, be played
٤	baje	o'clock
ایک بچ	ek baje	at one o'clock
كتغية	kitne baje?	at what time?

بحاره بخين bicāra poor, wretched childhood(m.) bacpan bacca child buxār fever (m.) bad qismatī se unfortunately badalnã to change budh Wednesday (m.) burā bad baṛā big, great, elder; very elder brother برے بھائی بس بس بس بعد میں بعد المادة bare bhāī bas bus (f.) well, enough (ke) ba'd after ba'd men afterwards ba'z some bikhrā paṛā scattered about bulānā to call balki but, indeed banānā to make بند بند کرنا band shut, closed band karnā to shut, turn off to speak بولنا bolnā یحاری بعائی bhārī heavy brother (m.) much, many, very bhāī bahut بهت bahut sā/se much, many bhar all through, all over دن مجر din bhar all day long good, better, fine دی بر بہتر بموک بحوک (کو) بجوک لگنا (کو) بجوک ہونا bihtar bahin sister (f.) bhūk hunger(f.) (ko) bhūk lagnā to feel hungry (ko) bhūk honā to be hungry بجولنا bhūlnā to forget 'roast meat' (m.) بوس بمونا گوشت بهیجنا بهیجنا بینا bhūnā gošt bhī also, as well, even bhejnā to send bhīŗ crowd(f.)

son(m.)

daughter(f.) baiṭhnā bas men baithnā to get onto a bus be-had extremely berā waiter(m.) becnã to sell begam lady, wife (f.) یار بیک bīmār baink bank (m.) be-vaqt untimely, out of time بيوى bīvī wife (f.) یاد کرنا کے پاس پاسپورٹ پاگل pār karnā ke pās to cross near, by, with pāsporț pāgal pānā passport(m.) پائ پانی to find, manage to pānī water (m.) address, sign (m.) پية پية نهيں پتلون pata pata nahīn don't know patlūn trousers (m.) بخیلا پخیلے ہفتے/سال pichlā last, previous pichle hafte/sāl last week/ year کام پر کام پرانا پرانا par kām par on, at at work ghar par at home purānā old (of things) بريثان parešān worried, anxious paṛnā to fall, to have to, must يزهنا paṛhnā to read, study پند (کو)پندآنا سرس pasand pleasing (ko) pasand ānā to enjoy يندكرنا pasand karnā to choose (كو)پند ہونا (ko) pasand honā to like پنديده pasandīda favourite ریکانا (سے)پوچھنا pakānā to cook (se) pūchnā to ask

full, whole

URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY

يورا pūrā

```
pošāk
                                          dress (f.)
                                         less one quarter
two and three quarters
               paune
              paune tīn
               phir
                                          once more, then, again
               phir bhī
                                          even so
phirse
                                         again
              phal
pahlā
                                          fruit(m.)
                                         first
              pahle
                                         at first, ago, before
              do sāl pahle
                                         two years ago
before
              se pahle
              pahuṅcānā
pahuṅcnā
                                         to deliver, take (to)
                                         to arrive
to put on (clothes), wear
              pahinnā
              phūl
                                         flower(m.)
              pyās
                                         thirst(f.)
               (ko) pyās lagnā
                                         to feel thirsty
              (ko) pyās honā
                                         to be thirsty
                                         stomach(m.)
  رِّ (٢)
څخ
ټر
              pet
              pīche
                                         behind
              (ke) pīche
                                         behind
                                         on foot
پيدل
پيدل جاتا / چلنا
مير
پيم
پيغ
چيا
              paidal jānā/calnā
                                         to go on foot, walk
              pīr
                                        Monday (m.)
paisa, money (m.)
              paisā
              paise
pīnā
                                         money (m.p.)
to drink
              tārīx
                                         history, date (f.)
              tab
                                         then
              tab se
                                         since then
              tajruba-kär
                                         experienced
              tašrīf
                                         honour(f.)
              tašrīf rakhnā
                                         to sit down, be (at home)
              tašrīf lānā
                                         to come (in)
                                         picture; photograph (f.)
              tasvīr
                                         to take a photograph
              tasvīr khainenā
                                        education(f.)
to be educated
              ta'līm
```

ta'līm pānā

```
detail (f.)
in detail
                    tafsīl
                    tafsīl se
                    tafsīlāt
                                                     details (f.p.)
                    taqrīban
                                                     almost about
                                                     division, partition (f.)
up to, as far as, even
trouble, formality (m.)
                    taqsīm
                    tak
                    takalluf
                    koī takalluf nahīn
(kī) talāš karnā
                                                     it's no trouble
  (ک) الاش کرنا
                                                     to look for
                                                     all, every, whole, complete
then, so, well
                    tamām
تَمَا عَلَى عَنْ يَتِي مُنْ تَعِيلُ
                    thā, thī, the, thīn
                                                     was, were
      تھکا (ہوا)
تھکٹا
                    thakā (hūā)
                    thaknā
                                                     to become tired
سنت
تحوڑا (سا)
تحوڑے (ہے)
تحوڑی و بر کے بعد
                    thoṛā (sā)
                                                     a little, some
                    thore (se)
thori der ke ba'd
                                                     a few
in a little while
         تیار
تیار کرنا
                    tayyār
                                                     ready
                                                     to prepare
preparation (f.)
to prepare
                    tayyār karnā
tayyārī
  تیری
(کی) تیری کرنا
                    (kī) tayyārī karnā
                                                     quick, smart, spicy, strong
                    tezī se
                                                     quickly
                    tīsrā
   ticket; (postage) stamp (m.)
                    tikat
                    topī
thanḍā
                                                     hat (f.)
                                                     cold, cool
                                                     to stay, reside
all right, precisely
                    thahrnā
                    thīk
                    thīk cār baje
                                                     at four o'clock precisely
taxi (f.)
                    taiksī
                    țaiksīvālā
                    telīfon
telīvižan
                                                     telephone (m.)
television (m.)
                                              & jīm
           جأكنا
جاك
                                                     to wake up
                    jāgnā
                                                     darling(f.)
```

265

```
jānā
                                              to go
to know
               jānnā
                jab
                                              when
                jitnā
                                              as much as, as
               jitnī jaldī ho sake
                                              as quickly as possible
      جگه
برجگه
جلد
جلدتی
              jagah
har jagah
jald
                                              place (f.)
all over the place
                                              quickly, soon
              jald hī
                                              very soon
    جدی
جلدی
جلدی کے
جلدی کرنا
جمع کرنا
جمع ہونا
               jaldī
                                             speed, haste, hurry; quickly (f.)
               jaldī se
                                              quickly
               jaldī karnā
                                             to hurry
to collect
               jam'karnā
               jam'honā
                                             to be collected, gather
               jum'a
                                             Friday(m.)
Thursday(f.)
               jumi'rāt
      جناب
جنوب
جنوری
               janāb
                                             sir (m.)
               janūb
                                             south (m.)
                                             January (f.)
جو (جس جن)
              jo (jis, jin)
javāb
                                             who, which
   بور س
جواب
جواب دینا
                                             answer(m.)
              javāb denā
                                             to answer
      جو تا
جو لا کی
              jūtā
                                             shoe (m.)
              jūlāī
                                            July (f.)
    بون
جہاز
جہاں
جہاں
میں
میں
میساکہ
میساکہ
                                            June (m.)
ship, aeroplane (m.)
              jahāz
              jahān
                                             where
                                            life, soul; Mr, sir; yes (m.)
              jī hān
                                            yes
              jī nahīn
              jaisā
                                            as, like
              jaisā ki
              jaise
                                            as, like, for example
                                      & ce
       عالي
              cābī
                                            key (f.)
              cādar
                                            scarf, wrap; 'chadur' (f.)
              cāval
                                           rice (m.)
to want, wish; to love
              cāhnā
```

```
(کو) جا ہے
              (ko) cāhīe
                                           is needed; ought to
جھے جاتے
مجھے جاتا جا ہے
              mujhe cāhīe
                                          I need, want
I ought to go
              mujhe jānā cāhīe
             cāhīe thā
                                           ought to have
             cāe
                                           tea (f.)
                                          tea shop (m.)
uncle, father's brother (m.)
             cāe xānā
             cacā
(kar) cuknā
  بي
(کر) مچنا
                                           to finish (doing)
      طلانا
                                          to drive
  چین
چیدل چلنا
چونقا
چوننگه
چیمشن
محمده
                                          to walk, move, go, depart
             calnā
             paidal calnā
cauthā
                                          to go on foot
                                          fourth
             cūṅki
                                          since, because
             chattā
                                          sixth
             chuţţī
                                         holiday(f.)
small, little, short; younger
 چھوٹا
چھوٹا بھائی
             choțā
            chotā bhāī
                                          younger brother (m.)
    حچوژنا
             choṛnā
                                          to leave, abandon, give up
thing (f.)
      2
             cīz
                                ر baṛī he
حال
کیاحال ہے؟
حالِ ہی میں
                                          condition, state; the present (m.)
             hāl
             kyā hāl hai?
                                          how are you?
            hãl hĩ men
                                          recently
    حالاتك
            hālānki
                                          although
            hisāb
    حباب
                                          account, bill (m.)
                                    ż xe
   خاتون
           xātūn
                                         lady (f.)
            xās
                                         special especially
خاص طور پر
خاص کر
خالی
            xās taur par/se
            xāskar
                                         especially
            xālī
                                         empty
silent, quiet
           xāmoš
  خاندان
خبر
خبر یں
خبریں
            xāndān
                                         family (m.)
            xabar
                                         news, information (f.)
            xabreń
                                         the news (f.p.)
end, finish (m.)
            xatam
            xatam karnā
```

URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY

xatam honā

```
URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY
```

ويوار dīvār

darvāzā

door(m.) river(m.) daryā disambar December (m.) du'ā a prayer (f.) دعا آپ کی دعاہے polite answer to an enquiry after one's health āp kī du'ā hai invitation, party (f.) da'vat to invite office (m.) da'vat denā daftar dikhānā to show heart(m.) dil dilcasp interesting dilcaspī interest(f.) I am interested in this mujhe is se dilcaspī مجھےاس ہے دلچیں ہے دلہن bride (f.) dulhan day (m.) رن din دن جر din bhar all day long world (f.) dunyā dopahr دنيا midday (m.) K-33 dopahr kā khānā do pahr ke ba'd dūdh lunch (m.) in the afternoon, pm دوپير كا كھانا دو پہر کے بعد milk (m.) @333 رورھ (ہے) دور کتی دور (se) dür kitnī dür? far (from) how far? دوست dost friend(m.) second; other; next 100 düsrā the next day bridegroom (m.) دوسرے دل دولھا دونول dūsre din dūlhā both donon دور د هونا د هونا dhūp sunshine(f.) dhonā to wash lateness, delay (f.) der 13 دیرے (آنا) دیر کرنا تھوڑی دیر کے بعد to come late to be late, delay der se (ānā) der karnā thoṛī der ke ba'd in a little while (کی) د مکیه بھال کرنا دیکھنا (kī) dekh bhāl karnā to look after to see, watch dekhnā to give denā ديا

wall (f.)

267

God (m.) xudā xudā hāfiz خداحافظ goodbye xidmat service (f.) expense, spending (m.) to spend (money) xarc xarc karnā xarc honā to be spent shopping (f.) to buy xarīdārī xarīdnā letter (m.) xat ladies (f.p.) good, excellent, well xavātīn xūb xūbsūrat beautiful xud self (I) myself main xud xuš happy xuš āmaded welcome! good news (f.) xuš xabarī xuš qismatī se fortunately xušgavār pleasant happiness, pleasure (f.) xušī āp se milkar barī xušī very pleased to meet you idea, thought, opinion (m.) in my opinion, I think xayāl mere xayāl se xair well, all right ) dāl داخل ہونا to enter, be enrolled grandfather, father's father (m.) dāxil honā dādā dādī grandmother, father's mother (f.) cles dārul-hukūmat capital (m.) دال dāl lentils (f.) right dāyān دایاں دانیںہاتھ پر dāen hāth par on the right رج darja بهلادرج pahlā darja درد dard class, rank (m.) first class pain (m.) ke darmiyān between, among

to be finished

```
dāl ځ
                 dāk
                                                post(f.)
post office (m.)
       وب
ڈاکٹر
ڈاکٹر
ڈالٹا
                 dāk xāna
                 dāktar
dālnā
                                                doctor(m.)
                                                to pour, put in compartment, carriage (m.)
     ۇبا
ۋھائى
ۋھائى بىج
                 dibbā
                 dhāī
                                                two and a half
                 dhāī baje
                                                at half past two
ane and a half
     ڙيڙھ
ڏيڙھ <u>ئ</u>
                 derh
                 derh baje
                                                at half past one
                                          j zāl
                                               just, rather, a bit
way, method
          ذرا
                 zarā
    ذر بع
کے ذریعے
                 zarī'a
                 ke zarī'e
                                                through, by means of
                                              re
       دات
دات کو
               rāt
                                               night(f.)
                rāt ko
                                                atnight
رات تو
راجا /راجه
راسته
پارچ منف کاراسته
رسم
رشتے دار
                rājā/rāja
                                               king, Rajah (m.)
road, way (m.)
five minutes away
                pānc minat kā rāsta
rasm
                                               custom, ceremony (f.)
                rištedār
                                               relation (m.)
        ركشا
                rikšā
                                               rickshaw (m.)
to put, place, keep
        دكحثا
                rakhnā
       رنگ
رخگین
روانگی
                rang
rangīn
                                               colour(m.)
                                               colourful
                ravānagī
                                               departure
        روائه
                ravāna
                                               going, departing
     روائد بونا
                ravānā honā
                                               to depart, be under way rupee (m.)
       روپيي
روني
                rūpiya
               roțī
                                               bread, food (f.)
         روز
                roz
                                               day (m.)
       هر روز
روکنا
                har roz
                                               every day
               roknā
                                               to stop (something)
stop here!
    يهال روكو
               yahān roko
        to,
                ronā
                                               to weep, cry
        دينا
               rahnā
                                               to remain, live, stay, be, keep on
                                                (doing)
```

```
URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY
                    rahnevālā
                                                   native (of), inhabitant (m.)
                    rešamī
      ريل (كادى)
                    rel (gāṛī)
                                                   train (f.)
by train
   ریل (گاڑی) ہے
                    rel (gāṛī) se
                                             ;
                                                 ze
                                                  tongue, language (f.)
age, time, period (m.)
life (f.)
more, most, very
                    zabān
           زمانه
زندگی
                    zamānā
                   zindagī
            زياده
                    ziyāda
         بہت زیادہ
سے زیادہ
زیادہ تر
                    bahutziyāda
                                                  much more, too much
                                                  more than
more, usually, mostly
                   se ziyāda
                   ziyādatar
          زورات
                    zevarāt
                                                  jewels (m.p.)
                                                 se
    سائس ک سے
بہت / تحور اسا
                   sā, sī, se
bahut/thorā sā
                                                  -ish
                                                  much/a little
        بہت اسور
اچھا سا
ساتھ
کے ساتھ
ساتھی
سامل
سادا
                                                  'goodish', quite good
along with, together
                   acchā sā
                   säth
ke säth
                                                  with
                   sāthī
                                                  companion, friend(m.)
                   sāhil
                                                  beach, shore (m.)
                   sārā
                                                  all, whole
          سازى
                   sāŗī
                                                  saree (f.)
      ساڑھے
ساڑھے تین
                   sāŗhe
                                                  plus one half
                   sāṛhe tīn
sāl
                                                  three and a half
          سال
سالگره
سالگره
                                                  year (m,)
birthday (f.)
                   sālgirah
          ساماك
                   sāmān
                                                  luggage (m.)
          مانے
                   sāmne
                                                  in front, before
       ے مامنے
                   ke sāmne
                                                  in front of
                                                 all, every
best (of all)
first of all
                   sab
                   sab se acchā
         ب
برکھ
برک
سبق
سبق
سبقی
                   sab se pahle
                   sab kuch
                                                  everything
                   sabzī
                                                  vegetables, greens (f.)
                   sabaq
                                                  lesson(m.)
                   sabhī kuch
                                                  every single thing
```

```
271
```

سابی مبر پیجانا sipāhī soldier (m.) sitambar sajānā September (m.) to decorate true ی بیتو پچ ہے محنت yih to sac hai this is true hard; extremely saxt sar head (m) sar men dard honā to have a headache سردی (گو)سردی لگنا سردی ہونا آج سردی ہے sardī cold(ness) (f.) (ko) sardī lagnā to feel cold sardī honā to be cold āj sardī hai it's cold today sardīān winter, cold season (f. p.) سردیاں سڑگ ستا saṛak street (f.) sastā cheap journey, travel (m.) safar safar karnā to travel safed white to be able, can saknā jā saktā hūn I can go نلام (کو)سلام کرنا salām greeting, peace (m.) (ko) salām karnā to greet understanding (f.) samajh samajh men änä to understand to understand تعجمنا samajhnā سمندر samandar sea (m.) year (m.) 0 س سننا سننا سوا سواتين سوال سوال سوشيس سوشيس سودج san 1947 in (the year) 1947 to hear, listen to sunnä sau hundred savā plus one quarter three and a quarter savā tīn ke sivā except savāl question (m.) suitcase (m.) sūt kes to think socnā sūraj sun (m.) to sleep (female) friend (f.) sonā sahelī

from, by, than السااچھا is se acchă better than this se pahle before se dūr far from se ziyāda more than se nazdīk near (to) سياح sayyāh tourist (m.) going/looking around, travelling (f.) to look around Lahore sair یر لا ہور کی سیر کرنا سیکھنا lähaur kī sair karnā sīkhnā to learn šīn šādī wedding (f.) šādī karnā to get married šādī šuda شادی شده married شادی شده شام شام کا کھانا شام کو شاندار evening (f.) šām kā khānā 'evening meal', dinner šām ko in the evening šāndār splendid, fabulous شاه مخص مخص šāh king, Shah (m.) šaxs person (m.) beginning (m.) šurū' šurū' karnā to begin (something) (something) to begin šurū' honā šikār hunting (m.) šikār khelnā to hunt sugar (f.) thank you šakar šukriya šalvār qamīz 'shalwar qameez' (f.) معوار شال شالی شوهر شهر šimāl north (m.) šimālī north(ern) šauhar husband (m.) šahr town, city (m.) ع sväd sāhib gentleman, sir, Mr, (m.) sāhibzāda صاجزاده son (m.) sāhiba lady, Mrs (f.) sāf

```
صاف خرا
میج میجت
میجت
میرف
مرف
موب
           sāf suthrā
                                       clean and tidy
           subh
subh savere
                                      morning; in the morning (f.) early in the morning
           siht
                                      health (f.)
           sahīh
                                      correct
           sadī
                                      century (f.)
           sirf
                                      only
           sifr
                                      zero (m.)
           sūba
                                      province (m.)
                                zvād ض
 zarūr ضرور
zarūr ضرورت
                                      certainly, of course
          zarūrat
          zarūrat necessity, need (f.) mujhe is kī zarūrat hai I need this
          zarūrī
  ضروري
                                   toe
          tālib-'ilm
                                     student (m.)
          tabī'at
                                     health (f.)
          tarah
                                     way, means, sort, kind (f.)
          har tarah kā
                                     all sorts of
          is tarah
                                     in this way
          kī tarah
                                     like, as
          taraf
                                     direction, way (f.)
          is taraf
                                     in this direction
         kis taraf?
taur
                                     in which direction?
طور
خاص طور
                                     way, method, means (m.)
          xās taur se
                                    especially
usually
          'ām taur se
                                  zoe
         zāhir
                                    obvious
ظاہرےکہ
         zāhir hai ki
                                    obviously
                                  ain
         'ādat
                                    custom, habit (f.)
general, common, usual
         'ām
                                    generally, usually
Arabic
          'ām taur se/par
 ع کی
علاقہ
علاقہ
علم
         'arabī
         'ilāqa
                                    area, region (m.)
         'ilm
                                    knowledge (m.)
         'imārat
                                   building (f.)
                                   age (f.)
```

```
میری عمیاں سال بے merī 'umr bīs sāl hai
? آپی محرکیا ہے؟
'aurat عورت
                                                  I am twenty years old
                                                  how old are you?
                                                  woman (f.)
                                          E ğain
        غريب
عشل خانه
                    ğarīb
ğusal xāna
                                                  poor
                                                  bathroom (m.)
           ğalat قاط ğalat
قاطي ğalatī
غيرتكي
ğair mulkī
                                                  mistaken, wrong
                                                  mistake (f.)
                                                  foreigner; foreign (m.)
                                         fe ٺ
           fāriğ قارغ
fāida قائدہ
                                                 free, at leisure
                                                  advantage, opportunity
                   (se) făida uțhānā
                                                  to take advantage (of)
    فرصت
مجھےفرصت ہے
                                                 leisure, time off (f.)
I have time/leisure
         mujhe fursat hai رُّنَ
mujhe fursat hai
farq
رائے
farmāle
                                                 difference (m.)
say, tell; do
worry, anxiety (f.)
          الر fikr
أكركا أكركا
                                                 to worry
        fauj فون أ
fon karnā فون كرنا
fī sad
                                                 army (f.)
to 'phone
                                                 per cent
                                        qāf ق
                  qarīb
                                                 nearby, almost
                  ke qarīb
                                                 near
                  qarīb qarīb
                                                almost, approximately
                  qismat
                                                 fate (f.)
          قطار
قلعه
قمض
قا
                  qatār
                                                 queue (f.)
                  qil' a
                                                 fort, castle (m.)
                  qamīz
                                                 shirt (f.)
                  qulī
                                                porter (m.)
                  qīmat
                                                price (f.)
                  aīmatī
                                                 expensive
                                             kāf
     المن الله kā, kī, ke
الان kārxāna
                                               of, 's
                                               factory (m.)
```

URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY

275

kār o bār business (m.) کائی کائی کائج kāfī quite, very, enough kālij college (m.) work, job (m.) کام کام کرتا کان کان کاندها کاندها kām kām par at work kām karnā to work kān kāndhā ear(m.) shoulder(m.) kab? when? kab tak? how long? kab se since when? for how long? kabhī ever, sometimes kabhī kabhī sometimes kabhī...nahīn کرا کرا کرا کتاب kapṛā cloth (m.) kapre clothes (m.f.) kitāb book (f.) kitnā? how much; how? at what time? 95.35 kitne baje? كق بجين؟ kitne baje hain? what time is it? kuch some; something; a little kuch...nahīń nothing fare, rent (m.) پوه بین کرایی کل کل طاکر کلو کلومیٹر کلومیٹر kirāya karnā to do yesterday; tomorrow kul milākar in total kilo kilo (m.) kilomīţar kilometer(m.) less, few kam kam se kam at least ko to, for, at, on و کوچ کون(کس) کسادت کسادت kūca narrow lane (m.) kaun(kis)? who? what? which? kis vaqt? at what time? kis taraf? in what direction? کون سا کوئی (کمی) کوئی بات نہیں kaun sā? which? koī (kisī) some; someone; approximately koī bāt nahīn it doesn't matter koī do baje at about two o'clock

كوئى تېيى no one (he said) that; or koī nahīn کوی میر کہ بیں کہاں کھانا ki nahīń? or not? kahān? where? khānā food, dinner (m.) khānā to eat كمزابونا to stand, be standing kharā honā كبلانا kahlānā to be called ہری (سے) کہنا کھولنا (se) kahnā kholnā to say, tell to open field (m.) کھیت کھیتی باڑی khet khetī bāŗī agriculture(f.) یی باز کھیلنا کہیں to play somewhere; somehow khelnā kahīn کیل نہیں کمینچنا تصویر کمینچنا کئ kahīn nahīn nowhere khaiṅcnā tasvīrkhaiṅcnā to pull, drag to take a photograph several کیا؟ اور کیا؟ کیاباتہ؟ kyā? what? which? aurkyā! so what! kyā bāt hai? what's the matter? کیاحال ہے؟ کیما؟ kyā hāl hai? how are you? kaisā? how? of what kind? کیے؟ کوں؟ کونکہ kaise? how? in what way? kyon? why?well kyońki because gāf گاڑی gāŗī car, train (f.) gānā to sing gānevālā singer(m.) گرم گری garm garmī hot, warm heat, warmth, summer (f.) garmī honā to be hot, warm

it's warm today

summer, the hot season (f.p)

confusion, upset, mess (m.)

to pass (of time); to go/pass through

I have an upset stomach

āj garmī hai

pet men garbar hai

garmīān

garbar

guzarnā

```
277
```

```
throat, neck (m.)
              gale men xarrāš hai
                                          I have a sore throat
             gošt
ghar
                                          meat(m.)
                                          house, home (m.)
              ghar par
                                          at home
                                          hour(m.)
              ghanta
                                   ال lām
       لاکھ
             lākh
                                          one hundred thousand (m.)
     وسلاكه
              das lākh
                                          one million
       لال
لاتا
             lāl
                                          red
              lānā
                                          to bring
لانا
لائک
لفانه
لکنا
گلنا
(کو)امچها لکتاب
کرنے کیا
بحوک گئی ہے
              laŗkā
                                          boy(m.)
              laṛkī
                                          girl (f.)
              lifāfa
                                          envelope(m.)
              likhnā
                                          to write
              lagnā
                                          to be applied; seem; feel; begin to it seems that
              lagtā hai ki
              (ko) acchā lagtā hai
                                          it seems good to; one likes
                                          he began to do
one feels hungry
               karne lagā
              bhūk lagtī hai
      بوں
لبا
لوثن
لوگ
کے آتا
                                          long; tall
              lambā
              lauţnā
                                          to come back, return
              log
le ānā
                                          people(m.p.)
                                          to bring
     کے باتا
کے گئے
              le jānā
                                          to take away
                                          for (the sake of)
              ke lie
دو دن کے لئے
لیکن
              do din ke lie
                                          for two days
              lekin
                                          but
         لينا
              lenā
                                          to take
                                   / mīm
                                          forehead(m.)
March(m.)
        ماتفا
              māthā
       بارچ
بال
              mārc
                                          mother(f.)
              mā'n
               mubārak
                                          congratulations (m.)
                                          Happy Eid, Birthday
               ʻīd, sālgirah mubārak
 سفر مبادک ہو
مبارک باد دینا
              safar mubārak ho
                                          bon voyage!
              mubārakbād denā
                                          to congratulate
```

do not (+ imperative) mat matar miṭhāī (āṅ) mahabbat/muhabbat tum se mahabbat hai madad (3) 40 /3 (kī) madad karnā غداق mazāq kā mazāq uṛāna مرد مرفی mard murğī markaz مرنا مزا مزاچشریف کیے مزاج؟ marnā mazā mizāj šarīf? kaise mizāj? خرے وار مسائل مشکل مشوق مشوق مشکل مشکل مشکور مشائل مشرون مشائلی مشرون مطاب mazedār masāil masjid muslim masala mašriq mašq mašq karnā muškil muškil koī muškil nahīn mašhūr masrūf masrūfīāt mazāmīn mazmün matlab matlab yih hai ki m'uāf(māf) mu'āf karnā mu'āf kījīe ma'lūm ko ma'lūm honā

URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY

pea (s) (m.) sweet (s) (f.) love (f.) I love you help (f.) to help joke (m.) to make fun of man (m.) chicken (f.) centre (m.) to die pleasure (m.) how are you? how are you? tasty, pleasurable, funny problems (m.p.) mosque(f.) Muslim(m.) problem(m.) east (m.) practice (f.) to practise difficult problem(f.) no problem famous busy activities (f.p.) subjects (m.p.) subject(m.) meaning(m.) this means that excused to excuse excuse me. I'm sorry known to know

URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY

279

```
مجھے معلوم ہے
             mujhe ma'lūm hai
                                       Iknow
معلوم ہو تا ہے کہ
محصے معلوم ہوا
             ma'lūm hotā hai ki
                                       it seems that
             mujhe ma'lūm hūā
                                       I found out
             ma'lūmāt
                                       information(m.p.)
              mağrib
                                       west (m.)
                                       compared to, than
tomb, shrine (m.)
house, building (m.)
             ke muqābile men
             maqbara
       مكان
     ملازمت
             mulāzimat
                                       work, employment (f.)
             milānā
       CLL
                                       to introduce; to mix
      ملاقات
             mulāqāt
                                       meeting(f.)
ے ملاقات ہونا
ملک
             se mulāqāt honā
                                       to meet (with)
             mulk
                                      country (m.)
to be acquired, meet
             milnā
   <u> چے ۵</u>
             mujhe miltā hai
                                       I get, acquire
     ہے ملنا
             se milnā
                                       to meet with
             phir milenge
                                       'we'll meet again', see you!
             mumkin
                                      possible
             mumkin hai ki
                                      it's possible that
             munāsib
                                      appropriate
             muntazir
                                       waiting, looking forward
             main is kā muntazir
                                      I'm looking forward to it
              hūn
             minaț
                                      minute(m.)
             ek minat thahrīe
                                       wait a mimute!
             mangal
                                      Tuesday (m.)
             maṅganī
                                       engagement(for marriage)(f.)
             merî manganî hüî
                                      I'm engaged
                                      to order (meals, etc.)
face, mouth (m.)
             mangvānā
             muṅh hãth dhonã
                                       'to wash face and hands', have a
                                       wash
                                      weather(m.)
             mausam
موزه (موزے)
             moza (moze)
                                       sock (s) (m.)
      مهريان
             mihrbān
                                      kind, pleasant
             mihrbānī
  مہریانی
مہریانی کر کے
                                      kindness; thank you (f.)
             mihrbānī karke
                                      please
      مبمان
             mihmān
                                      guest(m.)
             mihmān navāz
    مهماك نواز
                                      hospitable
```

```
hospitality (f.)
مبمان نوازي
            mihmān navāzī
                                        expensive, dear
            mahangā
      6:0
     مہینہ
مئی
میڑ
            mahīna
                                        month(m.)
                                       May (f.)
meter (in a taxi) (m.)
            maī
            mītar
                                        table (f.)
     ميز
ميل
            mez
            mīl
                                        mile (m.)
      بیں
                                        in, among
            men
                                        from among, among, out of
   ال
            men se
            mīnār
                                        minaret(m.)
                                 ⊎ nūn
                                        isn'tit?
       t
            nā
                                        measurement, size (f.)
      ناپ
ناچنا
            nāp
            nācnā
                                        to dance
  ر په دالی
ناراض
ناشته
ناشته کرنا
                                        dancing girl (f.)
            nācnevālī
                                        angry
breakfast(m.)
            nārāz
            nāšta
            nāšta karnā
                                        to have breakfast
      تام
تان
                                        name(m.)
            nām
            nān
                                        naan, oven-baked bread (m.)
                                        \begin{array}{l} grand father, mother's \, father \, (m.) \\ grand mother, mother's \, mother \, (f.) \end{array}
       tt
jt
            nănā
            nānī
                                        near, nearby
            nazdīk
     نذديك
             se nazdīk
                                         near
                                        copy (of a book); prescription (m.)
             nusxa
                                         to come into view, be seen
             nazar ānā
             mujhe nazar atā hai
                                        I can see
      نقش
نکاح
نکال
            naqša
nikāh
                                        map (m.)
wedding ceremony (m.)
             nikālnā
                                         to take out, extract
    لكانا
لكل آنا
نماز
                                        to go out
to come out
             nikalnā
             nikal ānā
                                         prayer (s) (f.)
             namāz
   نماز پڑھنا
نمستے
نوکر
             namāz paṛhnā
                                         hello, goodbye (Hindu greeting)
             namaste
                                         servant(m.)
             naukar
                                         (manual) work (f.)
     673
             naukarī
                                         November(m.)
```

281

```
not, nor
neither... nor
     نه... نه
              na... na
              na jāīe
                                          don't go
       . .
ہے نہ
نہیں
نہیں
نے
              hai na?
                                          isn'tit?
              nahānā
                                          to bathe, have a bath/shower
              nahīń
                                         postposition used with past transitive verbs
(ئ ع) nayā (naī, nae)
        نيلا
              nīlā
                                         blue
  نینر
(کو) نیند آنا
              nīnd
                                         sleep (f.)
             (ko) nīnd ānā
                                         to feel sleepy
                                      vāū
   واپس
واپس آنا
واقعی
             vāpas
                                        back
             vāpas ānā
                                        to come back, return
really, indeed
             vāqa'ī
ہے واقف ہونا
            se vāqif
                                        acquainted with
      والد
             vālid
                                        father (m.)
     والده
            vālida
                                        mother(f.)
    والدين
            vālidain
                                        parents (m.p.)
      وچ
            vajah
                                        reason (f.)
            is vajah se
 ال وجه سے
کی وجہ سے
وزن
وطن
وغیرہ
وقت
                                        for this reason
            kī vajah se
                                        because of
            vazan
                                       weight(m.)
homeland(m.)
            vatan
            vağaira
                                       etcetera, and so on
            vaqt
                                       time (m.)
  اسونت
ونت پر
وکیل
            is vaqt
                                       at this time
           vaqt par
vakīl
                                       on time
                                       lawyer(m.)
     وہال
وہیں
            vahān
                                       there
            vahīn
                                       right there
                              o choți he
           hāth
                                      hand(m.)
           hāthī
                                       elephant(m.)
           hār
                                      necklace, garland (m.)
           hān
                                      yes, indeed
```

```
URDU - ENGLISH VOCABULARY
                                                 every
        برایک
بر روز
بر طرح کا
                                                 every one, every single
                    har ek
                                                 every day
all kinds of
                    har roz
                    har tarah kā
         بر طرف
بر طرف
بر متم کا
بزار
ہفتہ
اس ہفتہ
ہفتے کو
                   har taraf
                                                 everywhere
                   har qism kā
                                                 of every kind
                   hazār
                                                 thousand
                                                 week; Saturday (m.)
                   hafta
                   is hafte
                                                 this week
                   hafte ko
                                                 on Saturday
           بمیشہ
ہنا
                   hameša
                                                 always
                   hansnā
                                                 to laugh
                   havāī addā
                                                 airport(m.)
aeroplane(m.)
        ہوائی جہاز
ہوٹل
ہوجانا
ہوجا
                   havāī jahāz
                   hotal
                                                 hotel (m.)
                   ho jānā
                                                 to become
                   honā
                                                 to be
             بى
بىلو
                   hī
                                                 only, just
                   helo!
                                                hello! (answering the telephone)
                                          ye ک
             ŗ
                 yā
                                                or
    یا
ایاد رمها
ایاد رمها
ایاد نبونا
ایمنی
ایمنی
ایمنین
کو لیقین
در مقابل معرفات
کو لیقین مونا
در مقابل معرفات
                  yād
(ko) yād ānā
yād rahnā
                                                memory (f.)
                                                to be recalled, come to mind
                                                to remain in the memory
                  yād honā
                                                to be remembered
                  mujhe yād hai
                                                Iremember
                  ya'nī
                                                that is, namely
                  yaqīn
                                                certainty (m.)
                  ko yaqīn honā
                                                to be certain
```

I am certain

right here

here

university (f.)

mujhe yaqīn hai yūnīvarsiţī

yahīn

يونيور ځي

يهار يهال يهي yahān

## Answer key

Unit 1

Exercise 1.1

1 اچھى 2 دلچىپ 3 نئى 4 برا 5 ہندوستانى

Exercise 1.2

1 اللام عليكم فان صاحب كيامال ع 2 بندر روڈ کہال ہے؟

3 میرانام ...... ہے۔ 4 میراہوئل دور نہیں ہے۔

5 اچھا' اجازت۔ خداحافظ۔

Exercise 1.3

1 وملیکم السلام میں بالکل ٹھیک ہوں۔ 2 بی ہاں میں انگریز ہوں۔ ہو مل میں ہوں۔ 4 بی تمیں۔ دور نہیں ہے۔ 5 خداحافظ۔ 3. تى بال مى

Exercise 1.4

ا سات 2 نو 3 دس 4 آنھ 5 جھے

Exercise 1.5

السلام عليم 'خان صاحب- آپ كا گھركبال ہے؟ میراگرلندن میں ہے۔ آپ پاکستانی ہیں یا ہندوستانی؟ ب. میں پاکستانی ہوں۔ آپ کا گھريمال سےدور ہے؟ جی نہیں' بہت دور نہیں ہے۔ اور آپ کا گھراچھاہے۔ بیہاں' احچھاہے' کیکن پراناہے۔

A Hello, Khan Sahib. Where is your house?

B My house is in London.

A Are you a Pakistani or an Indian?

B I'm a Pakistani.

A Is your house far from here?

B No, it's not very far.

A Is your house nice?

B Yes, it's nice, but it's old.

Answers: 1 In London 2 Pakistan 3 No 4 Old

Exercise 1.6

1 Pakistan 2 False 3 False 4 Ten 5 False

Unit 2

Exercise 2.1

pāṅc beṭīāṅ يِنْ يَيْمِال इंग्रें इंस bacce रहें āṭh kitāben

che ghar نے گر das ādmī وي آدي

Exercise 2.2

1 الحَّے ٰ ہِيں 1 اگر ہے' ہِيں 3 ہِيں' ہِيں 4 آپ کے ' ہِيں 5 ال کے ' برے' الحَّے ' ہِيں

Exercise 2.3

Exercise 2.4

1 آوُ 2 لائے کر کھے ، 3 ویکھے 4 حیلے 5 بتاؤ

Exercise 2.5

جان : رحيم صاحب يبتائي آپ ك كتف يج بين؟

رجيم : جارے دوبيتے ہيں اور ايك چيوٹي بيني-

جان : كياده سب اسكول مين بين؟

رجم : مير - دويي اسكول من مين يوق الري العني بليس اسكول من مين وه كمرب ب-

جان : اور ان كا اسكول اچھا ہے؟

```
رجيم : جي بال- وه بردا امريكن اسكول -
رہا : ماہاں : اور آپ کا گھریزار من من سب است
رحیم : ہی تیسی صرف یا چگرے ہیں۔ کیلن وہال بہت لوگ ہیں۔ لینی میں ہوں اور میری
تیم ہیں۔ میرے والدین اور میر بیا ہی ہیں۔
جان : اور میہ مشکل ہیں۔ ہم پاکستانی ہیں اور کیا!
رحیم : بی تیمین ، بہت مشکل فیس۔ ہم پاکستانی ہیں اور کیا!
```

John : Rahim Sahib, tell me. How many children do you have?

Rahim: We have two sons and one small daughter.

John : Are they all at school?

Rahim: My two sons are at school. The little girl, namely Bilqis, is not at

school. She is at home. John : And is their school good?

Rahim: Yes. It's the big American school.

John : And is your house big?

Rahim: No. There are only five rooms. But they are lots of people there.

Namely, I and my wife, my parents and my uncle.

John : Is that difficult?

Rahim: No. It's not very difficult. We are Pakistanis. So what!

Answers: 1 Three 2 No 3 American 4 Five 5 Yes

#### Unit 3

Exercise 3.1

1 آپ انجیر ہیں؟ 2 نہیں 3 فرصت 4 اگریزی کھانا 5 یہ کتابیں

Exercise 3.2

eercise 3.2 1 مجھے / بھی کو 2 آپ کو 3 اٹیس ان کو 4 جمیس : تم کو 5 تحمیس : تم کو 6 اے ' اس کو

Exercise 3.3

1 کی بال۔ مجھے بہت پندہ۔ 2 مجھے معلوم ہے۔ میر ابو کل وہال سے زیادہ دور نہیں۔

4 جي نہيں اس وقت مجھے فرصت نہيں ہے۔

Exercise 3.4

ANSWER KEY

1 اے برا ادھ آئے۔

2 تندوری مرغی اچھی ہے؟

3 جھے ساگ' بھونا گوشت اور بلاو چاہیے۔ میرے دوست کو تندوری مرغی' نان اور دال جاہیے۔

4 ہمیں آج کھل نہیں چاہیے۔

5 میں ایک کونی اور ایک چائے چاہیے۔

Exercise 3.5

رجیم : آداب عرض ب اسلم صاحب کیا حال بی؟

اسلم : نحم کی بول شریب اور آپ؟

رجیم : میں بالکل نحم کی مول کیا آن آپ کو فرصت بی؟

اسلم : بی بال ان آن چیشی ہے۔

اسلم : بیرے دوست سے ملیب ان کا نام بل ہے۔ وہ امریکن ہیں۔

اسلم : انچھا۔ یہ بہت و کیب ہے۔ چلین چاسے فیسکیا۔ میرے کھر ہیں۔ آن میری یو کی اور

نیچ شریم ہیں ہیں۔ لیکن کھر ہیں ایک عربی کا یک جے۔

نیچ شریم ہیں۔ اسلام میں ایک کی میں اس میری اور دیسے کے۔

نیچ شریم ہیں اس میں دیں ہے؟

رحيم : آپ كاگريهال بيدورب؟ اسلم : جي نبين نزديك بد بندر رود پر

Rahim: Hello, Aslam. How are you?

Aslam: I'm well, thanks. And you?

Rahim: I'm extremely well. Are you free today?

Aslam: Yes. It's a holiday today.

Rahim: Meet my friend. His name is Bill. He's an American.

Aslam: Really? That's very interesting. Come on, let's have tea. In my

house. Today my wife and children are in town, but I have some good tea in the house.

Rahim: Is your house far from here?

Aslam: No, it's nearby. On Bandar Road.

Answers: 1 Yes 2 A holiday 3 American 4 In town 5 Nearby

ANSWER KEY 2 آج بہت گری ہے۔ 2 3 جي بال ان كو كھانا پند --4 وه آئس كريم كي دوكان مين يي-5 میں روپے ہیں۔ Exercise 4.4 1 رجیم صاحب اصل میں دہلی کے رہنے والے ہیں ' کیکن الناکا گھر پاکستان میں ہے۔ Unit 5 Exercise 5.1 1 At 5 am 2 Says prayers and has breakfast 3 With her parents 4 By train 5 In a little restaurant with Nargis 6 At 6 o'clock 7 Eats and watches TV Exercise 5.2 1 میں انگلتان کارہے والا ہوں /کی رہنے والی ہول۔ 2 میں لندن میں ڈاکٹر ہوں۔ 3 جي ٻال جھے پاکتان بہت پند ہے۔ 4 بیاں۔ کراچی میں میرے بہت دوست ہیں۔ 5 ييبهت اچھاخيال ہے۔ چليس۔ Exercise 5.3 1 وه کراچی میں رہتے ہیں 2 ان کے چار بچ ہیں۔ بچوں کے نام حامہ 'اقبال' زمس اور جیلہ ہیں۔ 3 جي نيس وه پرے جمع تک کام كرتے ہيں۔ 4 گرر بلقيس كهانا يكاتى بير-5 عام طورے نوکر خریداری کر تاہے۔ 6 جي نبيل - ان كودوكانيل پند نبيل -

#### Exercise 5.4

1 False 2 True 3 False 4 False 5 True 6 False

#### Exercise 5.5

1 يانج بج يانج بجير ٥ 2 نوبج نوبجيں ٩ 3 رویج و دیجیں ۲ 4 گياره بج عياره بجين اا

ع جھ بے 'جھ بے ہیں ٢

#### Unit 6

#### Dialogue 1 At the seaside

: So, this is Clifton. There are (some) very splendid houses here. I think quite rich people live here. Look, that big, beautiful house. Whose house is that?

Aslam: I think it is some minister's house. Ministers in every country are rich, aren't they? But who lives there, I don't know.

John : And there is the sea. Tell me, Aslam Sahib. Which sea is this?

Aslam: This is the Buhaira-e Arab, that is 'the Arabian Sea'.

Helen : But there are very few people on the beach. In Pakistan don't people bathe in the sea?

Aslam: No. In Pakistan there is no custom, like in England, of sitting on the beach and swimming in the sea.

Helen: And look. There's a camel on the beach. Whose camel is it?

Aslam: I think it's that little boy's camel. Obviously ('it is clear that') it is someone's (camel). Sometimes there are tourists here. They like to sit on a camel.

Helen: And what lovely weather! Neither hot nor cold.

Aslam: Yes. In (the month of) November the weather is usually good. Come on, Helen Sahiba. Have a ride (sit) on a camel.

#### Exercise 6.1

1 من ہے 2 ہے 3 ہی متیں 4 متیں 5 م متیں

## ANSWER KEY Dialogue 2

: Hamid, since we are in Clifton today, so show us the school. John You study (read) here, don't you.

Hamid: Yes, but today is Saturday. Our school is closed.

John : It doesn't matter. At least show us where you study.

Hamid: All right, but Clifton is quite a big area. My school is a bit far

Aslam: It's all right. Fortunately, we have our car (with us) today. In the car it's only (a road of) five minutes. Come on, sit in the car. But wait a minute. I haven't got the key. Who's got (the key)? Some-

one's got it. Bilqis. Do you have the key? Bilqis : Yes. Don't worry. I have it.

Aslam: Why do you have the key?

Bilqis : It's with me because ('for this reason that') you always forget everything. Do you have (any) money with you today?

Aslam: Yes, I'll have a look now ... no, I haven't got any money.

Bilqis : There you are (see)! You forget the key, you forget the money! So it's good that I have money. Come on. I've got the key, so today I'll drive!

#### Exercise 6.2

1 True 2 True 3 False 4 False 5 False

#### Dialogue 3

John : Good heavens! (Bravo!) What a splendid school, Hamid. What sort of children study here?

Aslam: Mostly the children of middle-class families study here. Unfortunately, the children of poor people do not study here. There are poor people in every country in the world. But what can you do? Someone is rich, someone is poor.

John : I think the education (of) here is good.

Aslam: Yes. Usually in the big schools of Karachi the education is very good. Hamid, tell John Sahib what you study, and which subjects you like.

Hamid: We study all kinds of subjects. From among languages, English,

```
Urdu and Arabic. In addition to this, history, geography, science, etc.
```

John : And do you like English?

Hamid: Yes. English is quite easy, but Arabic is very difficult.

#### Exercise 6.3

R : Hello, Khan Sahib. You're also here at the station? What time does the train arrive?

K : I think it comes at 3 o'clock. Aren't you at work today?

R : No. There's a holiday today. There's usually a holiday on the 4th of November, isn't there?

K : Really. Why?

R : It's the minister's birthday. That's why there's a holiday.

K : Bravo! The minister is very great man. Is there a holiday on his birthday?

R : Of course! Look. The train's there. Our minister's in it.

Answers: 1b 2b 3a 4a 5a 6b

#### Exercise 6.4

1 ک طرح 2 ہے 3 پاک 4 کی

#### Exercise 6.5

پانچ زمبر کو' بارہ بج' دوجنوری کو' نو اور سولہ = پھیں' اکٹیں اکتوبر' میری سالگرہ ستائیں اپریل کو ہے۔ میننے میں بھی تمین دن ہوتے ہیں اور بھی اکٹیں دن' چیس روپی' ایک روپی میں سم سے ہیں ا

## ANSWER KEY Exercise 6.6

1 أنشخ ير آخد (٨) شم بير-2 لا يور بنجاب شرب-3 اسلام آباد لا يور ب گوئي دو مو ممل دور ب-4 حيد رآباد بلمان بي کوئي پاچ مو ممل دور ب-5 كرا تي يشح و عرب ري-

#### Unit 7

#### Dialogue 1

Rahim: Hello, John Sahib. How are you? What are you doing these days?

John : Hello (it is your prayer), Rahim Sahib. These days I'm quite

busy. We are preparing to go to Lahore.

Rahim: Really. When are you going?

John : Perhaps next week. On the 10th. We are still not certain.

Rahim: How are you going? By train or by air?

John : We intend to go (there is an intention of going) by train. What do you think?

Rahim: This is good, because on the 10th my sister and her husband are

going to Lahore by train. Go with them.

John : This is very good, but we don't have tickets or reservations.

Where does one get tickets? Can you get them from the station

(where are tickets got?, are they got from?)?

Rahim: No. Don't go to the station. There's always bother there. I'll do it like this. A good friend of mine works in a travel agency here. I'll telephone him today. Don't worry. So, this means – two tickets Karachi – Lahore, in first class, for the 10th. All right?

John : Rahim Sahib, thank you very much.

Rahim: No problem! Telephone me this (today) evening. Do you have

my number?

John : No, I don't.

Rahim: All right, so write (it): 10593 Now I am going somewhere (to

one place). (Can I take my) leave?

John : Thank you very much, Rahim Sahib. Goodbye.

#### Exercise 7.1

1 الزكاآئس كريم كهارباب-2 لڑکی کتاب پڑھ رہی ہے۔ 3 آدمی ٹیلیفون کررہاہے۔ 4 بدو آدى ريل گاڑى ملى بيھر بي

#### 5 عورت کھانا بکار ہی ہے۔

#### Dialogue 2

John Hello! This is John speaking (I am John speaking). Is Rahim Sahib at home?

Begam Rahim: Yes. One minute. I'll just call him. He's coming.

Rahim: Hello, John Sahib. Listen. There is (one) good news. I have your tickets with me. My friend is a very cunning fellow! You can always get tickets from him easily. I don't know how. I never ask. Well, this means that you are going next week, on the 10th, at eight in the morning.

John : Thank you, Rahim Sahib. This is your and your friend's kindness.

Rahim: Then tell me John. What are you doing this evening? Are you going out somewhere?

: No. At this moment we are in the hotel. Usually we have the evening meal here.

Rahim: Right. Don't eat there. Come here for dinner. This evening my sister and her husband are also coming. Meet them. What's the time now? It's seven o'clock, isn't it? So you come at eight.

John : Thank you, Rahim Sahib. We'll arrive at eight sharp.

## Dialogue 3

Rahim: Come in, John Sahib. Come in, Helen Sahiba. Please sit down. Meet my wife. Her name is Fatima. And this is my sister, Kausar, and my brother-in-law, Qasim Sahib. He is a native of Lahore. They are going with you next Thursday. Qasim Sahib knows everything about Lahore. Qasim Sahib, you know that John and Helen are our English friends. Both are doctors in

England. And both speak very good Urdu.

#### ANSWER KEY

Qasim: Tell me, John Sahib. Where do you intend to stay in Lahore?

John : So far I don't know. I suppose in some hotel.

Qasim: In Lahore there are many good new hotels but my favourite hotel is an old English hotel. It is near Mall Road. Right in the centre. I'll give you the telephone number. Ring there tomorrow and give my name.

#### Exercise 7.2

1 میں مصروف ہول اور اسلام آباد جانے کی تیاری کر رہا ہول / کررہی ہول۔ ۔ بی فیس مرادیل گاڑی ہے جانے کا اداوہ ہے۔ 2 بی الب بھی معلوم ہے۔ بھی تک کہال سے لئے ہیں۔ 4 بہت شکریہ 'رجیم صاحب۔ میں فیک آٹھ ہے ملیفون کرتا /کرتی ہوں۔

#### Exercise 7.3

آداب عرض ب كوثر آج آپ كياكر رى يي-کور کھے نہیں۔ آج میں گھریہ ہوا۔ اس وقت میں کھانے کی تیاری کررہی ہوا۔ فاطمہ اچھا۔ آپ کیا پکاری بین؟ کور میں زیادہ نہیں پکاری ہول۔ رونی مرغی وال۔ فاطمہ کیا تی خام کو آپ کو فرصت ہے؟ کور بی جیس ہم لوگ باہر جارہ ہیں۔ کھانے پر۔ فاطمہ توکل مج آپ کیا کر رہی ہیں۔ کیافارغ ہیں۔ كور بى الى الله الله الله الله الله فاطمه اجها توجيح فحيك نوبج فون كجيمه خداحافظ

Fatima: Hello, Kausar. What are you doing today?

Kausar: Nothing. I'm at home today. At the moment I'm preparing lunch.

Fatima: I see. What are you cooking?

Kausar: I'm not cooking much. Bread, chicken, rice. Fatima: Do you have some time this evening?

Kausar: No. We're going out to dinner.

Fatima: Then what are you doing tomorrow morning? Are you free?

Kausar: Yes. I'm free.

Fatima: Good. Then phone me at nine sharp. Goodbye.

Answers: 1b 2b 3a 4a 5b

#### Exercise 7.4

1 ہیلو۔ میہ نبر جمعے صفر چار نو پائی (۲۰۳۹۵) ہے؟ 2 تاہم صاحب تشریف رکھتے ہیں؟ 3 میرانام ملی برانان / میری جوزہے۔ میں آگلی جعرات کو لاہور جارہا / ربی ہوں' میں امریکن ۔ ۔ کیا آپ کو معلوم ہے کہ پہلے در ہے کاریز دویش کہاں سے ماتا ہے۔ 5 بہت شکرید۔ آپ کی مهر بانی ہے۔ میر انمبر لیجے۔ اور آئ شام کو بھی نیلیفون کیجے۔

#### Unit 8

#### Dialogue 1

John : Hello, sir.

Manager: Hello, Mr Smith. How are you? Are you having a good time in

Karachi? (a good time is passing?)

: Yes, we are having very good days here (good days are pass-John ing). We like your hotel very much. Tomorrow morning we

are going to Lahore, and we shall stay there for about ten days.

Manager: I see. How will you go? By train or by air?

: We shall go by train. The train will depart from the station at eight a.m. (in the morning). Therefore, we have to get up early. Can one get a taxi from here easily?

Manager: Yes. There will be no problem. I'll call a taxi for you at seven. Before going, have breakfast. Will you have breakfast in the

This will be very good. And give me the bill by this (today) John evening. I have to go out now for two (or) three hours. I'll come back at about six.

All right. Mr Smith. You go. By six o'clock all will be ready. Manager:

Will you have dinner here this evening? : No, we are going to friends. We shall have dinner wth them. John

Manager: Very well, sir. I shall be (remain) here in the evening. If you need anything else, then tell me.

: Thank you. We'll meet again in the evening. John

## ANSWER KEY Dialogue 2

: Hello, sir. Thank you for the breakfast. I have to pay (give you John

No, Mr Smith. It's no trouble. It's on (from the side of) the Manager: hotel. And here is (some) fruit for the journey. Take (it). This is also from us.

: Oh, you are taking too much trouble! Thank you very, very John much. We shall always remember your hotel (will remain a

Manager: Where is your luggage? Is it in the room?

: Yes. There are three suitcases. But they are quite heavy. John

Manager: All right. You sit here. I'll call the porter. He'll bring the luggage and put it in the taxi. You have plenty of time. Before going will you have (drink) tea or coffee?

No, thank you. I think that we'll be off now, because we have John to meet friends at the station. They are going to Lahore with us.

Manager: After Lahore, what do you intend? Will you go home from

John No, we shall go from there to Delhi and stay for two weeks in

Manager: I see. You will like Delhi a lot. Delhi is the homeland of my family. That is I am a native of Delhi. It's a very splendid city.

John : I am sure that Delhi is very splendid. But first of all we shall see Lahore. Right. That's our taxi driver, isn't it? So, we'll be off. Once more, thank you very, very much. We shall meet again.

Manager: Come again some time. Goodbye.

#### Exercise 8.1

1 پر شنی یں 2 دیے ہیں 3 کرنی ہے 4 کرنا ہے 5 جانا ہے < tu 6

## Dialogue 3

Taxi driver: Where do you have to go, sahib? Do you have to go to the station?

John	: Yes. We are going to Lahore. From which platform does the
	train depart? You probably know (you will know).

#### Exercise 8.2

آبال شین لا ہور جارم ا (ربی) ہوں۔
 بیرے پاس مر ف دو موٹ کیس بیں۔
 آبال دیل گاڑی کتے بجد روانہ ہوگی؟
 بہت شکریہ۔ بچھ آپ کو کتے پیے دیے بیں؟

## Exercise 8.3

1 كمانى 2 ائمنا 3 يزهنى 4 كرنا 5 جانا

#### Exercise 8.4

 $1\ {\rm Ten}\ 2\ 1630\ rupees\ 3$  Five times 4 309 rupees 5 22 rupees 6 3921 rupees

#### Unit 9

#### Dialogue 1

ANSWER KEY

- Qasim: John Sahib, hello! Where were you? You weren't on the platform. I was very worried.
- John : Hello, Qasim Sahib. Excuse (me). But there was such a big crowd. It's difficult, isn't it? In such a crowd, you can't see anyone (anyone does not come into view).
- Qasim: Well, never mind. The important thing is that you are here. The compartment is quite comfortable, isn't it? And there will only be the four of us (we shall only be four people). There won't be anyone else. Are you enjoying Pakistan (is Pakistan coming pleasing)?
- John : We're enjoying it very much. In Karachi our hotel was very good. The food was good, the people were good, and the hotel manager was an especially kind person. We have many new friends.
- Qasim: In Lahore you will find (will be acquired) many more friends.

  The people of Panjab are very hospitable. Good heavens!

  Where's my wife? Five minutes ago she was on the platform with (her) (lady) friends. Now I can't see her anywhere (she does not come into view). You sit here. I'll look for her. The train will depart in (after) five minutes.
- John : Qasim Sahib, don't be anxious. Look, she is coming.
- Qasim: Kausar! Where were you? Were you with (your) friends? Come on. Get (sit) in the compartment. The train is going now.

#### Exercise 9.1

1 تھے 2 تھے 3 تھیں 4 تھیں 5 تھا

## Dialogue 2

John : (Why), Qasim Sahib. Are you a native of Lahore?

Qasim: No. I am originally from Multan. Multan is also in Panjab and not very far from Lahore. First, I was in the army. Namely, I was a soldier for (from) ten years. After that I was in Hyderabad Sindh and Karachi. Nowadays I do business in Lahore. Today our train will pass through Hyderabad and Multan. Tomorrow morning at about eight o'clock we shall arrive in Lahore.

John : Lahore is smaller than Karachi, isn't it?

Qasim: Yes. Lahore is the biggest city in (of) Panjab, but it is much smaller than Karachi. I think the population of Lahore is about three (to) four million ('thirty, forty lakhs'). Karachi's population is very big. First, Karachi was the capital of Pakistan. As you know our capital is now Islamabad.

John : Is Islamabad far from Lahore?

Qasim: No, it is not all that far. In the train it is about five hours' journey. Islamabad is quite a new city, and much smaller than Lahore. Karachi is the biggest city in (of) Pakistan. But in my opinion Lahore is the most interesting and pleasant. What's the time now? It's ten o'clock. In (after) a short while we shall arrive at Hyderabad. There we shall have (drink) tea.

#### Exercise 9.2

#### Dialogue 3

Qasim: Well, at last we are in Lahore. You must be (will be) very tired. But your hotel is not all that far from here. We'll take (sit in) a taxi and we'll take you as far as the hotel.

John: Thank you, Qasim Sahib, but please don't trouble yourself. You must be tired too. You go straight home. We'll easily get to (arrive at) the hotel.

Qasim: It's no trouble. Your hotel is on our way. You will see that your hotel is a very interesting building. It means that the building is interesting. First, it was the house of some English general. And English troops were there. Now it's a hotel. The rooms are very big and comfortable. It's an old hotel but I think old hotels are more interesting than those new hotels. Come on, let's get in the taxi. We'll go straight to your hotel. Have something to eat there

and have a good rest. And tomorrow morning I'll come to you. I'll show you Lahore.

John : Thank you very much, Qasim Sahib. But will you have time tomorrow?

Qasim: Yes. I shall be free (there will be leisure) all day long. It's Saturday tomorrow, isn't it? I don't work on Saturday. Usually in Pakistan there's a holiday on Saturday. Look, your hotel is here on the left. On the right is Mall Road. This is the biggest and most splendid road in (of) Lahore. Go now. Have a rest and we shall meet tomorrow, inshallah.

John : Thank you, Qasim Sahib. Goodbye.

Exercise 9.3

ANSWER KEY

15; 21; 36; 47; 52; 64; 73

Exercise 9.4

Exercise 9.5

## Unit 10

#### Dialogue 1

Qasim: Hello, John Sahib, Can I come in?

John : Hello. Yes, Qasim Sahib. Please come in. Will you have tea?
Shall I order tea? What a splendid hotel this is! Not one room but three rooms. Here is the sitting room; there is the bedroom (sleeping room); and at the back is a very big bathroom.

Qasim: And how was your day yesterday. I think that after the journey you were very tired.

John : Yes. Well, all day long we were in the hotel. In front there is a very beautiful garden. There is every kind of comfort (rest). And what fine weather it is! It is colder (there is more cold) in Lahore in comparison with Karachi, isn'tit?

: If you are free (if there is leisure to you) (then) we shall look around Lahore (do a tour of Lahore). Can you show us the most important streets and buildings?

Qasim: Yes, with great pleasure. If you tell me what you especially want to see (then) I shall show you.

I think we might start (let us start) with the Badshahi Mosque. John They say that the Badshahi Mosque is the biggest mosque in (of) the world, don't they?

Qasim: I'm not certain, but it must be (will be) one of the biggest (from among the biggest) mosques. At least it is bigger than Delhi's Jami' Mosque. All right. Let's have tea quickly and get going.

#### Dialogue 2

: So this is the Badshahi Mosque. It's really a vast mosque. Qasim sahib, tell (me). Whose mosque is it?

Qasim : It's Aurangzeb's mosque. You will recall that Aurangzeb was the son of Shahjahan, and the most famous building of Shahjahan is the Taj Mahal. The Taj Mahal is in Agra. They were both Mughal kings and in the time of the Mughals three cities, namely Lahore, Delhi and Agra, were the most important

John : Can we go inside?

Qasim: Of course. There is no problem. If your wife puts a shawl or scarf on her head, it will be good.

: This means that ladies can enter the mosque. John

Why not? From the point of view of Islam all human beings are Qasim: equal. Look, the door is there. Come on, let's go

Helen: What a splendid mosque it is! There are eight high minarets and three white domes. The colour of the walls is red. And how clean and tidy it is! But there are very few people here.

Qasim: Yes, but at the time of prayers there's a great crowd. A hundred thousand people can pray (read prayer) here.

Helen : Can I take a photograph?

Qasim: Of course, but don't take it from here. The sun is in front of you. If you go to that side, a good picture will come out.

#### Dialogue 3

ANSWER KEY

Helen : The Badshahi Mosque was really very beautiful, and how interesting are the streets of this area! It seems that we are seeing the stories of the Arabian Nights (Alf Laila). If I close (my) eyes (then) I can see old Baghdad (Baghdad comes into view).

Qasim : Do you like Lahore better than Karachi?

Helen : I won't say that. I can say this much that it is quite different.

Qasim: Very well then, let's go on (forward) and before lunch I'll show you the old city. There is a very famous bazaar. It's name is Anarkali. Anarkali, in the time of the Mughals, was an unfortunate girl. She was a famous singer and dancer. But her life was sad. Her tomb is in the Old Fort. If you want to go to Anarkali on foot (then) we shall cross the old city. You will be able to see everything.

Helen: Yes. Let's go on foot. The weather is lovely and I am neither hungry nor thirsty (to me there is neither hunger nor thirst). I am only in love with this beautiful city (to me there is love from).

Qasim : All right, let's go on foot. But in (after) an hour you will be certainly be hungry (hunger will be). In Anarkali I know a (one) very good restaurant. Excuse me. I am also interested in old buildings, but in this world food (bread) is also an important

### Exercise 10.1

1 میں گلی جعرات کوریل گاڑی ہے اسلام آباد جانا چاہتا رچاہتی ہوں۔

2 ريل گاڑي لا مورے كتے بجرواند موتى باوراسلام آباد كتے بي پيتى ب

3 كياموش آسانى مع كالاالك رات ك لئ كتن بيدديني ا

4 اسلام آباد میں سب سے دلچیپ چیزیں کیا ہیں؟

5 مجھے اتوار کولا ہوروالیس آنام کیونکہ اگلے ہفتے میں ہوائی جہازے دہلی جاربار رہی ہول

1 كتير 2 آتى - 3 كائي 4 موتى - 5 رجيل 6 عوادل؟ 7 رجيل-

Exercise 10.3

1 False 2 False 3 True 4 False 5 True 6 False 7 True

#### Unit 11

#### Dialogue 1

Qasim: Well, John. Are you here alone? Isn't Helen here, then?

John : Yes. I was thinking that I would write one (or) two letters. This morning my wife is wandering around Anarkali. She is buying some clothes with the wife of the hotel manager. This room is so comfortable that I was thinking I would take full advantage of

my wife's absence. I am very frightened of bazaars.

Qasim: Yes, Helen was telling me that you don't like wandering around ('in') shops.

John : This is true. Shall I order tea?

Qasim: That's a very good idea. Let's drink tea and have a chat. John, I was thinking that since you are in Lahore, then I would show you my village. My village is towards Shaikhupura. I used to live there in my childhood. I always remember (my) childhood.

John : So, you originally come from a village?

Qasim: Yes. Most Pakistanis live in villages. How good my childhood was! We used to play in the fields, eat the very best of food. At that time everything used to be good. It's possible we may go the day after tomorrow. Our village is not all that far.

John : Very well. We'll certainly make arrangements to go. Tell me, Qasim, what were you doing yesterday evening? Your telephone was ringing. It seemed that you were not at home.

Qasim: Yes, we were at a party. My wife was singing there.

John : Really. Does your wife sing?

Qasim: Yes. Come to the house some time and listen.

## ANSWER KEY Dialogue 2

Qasim: Hello, John. I haven't called at an awkward moment?

John : No, Qasim. We are ready. Today the weather is very good. It was raining last night, wasn't it?

Qasim: Yes. It doesn't usually rain in November. Well, It's getting nice and sunny ('a good sunshine is coming out'). Come on, let's go. Get into the car.

John : Shaikhupura's not so far from here, is it?

Qasim: No, it's about 34 miles away. Towards the north. If you go east from here, then you come to the Indian border ('the border will come'). If you go further on from Shaikhupura, then you'll arrive at Islamabad. Further on from there is Peshawar and the North West Frontier. But that's quite far. Islamabad is about 160 miles from Lahore.

John : Is Shaikhupura an old town?

Qasim: In the 17th century Jahangir used to live there and used to hunt in the nearby jungle. His fort is still there.

John : And is your village large?

Qasim: It's quite a big village. My relations still practise agriculture there. As you know, the meaning of 'Panjab' is 'the Land of the Five Rivers'. The land is very fetile. My family has been ('is') resident there since the 18th century. Before Partition, Muslims, Hindus and Sikhs all lived together there. But now there are only Muslims. As I was telling you the day before yesterday, the world changes very fast. Inshallah, in the next century we shall be able to live more happily. Look, our village is coming into view. Come on, I'll introduce you to my relations and we'll have a good dinner.

#### Exercise 11.1

10 بنگلہ وایش میں۔

```
5 جنوبي ہندوستان ميں۔
                               6 كلكت
                            7 سنده يس
8 لاہوریس۔ بیہاں۔ دبلی کی جامع مجدے بدی ہے۔
                          9 بحيرة عرب
```

#### Exercise 11.2

1 پنجیں 2 کریں 3 کروں 4 کریں 5 جائیں 6 پرحو 7 منگواؤل

#### Unit 12

#### Dialogue 1

John : Hello, Bilqis, Tell me. How are you?

Bilqis : Really, it's John. How are you? Did you get to Lahore safely?

: Yes, thank you. All's well here. Lahore is really a splendid

place. Is Aslam there?

Bilqis : Yes. I'll call him now. There you are. He's coming.

Aslam: John! I'm very pleased. What are you doing these days?

John : We're very busy. The day before yesterday we went to Shaikhu-

pura to see Qasim's village. That was really very interesting.

Yesterday we went to visit Jahangir's tomb.

Aslam: And how's the weather?

: It's colder here than Karachi. They say that in winter it's (usually) quite cold in Panjab. The day before yesterday, it rained for a little while. After that the sun came out, and it was sunny ('sun-

shine remained') all day long.

Aslam: And what's your intention?

: In three days' time ('after three days'), that is on Tuesday, we're going to Delhi. We'll go by air, because we don't have all that

much time.

Aslam: Right. I've never been ('gone') to Delhi. You know that Delhi is

Bilqis' home town. Can you do a job for me? An old friend of ours lives near Chandni Chowk. Go and meet him and give ('say') him our greetings. His name is Sharif Ahmad and he lives in Kucha-e Rahman. The house number is 1045. Any rickshaw driver will show you the way ('road').

John : Yes, Aslam. I shall certainly do that (work).

Aslam: And what's your programme today?

John : We're going to lunch at the place of some friends. Yesterday we met them ('a meeting came about with them') in a tea shop.

After that, they'll take us to the banks of the Ravi.

Aslam: OK, John. Have a good time ('stroll around well') and write to

us from Delhi. Bon voyage!

#### Exercise 12.1

ANSWER KEY

1 اسلم صاحب پانچ بج آئے۔ 2 وہ بادشاہی مجد کی بیر کرنے گئے۔ 3 راوی کے کنارے لے گئے۔ 4 شیخو پورے کے آس پاس کے جنگل میں۔ 5 آگرے جانے کا نظام کریں گے۔ 6 چار بج آئے گا۔ 7 گاؤں میں گزرا۔

#### Dialogue 2

Qasim: Hello. At last you are (present) here. I passed by at about five, but you were not in the room.

John : I'm sorry, Qasim. We went out. I have just (now) come. Five minutes ago, Helen was chatting to the manager's wife. It seems that they have gone somewhere. They'll come in a little while.

Qasim: Where did you go today?

John : Yesterday evening we were sitting in a tea shop, and we met a person there. He's a lawyer in the court here. He at once began to ask how we know Urdu. After that we went to his house and met his family (members). His wife was preparing the food, so (then) we joined in the dinner. We arrived at the hotel at about 12 pm. As you were saying, Panjabi people are very hospitable.

This afternoon we met again and went to walk by the banks of the Ravi. I'm sorry that I couldn't phone you.

Qasim: Oho! New friends, new habits! You couldn't phone me ('us')! I began to think that you had gone to India without my permission.

John : Please forgive (me), Qasim. This is our mistake.

Qasim: No, John. It was only a joke. I'm very happy ('it is a matter of much happiness') that you like our Panjabi brothers. So, are all your preparations for going to India complete?

John : We're almost ready. We shall have plenty of time. The plane goes at about eleven.

Qasim: OK I'll come here at eight tomorrow morning, and take you (up) to the airport. Goodbye!

میرانام اقبال احمد ہے۔ بیس کراچی کارپنے والا ہول۔ چھلے ہفتے بیش پیلیا بار لاہور گیا تھا۔ موسم بہت خوشگوار تھا۔ نہ کرمی نہ سر دی تھی اور دان بحر حوب رہی۔ جعر اسک کو شاد و متول کے ہال کھانا کھانے گیا تھا۔ وہال ایک مشہور و کمل ہے طابہ وہ کہنے گئے! 'اقبال صاحب' آپ کام کرنے لاہور کیوں نمیس آتے؟' لیکن میں لاہور میں رہ نمیں سکا۔ میرے سب رشتے دار کراچی میں ہیں اور میری بیگم کو پنجاب کاموسم پسند نہیں ہے۔

My name is Iqbal Ahmad. I originally come from Karachi. Last week I went ('had gone') for the first time to Lahore. The weather was very pleasant. (It was) neither hot nor cold and it was sunny ('sunshine remained') all day long. On Thursday evening, I went to have dinner at my friends' place.
There I met a famous lawyer. He said ('began to say'): 'Iqbal Sahib, why don't you come to work in Lahore?' But I cannot live in Lahore. All my relations are in Karachi. And my wife does not like the climate/weather of

> 1 وہ کراچی کے رہنے والے ہیں۔ ا و دو اربی کے رہے واقع ایاں۔ 2 دوالا ہور شک شعر دی تھی شاگری تھی۔ 4 دودو ستوں کے ہاں گئے تتے۔ 5 دہال ایک مشہور و کیل سے طاقات ہو لگ

ANSWER KEY Exercise 12.3

1 گیال' بیرکون صاحب بول رہے ہیں۔ 2 معاف کچھے۔ بیر ہازار میں خریداری کررہاتھا /ربی تھی۔

3 مِن كُونَي جِهِ بِحِ آيا/ آئي۔

4 جُع كَتْ بِحَ آنَا ہِ / مِسْ كَتْنَ بِحَ آوَل؟ 5 جُع بِهِ بُو ثَي مِو كَي مِس ضرور آوَل كا/ آوَل كي۔ 5

Exercise 12.4

1 پرھے ہیں 2 کررے ہیں 3 نہا تھا 4 پڑھرے تھے 5 کہیں گی 6 تکلیں 7 لے ہیں 8 چکی تھی

#### Unit 13

#### Dialogue 1

John : Excuse me, is this queue for Delhi?

Officer: Yes. Please wait in the queue. Your flight is at 11.25. Is this your

luggage?

John : Yes. Two suitcases and one bag.

Officer: Did you pack the luggage yourself? Are you taking things for

anyone else?

John : No. We packed it ourselves. All the things are just our things.

Officer: Very well. Come! Show your tickets and passports. After that you will be able to go straight into the lounge. Tell me. Where (from) did you learn Urdu?

John : First of all I learnt Urdu in London with friends. These days we are travelling in the subcontinent. In Karachi and Lahore we had a lot of practice in speaking Urdu ('much practice came about').

Officer: Very well, Mr Smith. I'm very pleased to have met you ('having met vou much pleasure has come about'). Very few foreigners speak such good Urdu. Go on. You have quite a lot of time.

John : What's the time now? My watch (has) stopped.

Officer: Now it's twenty to eleven. No. Sorry. Quarter to eleven.

John : And what time do we arrive at Delhi?

Officer: It's not a very long flight. You'll arrive about quarter past, half past twelve. Did you enjoy Lahore?

John : (We) enjoyed it very much. I think we saw absolutely everything. We shall always remember Pakistan. So, there's the announcement for ('of') our flight. Goodbye. Inshallah, we'll meet again.

#### Exercise 13.1

آكيس 2 كي 3 ديكها 4 كهايا 5 كيا 6 يزهي 7 باندها

#### Dialogue 2

Hostess: Assalamu 'alaikum. Please ('having done kindness') show (me) your boarding pass. Your seats are there on the right.

John: Thank you. I understand ('understood'). 18 and 19, near the window. But look. There are two men sitting in our seats. What's happened? '1'll go ('having gone') and have a word. Excuse me. It seems that you are sitting in our seats. 18 and 19.

Man : Really? I'm sorry. What you say is quite right. One minute and we'll shift from here. Are you going to Delhi?

John : I think we are all going to Delhi. Otherwise, we're sitting in the wrong plane.

wrong plane. Man : That's true. Today my brain is not working well. I didn't sleep (last) night. Yesterday evening I went to meet friends, and we were chatting till four in the morning. Having gone home, I quickly packed my luggage and came straight to the airport. It doesn't matter. Having arrived in Delhi, I'll have a good rest. But at home there's my wife, children and relations. They never let me have a rest ('give me to rest'). Rest is 'forbidden' at home! I'm very hungry. Last night I didn't eat anything. This morning I didn't even drink tea. You know, life is sometimes very difficult. Every morning, having got up early, I go to work. In the evening, having arrived home, I want to eat. Do I get food ('is food acquired')? I get nothing. My wife sits all day long with her friends. She comes ('having come') home and says: 'I'm tired. You make the dinner yourself. I also get tired. I'm thirsty now as well. Don't they give tea on this flight? I'm a poor man! Sometimes I think I'll go ('having gone') to Britain and work.

Once I tried to go, but they didn't give me a visa. Brother, what can I say to you? Look. That girl is bringing tea. Thanks be to Allah! But she's going back. Won't we get tea? Alas! Alas!

#### Exercise 13.2

ANSWER KEY

1 میں اب گھر جا کر کھانا کھاؤں گا۔ (جا کے) 2 کراچی جا کر فہیرہ سبر شخة داروں سے لی۔ (جا کے) 3 کتاب پڑھ کر حامد نے آزام کیا۔ (پڑھ کے) 4 سامان بائدھ کر ابائدھ کے تہم ہوائی آئے گئے۔ 5 کیسی میں بیٹے کر ابیٹے کے وہ ڈوائیورے یا ٹیس کرنے گئے۔

#### Exercise 13.3

1 4; 2 6; 3 1; 4 7; 5 2; 6 3; 7 5

#### Exercise 13.4

کل صح سویر \_ انھ کے ہم صح ساڑھ آٹھ ہے ہوائی اڈے پھنے۔ ہوائی جہاز دس بجٹے میں بیس مدت پر جانے وال تھا۔ شہر نے ہم صح ساڑھ کے ہوائی اڈے پھنے مال کو احت ہے۔ سب سے مسئول کی بیار اس کے بات کا فارہ وقت ہے۔ سب سے بہتر ال کی جائے ہوئی کی ہے۔ میں کھنا کا محت کے بات بھی متعلواں؟ میں میں کہا نہ ہے کہ ہم نے بیائے مسئول کی ہے۔ میں کھنا کہ متعلواں؟ میں ہوئی کی ہے۔ میں کھنا کہ متعلواں؟ میں ہوئی ہے۔ میں کھنا کہ میں متح ہے۔ ہیں کھنا تھی متعلواں؟ کے بیٹ ہے ہوئی کی ہے۔ میں کھنا کہ متعلواں؟ کے بیٹ ہے ہے ہیں، ہم سامان کے کر لاؤن کی طرف جا سکتے ہیں۔ تھار زیادہ کمی فیس محق کے لئے بیٹ ہے کہ ہے۔ ہاری ہوئی کی ہوار کے بعد روانہ بیاس منت کے بعد روانہ ہورگی میں نے کہا: آئی شام کو ہم دیلی میں ہول گے۔ ساڑھ کو بے تھے۔ ہماری ہوا کہا ہی فیس محت کے بعد روانہ ہورگی میں نے کہا۔

## Unit 14

#### Dialogue 1

John : At last we have arrived at Delhi. Let's look for a taxi and go straight to the hotel. I've got the address of the hotel. It's on Raj Path. Let's have a little food there. After that we'll visit the Red Fort and the Jami' Mosque.

Helen: John. Why are you talking to me in Urdu? Have you forgotten English?

John : No. I was thinking that since we have come to the homeland of

Urdu, we ought to talk only in Urdu. Urdu was born in the lanes and alleys of Delhi, wasn't it?

Helen: You've really gone mad. Well, it doesn't matter. Let's talk only in Urdu. I have no objection. My Urdu is better than your Urdu.

John : That taxi's standing there. Eh Sardarji! Is the taxi empty?

Sardar : Yes, sir. Get in. Where do you want to go?

John : We have to go to the Raj Path. Do you know where the Imperial Hotel is?

Sardar: Yes, sir. Get in. Where are you coming from?

John : We're coming from Lahore.

Sardar: I see. Lahore is my native place. After Partition in (19)47, my family moved ('was transferred') here. My childhood was spent there.

John : A lot of Sikhs live in Delhi, don't they?

Sardar: Yes. All sorts of people live in Delhi. There are Hindus as well, and the Muslims live mainly in the old city, that is by Chandni Chowk. You speak good Urdu. You're not Pakistanis?

John : No, we're from England. There we have many Indian and Pakistani friends. Therefore, I learnt Urdu.

Sardar : Excellent! Here's your hotel ('hotel has come').

John : How much money shall ('may') I give you?

Sardar: Well, give me 60 rupees.

John : OK. Here you are. Thank you. Inshallah, we'll meet again.

#### Dialogue 2

John : At last we've got to the hotel. I'm very tired. We've done a great deal today. In the morning we came from Lahore to Delhi. In the afternoon we visited the Red Fort and the Jami' Mosque. It's now half past seven. Come on let's have a bite to eat ('food and things').

Helen: I'm sorry, John. I'm a little unwell. I'll lie down for a little while.

John : I thought ('was thinking') that you were very quiet. You look a bit tired. What's the matter with you? Helen: I don't really know ('I don't understand anything'). I've got a headache. I've got a bit of a temperature ('fever') and I've started to get diarrhoea ('diarrhoea began to be').

John : I think I'll try to call a doctor. You lie down. I'll go to the reception and ask someone.

(John returns in a short while)

John: There you are. It's OK ('it's become'). The doctor will come at once. They phoned from here. Listen. There's someone at the door. I think it must ('will') be the doctor.

Doctor: Hello! I've heard that you speak Urdu. My name is Dr Sharma.
Tell me. What's the matter?

Helen : Hello, Doctor, I'm ('have become') a bit unwell. I've got stomach trouble. I have diarrhoea, and a terrible headache. It seems I also have a fever.

Doctor: I see ('understood'). You lie down on the bed and I'll have a look. Indeed, your temperature is 104. Just show your tongue. You seem a bit tired. It's possible that it is because of the change in the climate. I'll give you some antibiotics. And take care with what you eat and drink ('in eating and drinking').

Helen: Thank you, Doctor. How much do we have to give you?

Doctor: That's quite all right. You are our guests. Please rest for a day, and when your health improves ('will become better'), have a good visit. I'm off now. Goodbye.

#### Exercise 14.1

ANSWER KEY

1 اس كر شرىدد - 2 اس كو زكام - 3 اس كا بازد أو الله - 4 اس كو بخلام - 5 اس كه بيده شرى الريس من المريس من الريس من المريس من الم

#### Exercise 14.2

وْاكْرْ : آيخ فانصاحب فرمايد ش آپ كى كيافدمت كرسكابول؟

خان : دودن ہے میری طبیعت ٹھیک نہیں ہے۔ خاص طور پر سر شن درد ہے اور پیٹ شن ذراکٹر بڑے۔ ڈاکٹر : اچھا۔ زبان کھائے۔ بتائے۔ بختی ہے؟ بخارے؟ خان : ابتیا دکھ لیس کے۔ ہاں آپ کا درجہ آزار ایک سوجہ ہے۔ میرے خیال ہے۔ ڈاکٹر : اچھا دکھ لیس کے۔ ہاں آپ کا درجہ آزار ایک سوجہ میرے خیال ہے یہ پائی کی دجہ ہے۔ جب پائی چے ہیں تواضاط بر خاچا ہے۔ تیم میں آپ کو کھی اسٹی بابو تک دول گا اگر آپ کی طبیعت تھے۔ نہ ہو تو دودن کے بعد میرے پائی کھرآ ہے۔

1 Headache and stomach trouble 2 Does he also have diarrhoea and fever 3 100 4 Drinking water 5 Antibiotics 6 Come back in two days' time

#### Exercise 14.3

1 میں من انیس سوسا ٹھ میں (وادواج) ٹی پیداہوا تھا / ہوئی تھے۔ 2 موادی ہج بیں 3 ہوئی چہاز کوئی سازھے سات بجردانہ ہو تا ہے ۔ ۳۰۰۵ 4 ہمیں وہاں ہونے پائی جج تک پھناچا ہے۔ 5 کتنے بج بیری؟ پائی تبجہ میں سولہ صف باتی ہیں۔ ۳۰۳۳ 6 اب گیارہ تن کر اتفارہ صف ہورہے ہیں۔

#### Exercise 14.4

1 آلي 2 ﷺ 3 فل ك 4 وكي 5 ريل كاذى ﴿ كُلُّ كَا جِـ

#### Exercise 14.5

1 دروں 2 کھالیا 3 بھیج دول گا 4 پڑھال 5 کیھال تی

## Unit 15

#### Dialogue 1

John : Hello! Are you Sharif Ahmad Sahib?

Sharif: Yes. And your name ('honourable title')?

John : My name is John Smith. You don't know me. I hope I haven't called at an inconvenient moment. The matter is this (that) two (or) three weeks ago I was in Karachi, and there I met MuhamANSWER KEY

mad Aslam Khan. He gave me your address and told me ('said to me') that, while (being) in Delhi, I should meet you. I should have telephoned you, but I didn't have your number.

Sharif: I see. You know Aslam Sahib? I am very well acquainted with his wife's family. Come in please, and tell me everything in detail. And where do you come from? How long have you been in Delhi ('you Delhi having come how many days have come about')?

John : You can perhaps guess that I am English. In England I have many Indian and Pakistani friends. (While) staying with them, I have managed to learn a little ('little much') Urdu.

Sharif: Your Urdu is very good, as Allah wished! And when did you meet Aslam Sahib?

John : As soon as I arrived (in) Karachi I met him. As I was walking in the city, I stopped him, and asked him ('enquired from him') where Victoria Road was ('is'). He immediately invited me to his home ('gave an invitation to come'). He is a very kind (sarīf' 'honourable') person.

Sharif: I am also Sharif ('Honourable'); that is, my name is Sharif.
Come on, I'll get you (some) tea. I have a small request. You
must know ('you will know') that between India and Pakistan relations are generally not good. I shall give you my new book. If,
as soon as you arrive in England, you can send (it) by air mail to
Aslam, I shall be most indebted to you ('I shall be your limitless
debtor'). I don't know how much it will cost ('how much cost
will be'), but I shall give you two hundred rupees.

John : No, Sharif Sahib. Give me the book, and as soon as I land in London, I'll post it.

#### Exercise 15.1

1 جلى موكارونى 2 كَيْجِية ي 3 رج موع 4 چلتے چلتے 5 موتے موع

#### Dialogue 2

John : Sharif Sahib, tell me something about yourself and about your life. Do you originate from Delhi?

Sharif: No. I was born in Muradabad. That place is usually called the birth place of Urdu. When I first (of all) came to Delhi, (then) I

was admitted into a college, and there I acquired my initial education. After doing BA, I was admitted into the Urdu Department of Delhi University, and while studying there I got my MA. In 1970 I got employment in the Department of Urdu, and from then on I have been teaching ('am teaching') Urdu literature. That is I have been teaching there for almost thirty years ('while teaching 30 years have come about').

John : Obviously there must ('will') be many students of Urdu.

Sharif: Yes. There are not only Indian, but foreign students also. There are Japanese, Americans, Russians etc. When you have ('will have') time, (then) come to the department. Will you have time tomorrow evening?

John : Yes. Can I bring my wife as well?

Sharif: Certainly. (From) among the foreign students, there is an American who speaks as well in Urdu as you speak. There is a Japanese student whom you will be very pleased to meet. Come whenever you please ('at which time you wish, come'). Tomorrow at five o'clock there will be a discussion about emigrants. That is there will be a conversation about the problems of Indian and Pakistani emigrants who are settled in Europe and America ('which emigrants about their problems'). Can you give a little speech?

John : Ahmad Sahib! I have never made a speech in Urdu, but I'll try.

#### Exercise 15.2

1 أردوش الساون كمة بين-2 أردوش الساريل كاذي كمة بين-3 أردوش الساكة كل كمة بين-4 أردوش الساكة كم تين-5 أردوش الساكة كم تين-5 أردوش الساكة كم تين-

#### Exercise 15.3

1 True 2 False 3 True 4 False 5 False

## Exercise 15.4

جان : معاف يجيد مير يان ووچشيال بين ميال عن كمث ل سكابول؟

کرک: بی باب کون سے مکوں کے لئے ہیں۔

عان : آیک الگتان کے گئے اور ایک امریکہ کے گئے۔

کارک: انگتان کے گئے بینتیں (۳۵) روپے اور امریکہ کے گئے چالیس (۴۷) روپے۔

عان : اور ایک چھوٹا ما پار سل ہے۔ یہ سراد آباد کے گئے ہے۔ اس کو بھی یہاں سے بینی سکتا

کارک: بی باب سے دیکھیے۔

کارک: آپ نے فارم مجرالیا پار سل کے لئے؟

عان : بی نہیں۔ آپ بھی فارم مجرالیا پار سل کے لئے؟

عان : بی نہیں۔ آپ بھی فارم مجرالیا پار سل کے لئے؟

عان : بی نہیں۔ آپ بھی فارم مجرالیا پار سل کے لئے؟

عان : بی نہیں۔ آپ بھی فارم مجرالیا پار سل کے لئے؟

عان کارک: تار وہاں ہے بھی تھی۔ بھی۔ بھی۔ یہی اور بھے ایک تار بھیجنا ہے۔

Answers: 1 Two 2 England and America 3 40 rupees 4 Wrapped it in cloth 5 Muradabad 6 No 7 To send a telegram

#### Exercise 15.5

ANSWER KEY

1 كى 2 جو 3 كى 4 جى 5 جن 6 كى 7 كى 8 جن

#### Exercise 15.6

1 میں نے لندن میں دوستوں کے ساتھ رہتے ہوئے اددو سکھ لی۔ 2 تی ہال انگلتان میں بہت ہندوستانی اور پاکستانی تارکمیں و طور جے ہیں۔ 3 ان میں ہے بہت اوگ دفتر وں اور کار خانوں میں کام کرتے ہیں۔ 4 آپ بچھے ان کا چید و بیچز اور میں خوشی ہے ان کودے دول گا کروں کی۔

## Appendix 1 Numerals

Number	rs to	read: 0-1	0				
صفر	•	sifr	0	2	4	che	6
ایک	1	ek	1	ات	4	sāt	7
99	۲	do	2	21	٨	āth	8
تين	٣	tīn	3	تو	9	nau	9
<i>چا</i> ر	~	cār	4	وس	1+	das	10
بإنج	۵	pāńc	5				
Number	s to	read: 11–2	0				
عمياره	#	giyāra	11	سوله	14	sola	16
باره	11	bāra	12	ىرە	14	satra	17
تيره	11-	tera	13	انحاره	IA	aṭhāra	18
0397	10	cauda	14	انيس	19	unnīs	19
پندره	10	pandra	15	بين	*	bīs	20
Number	s to	read: 21–3	0				
اكيس	rı	ikkīs	21	حجبين	ry	chabbīs	26
باكيس	rr	bāīs	22	ستاكيس	14	satāīs	27
تنييس	"	teīs	23	المفائيس	rA	aṭhāīs	28
چو بيس	**	caubīs	24	انتيس	<b>r</b> 9	untīs	29
. 25.	MA	magaza	25	- 2			20

APPENDIX	1_				_		317
Number	s to	read: 31-4	0				
اكتيس	۳1	iktīs	31	چيتيں	24	chattīs	36
بتين	rr	battīs	32	سنتيس	2	saintīs	37
لينتين	**	taintīs	33	ال تميں	۳۸	artīs	38
		cauntīs	34	انتاليس	79	untālīs	39
پنيس	20	paintīs	35	<b>چا</b> لیس	۴.	cālīs	40
Number	s to	read: 41-50	D				
اكتاليس	1"1	iktālīs	41	جماليس	17	cheālīs	46
بياليس	rr	beālīs	42	سنتاليس	14	saintālīs	47
تنتاليس	~~	taintālīs	43	الزتاليس	MA	artālīs	48
چوالیس	۳۳	cavālīs	44	انجاس	4	uncās	49
پيناليس	20	paintālīs	45	بچإس	۵۰	pacās	50
Number	s to	read: 51–60	0				
اكياون	۵۱	ikyāvan	51	چين پ	DY.	chappan	56
ياون	ar	bāvan	52	ستاون	04	satāvan	57
تر پان	٥٣	tirpan	53	المحاوك	۵۸	aṭhāvan	58
چۆك	۵۳	cauvan	54	انسخه	09	unsaṭh	59
چين چين	۵۵	pacpan	55	سائھ	٧٠	sāṭh	60
Number	s to	read: 61–70					
اكشھ	M	iksaṭh	61	چىياستە	44	cheāsaṭh	66
باستھ	44	bāsaṭh	62	مز من	14	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	67
57	41-	tirsaṭh	63	الأسخف	AF	arsath	68
چونىچ	Ale	caunsath	64	انهتر	49	unhattar	69
ينيش	YO	painsath	65	7	4.	sattar	70

318					TE	ACH YOURSE	ELF URD
Numbe	ers to	read: 71-	80				
اكهتر	i 4	ikhattar	71	بجبة	4	chihattar	76
7K	41	bahattar	72	772	4		77
تبتر	4	tirhattar	73	المحبتر	41	-0.000	78
چوہتر	40	cauhattar	74	رتاى	49	-6.	79
مير الم	40	pachattar	75	ای	۸۰	assī	80
Number	rs to	read: 81-9	0				
اكياى	Λſ	ikyāsī	81	چسیاس	ΑY	cheāsī	86
بياى	Ar	beāsī	82	ستاى	14	satāsī	87
ترای	AF	tirāsī	83	انفاى	۸۸		88
چورای	۸۴	caurāsī	84	اننؤے	19	unanavve	89
پچای	۸۵	pacāsī	85	تے	9+	navve	90
Number	s to	read: 91–10	10				
اكيانوب	91	ikyānve	91	جھیانوے	44	cheānve	96
بيانوے	95	beānve	92	ستانوے	94	satānve	97
	91-	tirānve	93	انھانوے	94	athānve	98
چورانوے	91	caurānve	94	ننانوے	99	ninānve	99
پچانوے	90	pacānve	95		1++	(ek) sau	100

## Appendix 2 Relations

واوا	dādā	paternal grandfather
CC	nānā	maternal grandfather
والد	vālid ]	father
باپ	bāp ∫	ratner
والده	vālida ]	197
بال	mān }	mother
13	cacā	paternal uncle
مامول	māmūn	maternal uncle
پيمويي	phūpī	paternal aunt
خالہ	xālā	maternal aunt
يعائى	bhāī	brother
0%	bahin	sister
بختيجا	bhatījā	nephew (brother's son)
فبعيبي	bhatījī	niece (sister's daughter)
بعانجا	bhānjā	nephew (sister's son)
بھانجی	bhāṇjī	niece (sister's daughter)

Cousins are usually referred to simply as it is brother is sister. If it is necessary to specify to which side of the family they belong, the adjectives significant from of the maternal uncle may be added:

ي زاد يمالً cousin(paternal uncle's son)
cousin(maternal uncle's daughter)

# GRAMMATICAL INDEX

Numbers after the entries refer to the units in which the topics are first introduced and further discussed.

adjectives adverbial phrases case causal verbs comparison of adjectives compound verbs conditions 'if'	1, 2, 9, 10 15 3, 4 15 9, 10	personal pronouns phrase verbs plural of nouns plural of respect possession 'of' possessive adjectives postpositions	1, 2, 3, 13 5 2, 10 2 4 1, 2 1, 5, 6 1, 2	3
conjunctive	13	reflexive pronouns	11, 15	
participles extended oblique		subjunctive	10	
fractions	3	tanvīn	12	
gender	13	Tenses		
hamza	1	future	8	
imperative	p. xxiii–xxv	past	9, 12, 13	
	2	past continuous	11	
indefinite pronouns infinitive	6	past habitual	11	
interrogative	8, 12	perfect	12, 13	
pronouns	6	present continuous	7	
intransitive verbs	11	present habitual	5	
naskh	p. x	pluperfect	12, 13	
nasta'līg	p. x	to be	1, 2, 6	
negative	1, 3, 7	to be able 'can'	10	
obligation 'must,	8, 14	to have	2, 4, 6	
oughtto'	0, 14		3	
oblique case	2, 3		3	
ordinal numerals	11		12	
participles	5, 12, 13, 15	verbs (see also Tenses)	1, 2, 9	